Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

sfl+a ARCHITECTS
Capital Bank Plaza
333 Fayetteville Street, Suite 225
Raleigh NC 27601

PROJECT MANUAL

VOLUME 3 (of 3)

Divisions 23 thru 39

Architect's Project Number: 02208.000

Flatwoods Middle School
3544 US 401 S
Lillington, NC 27546

Harnett County Schools
1008 South 11th Street
Lillington, North Carolina 27546

November 8, 2024
Construction Documents
Revisions December 13, 2024

ENERGY STAR PARTNER

Set Number: _____

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 00 01 01

PROJECT TITLE PAGE

Date	November 8, 2024 Construction Documents Revisions December 13, 2024
Project Identification	Flatwoods Middle School 3544 US 401 S Lillington NC 27546 Architect Project No.: 02208.000
Owner	Harnett County Schools Board of Education 1008 South 11th Street Lillington, NC 27546 Phone: 910-893-8151
Architect	SfL+a Architects, PA 333 Fayetteville Street, Suite 225 Raleigh, NC 27601 Phone: 919-573-6350
Structural Engineer	Bennett and Pless 5430 Wade Park Blvd, Suite 400 Raleigh, NC 27607 Phone: 919-832-5587
Fire Protection Engineer **Plumbing Engineer** **Mechanical Engineer** **Electrical Engineer** **Fire Alarm Engineer**	Optima Engineering, PA 150 Fayetteville Street, Suite 520 Raleigh, NC 27601 Phone: 919-926-2200
Civil Engineer **Landscape Architecture**	Timmons Group 5410 Trinity Road, Suite 102 Raleigh, North Carolina 27607 Phone: 919-866-4938

Kitchen Equipment Designer	Food Design Associates 220 N Ames Street, Suite 101 Matthews, NC 28105 Phone: 704-545-6151

END OF SECTION

SECTION 00 01 07

SEALS PAGE

Architect

SfL+a Architects, PA
NC Corporate Registration
NC Registration Number 50676

Architect

SfL+a Architects, PA
Robert Ward Ferris
NC Registration Number 6184

Structural Engineer

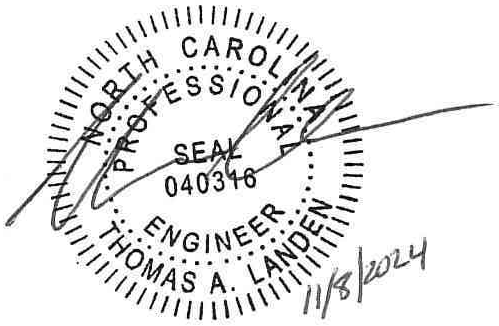
Bennett & Pless
Timothy K. Hilton
NC Registration Number 037412

Fire Protection Engineer
Plumbing Engineer

Optima Engineering, PA
Daniel A. Revilla
NC Registration Number 043866

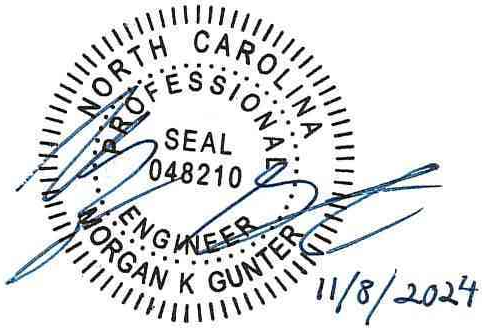
Mechanical Engineer

Optima Engineering, PA
Thomas A. Landen
NC Registration Number 040316



Electrical Engineer
Fire Alarm Engineer

Optima Engineering, PA
Morgan K. Gunter
NC Registration Number 048210



Civil Engineer

Timmons Group
William P. Altman
NC Registration Number 045892

END OF SECTION

SECTION 00 01 10

TABLE OF CONTENTS
Volume One *(of three)*
Divisions 00 - 06

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

Additional Procurement and Contracting Requirements to be Provided by Construction Manager at Risk

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS
Volume Two *(of three)*
Divisions 07 - 22

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

Refer to Project Manual Volume One for Additional Division 00 - Procurement and Contracting Requirements

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

(Continued from Volume One)

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Refer to Project Manual Volume One for Division 01 - General Requirements

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS
Volume Three *(of three)*
Divisions 23 - 39

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

(Continued from Volume One)

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

DIVISION 29 - 30 (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 05 00

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 RELATED PROVISIONS

a. The requirements of the general conditions and of Division 01 apply to that portion of the work specified in this section.

b. These specifications and the accompanying drawings shall include the furnishing of all labor, tools, materials, fixtures, transportation, appurtenances and service necessary and incidental to the installation of a complete and operative system as indicated and intended on the Drawings and as herein specified.

c. Contractor shall coordinate the work and equipment of this division with the work and equipment specified elsewhere in order to assure a complete and satisfactory installation. Work such as excavation, backfill, concrete, flashing, etc., which is required by the work of this Division of the Specifications, shall be provided by this Division unless otherwise indicated.

d. Minor details not usually shown or specified, but necessary for the proper installation and operation, shall be included in the work, the same as if herein specified or shown.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORK:

a. Work included under this Division includes installation of a new cooling and heating system and associated electrical system and controls system. The systems shall be installed complete, with boilers, piping, chiller, pumps and auxiliaries as hereinafter called for. Miscellaneous items including conduits, concrete slab, etc., are to be provided as indicated.

b. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide a complete and operating system according to the true intent and meaning of the plans and specifications and all pipe, controls and equipment, etc.

1.3 DEFINITION

a. The word "Contractor" as used in this Section of the Specifications refers to the HVAC Contractor unless specifically noted otherwise. The word "provide" means furnish, fabricate, complete, install, erect, including labor and incidental materials, necessary to complete in place and ready for operation or use the items referred to or described herein, and/or as shown or referred to on the Contract Drawings.

1.4 HVAC CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

a. It is assumed that the contractor has had sufficient general knowledge and experience to anticipate the needs for a construction of this nature. The contractor shall furnish all items required to complete the construction in accordance with reasonable interpretation of the intent of the Drawings and Specifications. Any

minor items required by Code, law or regulations shall be provided whether or not specified or specifically shown.

b. All work must be done by first class and experienced mechanics properly supervised, and it is understood that the Engineer has the right to stop any work that is not being properly done and has the right to demand that any incompetent workman be removed from the job and a competent workman be substituted therefor.

c. All work must be done in strict accordance with standards of AME, ASHRAE and the building laws of all character in force in the locality where the apparatus is being installed. All work must also be in accordance with rules and regulations of the National Board of Fire Underwriters.

1.5 DUTIES OF CONTRACTOR

a. Contractor is responsible for familiarizing himself with the details of the construction of the building. Work under these specifications installed improperly or which requires changing due to improper reading or interpretation of building plans shall be corrected and changed as directed by Engineer without additional cost to the Owner.

b. Contractor shall leave the premises in a clean and orderly manner upon completion of work, and shall remove from premises all debris that has accumulated during the progress of the work. The HVAC Contractor shall have the permanent HVAC systems in sufficient readiness for furnishing temporary climatic control at the time the building is enclosed. The HVAC systems control shall maintain climatic control throughout the enclosed portion of the building sufficient to allow completion of the interior finishers of the building. A building shall be considered enclosed when it has windows installed and when doorways and other openings have protection which will provide reasonable climatic control. The appropriate climatic condition shall be jointly determined by the Contractor and the Architect. Use of the equipment in this manner shall in no way affect the warranty requirements of the Contractor.

1.6 CODES, RULES, PERMITS AND FEES

a. The contractor shall give all necessary notices, obtain all permits and pay all government sales taxes, fees and other costs including utility connections or extension, in connection with his work; file all necessary plans, prepare all documents and obtain all necessary approvals of all governmental departments having jurisdiction; obtain all required certificates for inspection for his work and deliver same to the Architect before request for acceptance and final payment for the work.

b. The contractor shall include in the work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, ordinances, rules and regulations as required to complete the project in accordance with the intent of the drawings.

c. All materials furnished and all work installed shall comply with the National Fire Codes of the National Fire Protection Association, with the requirements of all governmental departments having jurisdiction.

1.7 SURVEYS AND MEASUREMENTS

a. The contractor shall base all measurements, both horizontal and vertical, from established bench marks. All work shall agree with these established lines and levels. Verify all measurements at the site and check correctness of same as related to the work.

b. Should the contractor discover any discrepancy between actual measurements and those indicated, which prevents following good practice or the intent of the drawings and Specifications, he shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed with his work until he has received instructions from the Architect.

1.8 PLANS

a. Except where dimensions are shown, mechanical plans are diagrammatic; see Architectural drawings for building dimensions and locations of windows, doors, ceiling diffusers, lights, etc. The plans are not intended to show each and every fitting, valve, pipe or pipe hanger, or a complete detail of all the work to be done, but are for the purpose of illustrating the type of system, pipe and duct sizes, etc. and special conditions considered necessary for the experienced mechanic to take off his material and lay out his work. Contractor shall be responsible for taking such measurements as may be necessary at the job, and adapting his work to the local conditions.

1.9 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

a. Plans are diagrammatic, and it sometimes occurs that conditions exist in buildings which require certain changes in drawings and specifications. In event that such changes are necessary, the same are to be made by Contractor without expense to the Owner, provided however, that such changes, do not require furnishing more material or performing more labor than the true intent of the drawings and specifications demand.

b. It is understood that while the drawings are to be followed as closely as circumstances will permit, the Contractor is held responsible for the installation of the system according to the true intent and meaning of the drawings. Anything not entirely clear on the drawings or in the specifications will be fully explained if application is made to the Engineer. Should however, conditions arise where in the judgment of the Contractor certain changes would be advisable. Contractor will communicate with Engineer and secure approval of the changes before going ahead with the work.

c. The electrical and mechanical systems for this job have been designed on the basis of the mechanical equipment listed or data given herein or on the drawings. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine that the electrical service outlets, wiring, conduit and all overcurrent protective and safety devices furnished are adequate to meet Code Requirements for the equipment which he proposes to use. Changes required in the electrical system to accommodate the proposed mechanical equipment shall be worked out and the details submitted for approval. The cost of making the necessary changes to the electrical system shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

1.10 SHOP DRAWINGS

a. Refer to Division 01.

b. All items submitted to Architect for review shall bear stamp or notation indicating contractor's prior review and approval.

c. Any Electrical or other changes required by substituted equipment to be made at no change in contract price.

d. Submit manufacturer's certified performance data for all equipment.

e. Coordinate installation drawings with other parts of the work, whether specified in this Division or other Divisions.

f. Approval of shop drawings by the Engineer shall not relieve the Contractor from his obligation to provide equipment, control, and operation to the true intent of plans and specifications.

g. The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer, within ten (10) days after approval of bids by the owner, a list indicating the manufacturer of all equipment and materials which he proposes to use. After that date, no substitution will be approved and all items shall be as specified.

1.11 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

a. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

2. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
3. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

1.12 SCAFFOLDING, RIGGING, HOISTING:

a. This contractor shall furnish all scaffolding rigging, hoisting, and services necessary to erection and delivery into the premises of any equipment and apparatus furnished. Remove same from premises when no longer required.

1.13 FOUNDATIONS, SUPPORTS, PIERS, ATTACHMENTS:

a. Contractor shall furnish and install all necessary foundations, supports, pads, bases and piers required for all air conditioning equipment, piping, pumps, tanks, compressors, and for all other equipment furnished under this contract.

1.14 SLEEVES AND OPENINGS:

a. Contractor must have an experienced mechanic on the job before concrete slab floors or concrete masonry walls are poured or built into place, whose duty it shall be to locate exact positions of any and all holes necessary for future installation of his pipe work, ducts or equipment. Where pipes pass through concrete or masonry walls or floors, steel pipe sleeves shall be furnished. These shall be the same length as wall

thickness and shall extend 1/2" above finished floors. Pipe sleeves in equipment room floors shall extend 3" above refinished floor. Pipe sleeves in equipment room floors shall extend 3" above finished floor. Sleeves shall be placed in position by this Contractor.

b. This Contractor shall arrange for proper openings in the building to admit his equipment. If it becomes necessary to cut any portion of building to admit his equipment, portions cut must be restored to their former condition by this Contractor.

c. This Contractor will provide duct openings or chases in masonry or concrete; however, it is this Contractor's responsibility to advise exact dimensions, shape and locations of openings required in sufficient time for the Contractor to make necessary provisions. This Contractor shall be responsible for correct size and location of each opening for his equipment through these openings.

d. Wall openings that require a fire or smoke damper shall be made as nearly possible to the damper or duct size so that an angle frame can close the opening entirely.

e. Where pipes or ducts penetrate floors or partitions which are fire or smoke barriers, the integrity of the barrier shall not be compromised by such penetration.

1.15 CUTTING AND PATCHING:

a. The Contractor shall do all cutting, fitting and patching as required to install piping and equipment except openings through the roof shall be provided by the General Contractor. Patching shall be done by mechanics skilled in the various trades and work shall match the existing work.

b. All exposed openings in walls and floors for piping shall be core drilled. Cutting of holes by hand will not be allowed.

c. Provide all required protection including but not limited to, welding blankets, dust covers, shoring bracing and supports to maintaining structural integrity, safety and cleanliness of the work.

1.16 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING:

a. All excavation and backfilling, pudding and tamping required to properly install work under this contract shall be done by this Contractor.

b. Trenches shall be on an even grade and firmly packed to form a solid foundation for laying piping. The Contractor is cautioned to comply with the North Carolina Department of Labor requirements concerning shoring for excavations.

c. Backfill shall be clear of rocks and trash. Backfilling shall be water tamped so as to provide firm footing for finish work, and shall be maintained at proper level for duration of the Contract. No backfilling shall be done until work to be covered has been inspected. Excessive excavation material shall be deposited on site and leveled as directed by the engineer.

1.17 POURED IN PLACE CONCRETE WORK:

a. Furnish and install all concrete work required for the construction of anchors, guide bases and elsewhere as indicated on the Drawings. Refer to appropriate Section in Division 3 for specification requirements.

1.18 STORAGE OF MATERIALS:

a. Equipment, ductwork, piping, and other equipment stored on site shall be protected from mud, dust, debris, weather, vermin, and construction traffic.
b. Equipment, ductwork, piping, and other equipment shall be capped or otherwise covered to prevent water, dust, and debris intrusion. Cellophane membrane may be used for duct and equipment with care taken to maintain the seal integrity. Covering shall be replaced if seal is disturbed. Covering shall be removed only when necessary.
c. Where pipe or ductwork becomes damaged by rust, dirt, dust, mud, or construction debris, it must be thoroughly cleaned and prepared to a like-new condition before installation.
d. Porous materials such as duct liner and insulation that become saturated with water shall be discarded and replaced.
e. Any equipment and/or materials affected (including aesthetically) as a result of improper storage shall be cleaned or replaced at contractor expense.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

a. Provide equipment complete with all components and accessories necessary to its satisfactory operation.

b. Listing of a manufacturer's name in this Division does not infer conformity to all requirements of the Contract Documents, nor waive requirements thereof.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 BELT DRIVES

a. V-belt drives shall be rated at not less than 200% of nominal motor horsepower.

b. Motor sheaves shall be fixed pitch type.

c. Scheduled fan static pressures are estimated. Provide one extra drive per device as required to allow adjustment to deliver scheduled air quantities against actual system resistance.

d. Provide guards for all belt drives not enclosed within equipment housings. Provide openings in guard at driving and driven sheaves for use of revolution counter.

3.2 MAINTENANCE AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

a. Upon completion of all work, the Contractor shall furnish a complete set of operating instructions for all equipment. Such instructions shall be diagrammatic in form on heavy white paper, suitably framed, protected with glass and hung where

directed by the owner. A preliminary draft of the instruction sheets shall be submitted to the engineer for approval before making same.

b. Manufacturer's instruction books, card, etc., (to each individual piece of equipment furnished under this contract) shall be furnished to the owner. These shall contain instructions for the operation and maintenance of all equipment. Where such is not furnished by the manufacturer, the contractor shall give written instructions to the owner for the maintenance of the equipment involved.

3.3 DUCTS, PLENUM, ETC.

a. As indicated on drawings, provide a system of ducts for supplying returning and exhausting air from various spaces. All details of the ductwork are not indicated and the necessary bends, offsets and transformations must be furnished whether shown or not.

b. All sheet metal ducts, casing, plenums, etc., of sizes indicated, shall be constructed from prime galvanized sheet steel, and shall be in accordance with or equal to standards set forth in latest issue of SMACNA low velocity duct manual for gauges of materials, (2" pressure), workmanship, method of fabrication and erection.

c. All uninsulated panels of ducts over twelve inches (12") wide shall be cross-broken, except on plenums, which shall be braced with angle iron as required to prevent breathing.

d. All ductwork must present a smooth interior and joints must be airtight. Where there is evidence of undue leakage at the joints in low pressure ducts, they shall be sealed with cement similar to Foster 30-02.

e. Depending upon space requirements, round or square elbows may be used as required or at the Contractors option in low velocity ducts. All elbows shall be constructed for minimum pressure drop. All elbows with an inside radius less than 3/4 the width of the duct must be fitted with multiple double thickness turning vanes.

f. No transformations or offsets shall be made with a slope greater than (7 to 1), space conditions permitting.

g. Where indicated on drawings, ductwork is to be lined with flexible fiberglass acoustics material weighing not less than 1 1/2 lb. per cubic foot and having a flame spread classification of not more than twenty-five (25) as listed under Underwriters Laboratories. Liner shall be applied according to SMACNA duct liner standard. Thickness shall be as indicated on the drawings. Duct sizes on plan are inside clear sizes, increase the actual sheet metal size accordingly in sizing the duct.

h. The lining shall be secured to the ductwork with a suitable adhesive and with mechanical fasteners center. Liner shall be cut such that adjacent sections of insulation butt together and are sealed with Foster 30-02 joints.

i. All duct connections to and from all centrifugal fans or cabinets containing fans, shall be made with fabric equal to "Ventfab" as made by Ventfabrics, Inc., not less than four inches (4") long secured by peripheral iron straps holding fabric in galvanized iron, except as otherwise noted.

j. Vertical ducts shall be supported by means of an angle iron frame riveted to the ductwork on at least two (2) sides. Horizontal runs of ductwork shall be supported on not more than 8'-0" centers as required.

k. Manual volume and splitter dampers shall be furnished and installed where shown and where necessary for proper regulation of the air distribution. A quadrant and set screw equal to "Ventlock" #641 shall be installed for all dampers which are concealed above plaster or gypsum board ceilings, or behind the masonry construction, furnish and install concealed regulators ("Ventlock" #666) with chrome cover plate.

l. All ductwork shall operate without chatter and vibration, and shall be free from pulsations.

m. See section 23 31 13 for metal ductwork requirements.

3.4 ACCESS DOORS OR PANELS

a. Provide duct access doors of approved construction at any apparatus requiring service and inspection. Doors shall suit finish in which installed.

b. Access doors in rated walls or assemblies shall be rated as required to maintain rating of assembly. Rated access doors shall bear U.L. Label.

3.5 CLEANING DUCT SYSTEM

a. Upon complete installation of ducts, clean entire system of rubbish, plaster, dirt, etc., before installing any outlets. After installation of outlets and connections to fans are made, blow out entire systems with all control devices wide open.

3.6 ITEMS OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

a. All electrical work shall be done by properly licensed electrical mechanics in accordance with Division 26 of the specifications under supervision of a licensed Electrical Contractor as approved by the Architect.

b. The Electrical Contractor shall provide all power wiring to motor starter and/or disconnect switch and from starter/disconnect switch to motor. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide all control wiring, low voltage or line voltage, as required for the operation of all mechanical equipment. All control devices such as motor starters, thermostats, switches, etc. shall be provided by the Mechanical Contractor.

c. All motor starters shall be provided with a “hand-off-auto” switch on the starter cover.

d. All items of mechanical equipment electrically operated shall be in complete accordance with electrical division of the specifications. Mechanical equipment, other than individually mounted motors, shall be factory prewired so that it will only be necessary to bring connections to a single set of terminals.

e. Mechanical equipment electrical components shall all be bonded together and connected to electrical system ground.

f. All mechanical equipment shall be U.L. listed and labeled as a complete package, not through individual components or parts. Provide required 3rd party field UL listing services as required to comply.

3.7 WARRANTY AND SERVICE

a. Upon completion of all work, the contractor shall check the system out so that all motor bearings are greased as required and have all systems balanced. He shall be responsible for original service, of starting the system up, and providing one set of replacement filters after final acceptance.

b. Refer to equipment specifications for specific warranty information.

3.8 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE TEST

a. The project will be checked periodically as construction progresses. The contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Engineer at least 48 hours in advance when any work to be covered up is ready for inspection. No work will be covered up until approved by the Engineer.

b. Upon completion of erection of all equipment and work specified herein and shown approved shop drawings, and at the time designated by the engineer, the contractor shall start all apparatus, making necessary tests as directed and as specified herein, and make adjustments of all parts of all equipment before acceptance of equipment by the owner. The contractor must demonstrate to the owner, by performance, that all equipment operates as specified and meets the guarantee called for.

c. Tests shall include satisfactory evidence that all systems operate as called for on the drawings, and that all pieces of equipment operate at specified ratings under specified operating conditions.

d. The contractor shall furnish all fuel and power required for these purposes, and provide the proper and necessary help required to operate the system while tests are being made.

e. All drainage piping shall be tested by filling with water to a point 10' above the underground drains or to point of discharge to grade and let stand thus filled for 3 hours.

f. Tests on all pipe work shall be subject to the inspection of the Engineer. He shall be given 24-hours notice when a section pipe is to be tested and the test shall not be removed until permission is given by the Engineer.

3.9 AS BUILT DRAWINGS

b. This contractor shall keep on the job at all times, a clean set of contract drawings in blueprint form. As the job progresses, any and all deviations from the arrangements, piping runs, equipment locations, etc., shown on the bid prints shall be marked on this set with red ink. These prints shall not be used for any other purpose than to be marked up as "As-Built" Drawings.

3.10 OWNER TRAINING

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the equipment listed below:
   1. Boilers
   2. Chillers
   3. DDC Control Systems
   4. Air Handlers
   5. Heat Transfer Package

B. Extent of Training:

   1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of equipment installed and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
   2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
   3. Minimum Training Requirements:

      a. Provide not less than the number days of training indicated below.
         1) Boilers – 1 day (8 hours)
         2) Chillers – 1 day (8 hours)
            a) (2) attendees shall be awarded offsite training to selected manufacturers chiller training school all expenses are included as a part of the project costs
         3) DDC Control Systems - 2 days (16 hours)
         4) Air Handlers - 1 day (8 hours)
         5) Heat Transfer Package - 1 day (8 hours)

      b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.

C. Training Schedule:

   1. Schedule training with Owner **20** business days before expected Substantial Completion.
   2. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions.
   3. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.

D. Training Attendee List and Sign-in Sheet:

   1. Request from Owner in advance of training a proposed attendee list with name, phone number and e-mail address.
   2. Provide a preprinted sign-in sheet for each training session with proposed attendees listed and no fewer than six blank spaces to add additional attendees.
   3. Circulate sign-in sheet at beginning of each session and solicit attendees to sign or initial in applicable location.
   4. At end of each training day, send Owner an e-mail with an attachment of scanned copy (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet for each session.

E. Attendee Training Manuals:

1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.

F. Organization of Training Sessions:

1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system. Plan training sessions to accommodate the following three levels of operators:

    a. Daily operators.
    b. Advanced operators.
    c. System managers and administrators.

G. Training Outline:

1. Submit training outline for Owner review at least **10** business day before scheduling training.
2. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into each of four training sessions that day, training objectives for each training session and synopses for each lesson planned.

H. On-Site Training:

1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service requirements.
5. Operator workstation provided with DDC system shall be used in training. If operator workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.

I. Training Content:

1. Basic operation of each system.
2. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and service requirements for each.
3. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique optimization routine.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 05 13

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.

B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

2.6 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

A. Scope
   a. This section provides requirements for AC inverter type adjustable frequency, variable speed drives or herein identified as AC drives for use with (NEMA B, NEMA A, NEMA C, NEMA E, synchronous) design AC motors.

B. Manufacturers
   a. The manufacturer of the AC drive shall be a certified ISO 9001 quality facility. ABB, Danfoss (Graham), Eaton, Emerson, Johnson Controls or prior approved equal meeting the requirements of this section.

   b. All VFD's in project shall be by the same manufacturer. This shall include all pumps and air handler fans, where indicated on the plans.

C. Regulatory Requirements
   a. UL listed.
   b. EN Standard CE marked for the following:
      Low Voltage Directive (73/23/EEC)
      EN50178
      EMC Directive (89/336/EEC)
      EN61800-3 Adjustable Speed electrical power drive systems Part 3
   c. Designed, constructed and tested in accordance with NEMA, ICS, NFPA and IEC standards.

D. Environmental Requirements
   a. The AC drive construction ½ hp to 5 hp 230V and 1 hp to 7.5 hp 480V shall be IP20/open according to Standard EN50178. 7.5 hp to 10 hp 230V and 10 hp to 20 hp 480V shall be Type 1. Both are designed to operate as Pollution degree 2 conforming to IEC 664-1, EN50718 and NEMA ICS-1. Drives above 20 hp 480V and 15 hp 230V shall meet Type 1 Pollution degree 3 according to IEC 664-1, EN50718 and NEMA ICS-1.

b. The AC drive will be designed to operate in an ambient temperature from 0 to 40 degrees C (32 to 104 degrees F).
c. The storage temperature range shall be -25 to 70 degrees C.
d. The maximum relative humidity shall be 95% at 40 degrees C, non-condensing.
e. The AC drive will be rated to operate at altitudes less than or equal to 1000m (3300 ft).
f. The AC drive will meet the IEC 68-2-6-vibration specification.
g. The AC drive shall be designed and constructed to be of finger safe construction with enclosure open to operator access according to IP20 standards.

E. Related Document

a. Division 26 – Electrical

F. Equipment

a. General Description
i. The AC drive shall utilize soft switching technology and voltage vector control.
ii. The AC drive manufacturer shall provide a harmonic analysis showing compliance with IEEE-519. And provide all required equipment as recommended by vendor to mitigate the THD

iii. The AC drive shall have the Hand/Off/Auto function.

iv. The AC drive shall have a VFD/bypass system design that is serviceable while operating in bypass mode. This includes a drive disconnect to ensure service personnel safety, a 2-contactor bypass for full speed operation, and an isolation barrier to ensure service personnel safety and repair of the drive while operating in full speed bypass mode. Bypass shall have a separate integral disconnect.

v. Each AC drive shall have voltage/single phase protection of the drive and bypass system to ensure continued operation after utility power failures. Drive protection modules shall be ATC Diversified Electronics SLU-100-ASA 0315PB or equivalent. Protection modules shall monitor incoming 480V 3-phase power and shall interrupt 120V control circuit. Install modules in drive cabinet.

vi. The AC drive shall have common control in both drive and bypass modes.

vii. Each AC drive shall have M.O.V. lightning protection.

viii. Each AC drive shall have a 3% AC line reactor and DC choke for electronic harmonic protection.

ix. The AC drive shall have safety interlocks for all modes of operation.

x. A manufacturer's warranty shall be provided on all materials and workmanship of no less than 1 year from the date of start-up or 18 months from date of shipment.

xi. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

b. Ratings

i. The AC drive shall be designed to operate from an input voltage of 208/230 +/- 15% VAC or 400/460 +/-15% VAC.

ii. The AC drive shall operate from an input voltage frequency range from 47.5 to 63 Hz.

iii. The displacement power factor shall not be less than 0.95 lagging under any speed or load condition.

iv. The efficiency of the AC drive at 100% speed and load shall not be less than 96%.

v. The constant torque overtorque capacity will be 150% for 1 minute (The variable torque overtorque capacity will be 110% for 1 minute).

vi. The output switching frequency of the drive will be randomly modulated and selectable at 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 12 kHz or 16 kHz depending on drive rating for low noise operation.

vii. The output frequency shall be from 0.1 to 500 Hz (selectable at 50 Hz, 60 Hz, 200 Hz, 500 Hz).

viii. The AC drive will be able to provide rated motor torque at 0.5 Hz in a Sensorless Flux Vector mode using a standard motor and no tachometer feedback.

ix. See plans for information regarding SCCR rating for VFD's and electrical components for specific pieces of equipment.

c. Protection

i. Upon power-up, the AC drive shall automatically test for valid operation of memory, option module, loss of analog reference input, loss of communication, (dynamic brake failure), DC to DC power supply, control power, and the precharge circuit.

ii. The AC drive shall be protected against short circuits between output phases; between output phases and ground; on the control terminal outputs; and the internal supplies. The logic and analog outputs shall also be optically isolated.

iii. The AC drive shall have a minimum of power loss ride-through of 200 msec. The AC drive shall have the user-defined option of frequency fold-back to increase the duration of the power loss ride-through.

iv. The AC drive shall have a selectable ride through function which will allow the logic to maintain control for a minimum of one second without faulting.

v. For a fault condition other than ground fault, short circuit or internal fault, an auto restart function will provide restart.

vi. The deceleration mode of the AC drive shall be programmable for normal and fault conditions. The stop modes shall include free-wheel stop, fast stop and DC injection braking.

vii. A synchronized restart shall be provided that will catch a spinning motor by sensing the motor frequency and rotational direction and synchronize the AC drive's output prior to restarting.

viii. Upon loss of the analog process follower reference signal, the AC drive shall fault ad/or operate at a user defined speed set between software programmed low speed and high speed settings.

ix. The AC drive shall have solid state protection that is UL listed and meets UL 508C as a Class 20 overload protection and meets IEC 947. The adjustment shall be from 0.45 to 1.05 percent of the current output of the AC drive.

x. The AC drive shall have a thermal switch with a user selectable pre-alarm that will provide a minimum of 60 seconds delay before over temperature fault.

d. Operator Interface

i. The full English operator interface terminal will offer the modification of AC drive adjustments via a touch keypad. All electrical values, configuration parameters, drive menu parameters, application and activity function access, faults, local control, adjustment storage, self-test and diagnostics will be shown.
ii. The AC drive keyboard will announce horsepower and voltage.
iii. The display shall be capable to be configured to display multiple parameters with numeric data that is selectable and scalable by the operator. A user defined display value proportional to output frequency shall be available. As a minimum the display values shall consist of speed reference, output frequency, output current, motor torque, output voltage, line voltage, DC voltage, motor thermal state, drive thermal state, motor speed and output power.

G. Execution

a. Installation

i. The installation shall be in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions, drawings and recommendations. The AC drive manufacturer shall provide a factory certified technical representative to supervise the contractor's installation, testing and start-up of the AC drive(s).

ii. The contractor shall assume the responsibility for coordinating the purchased equipment with the motor served and with the automatic temperature control system, paying specific attention to the signal sent and received, the ground source and the required speed range.

iii. Cables from VFD to served equipment shall be VFD rated cables as required.

iv. The manufacturer shall provide start-up of the variable frequency drive and its optional circuits by a factory certified service technician who is experienced in start-up and repair services. The commissioning personnel shall be the same personnel that will provide the factory service and warranty repairs at the customer's site. Sales personnel and other agents who are not factory certified technicians for VFD field repair are not acceptable as commissioning agents. Start-up services shall include checking for verification of proper operation and installation for the VFD, its options and its interface wiring to the building automation sys-

tem. Start-up shall include customer operator training at the time of the equipment commissioning.

v. The VFD shall be mounted with operator interface between 4'-6" and 5'-6" above finished floor for visibility and accessibility.

H. Training

a. An on-site training session of (4) hours duration shall be provided by a representative of the AC drive manufacturer and shall included in the base bid for the project.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 05 16

EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal-bellows expansion joints.
2. Expansion compensators.
3. Rubber expansion joints.
4. Flexible-hose expansion joints.
5. Packed slip expansion joints.
6. Flexible ball joints.
7. Pipe bends and loops.
8. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BR: Butyl rubber.

B. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

C. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.

D. CSM: Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber.

E. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

F. NR: Natural rubber.

G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping system fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products shall absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and bends.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe expansion joint, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Maintenance Data: For pipe expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Welding to Piping: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1120, circular-corrugated-bellows type with external tie rods.

1. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Single-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe end connections, and brass shrouds.
2. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Stainless-Steel Waterway: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, stainless-steel-pipe end connections, and steel shroud.
3. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe end connections, and carbon-steel shroud.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Configuration: Single-bellows type, unless otherwise indicated.
6. End Connections: Flanged.

B. Expansion Compensators: Double-ply corrugated steel, stainless-steel, or copper-alloy bellows in a housing with internal guides, antitorque device, and removable end clip for positioning.

1. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Configuration for Copper Piping: Two-ply phosphor-bronze or stainless-steel bellows and bronze or stainless-steel shroud.
3. Configuration for Steel Piping: Two-ply stainless-steel bellows and carbon-steel shroud.
4. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
5. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
6. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
7. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.

C. Rubber Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1123, fabric-reinforced rubber with external control rods and complying with FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."

1. Arch Type: Single arches.
2. Spherical Type: Single spheres.

    a. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
    b. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
    c. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 150 psig at 220 deg F.

3. Material: BR.
4. End Connections: Full-faced, integral, steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

D. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints: Manufactured assembly with two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose; with inlet and outlet elbow fittings, corrugated-metal inner hoses, and braided outer sheaths.

1. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

2. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

3. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    c. NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

4. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    c. NPS 8 and Larger: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

E. Packed Slip Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1007, carbon-steel, packing type designed for repacking under pressure and pressure rated for 250 psig at 400 deg F minimum. Include asbestos-free PTFE packing, compound limit stops, and drip connection if used for steam piping.

1. Configuration: Single-joint class with base, unless otherwise indicated.
2. End Connections: Flanged or weld ends to match piping system.

F. Flexible Ball Joints: Carbon-steel assembly with asbestos-free composition packing, designed for 360-degree rotation and angular deflection, and 250 psig at 400 deg F minimum pressure rating; complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section II, "Materials," and with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials and design of pressure-containing parts and bolting.

1. Angular Deflection for NPS 6 and Smaller: 30-degree minimum.
2. Angular Deflection for NPS 8 and Larger: 15-degree minimum.
3. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
4. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES

A. Description: Steel, factory fabricated, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for alignment of piping and two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

2.3 MATERIALS FOR ANCHORS

A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel, hex head.

C. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.

D. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

1. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
2. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

E. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud bonding system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

1. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, 2-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
2. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

F. Concrete: Portland cement mix, 3000 psi minimum. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete.

G. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install manufactured, nonmetallic expansion joints according to FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."

B. Locate expansion joints as indicated on the plans, or at a minimum in every 100’ of straight runs of hot water piping (no 90 degree bends), whichever is greater.

C. Install expansion joints of sizes matching size of piping in which they are installed.

D. Install alignment guides to allow expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

E. To avoid unnecessary air vents and drain plugs, install expansion loops in the 3:00 or 9:00 orientation.

3.2 PIPE BEND AND LOOP INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe bends and loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.

B. Attach pipe bends and loops to anchors.

1. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
2. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 SWING CONNECTIONS

A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.

C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.4 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE INSTALLATION

A. Install guides on piping adjoining pipe expansion fittings and loops.

B. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

3.5 ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

B. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1.

C. Construct concrete anchors of poured-in-place concrete of dimensions indicated and include embedded fasteners.

D. Install pipe anchors according to expansion-joint manufacturer's written instructions if expansion joints or compensators are indicated.

E. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for expansion fittings, guides, and anchors installed on or in concrete.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 19

METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermometers.
2. Gages.
3. Test plugs.
4. Flowmeters.
5. Thermal-energy meters.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" for steam and condensate meters.
2. Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" for gas meters.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.

B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated; include performance curves.

B. Shop Drawings: Schedule for thermometers, gages, flowmeters and thermal-energy meters indicating manufacturer's number, scale range, and location for each.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of thermometer, gage, flowmeter and thermal-energy meter, signed by product manufacturer.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flowmeters and thermal-energy meters to include operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Case: Die-cast aluminum or brass, 7 inches long.

B. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.

C. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.

D. Window: Glass or plastic.

E. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.

F. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.

G. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

2.2 DUCT-TYPE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Case: Die-cast aluminum, 7 inches long.

B. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic filled, with magnifying lens.

C. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.

D. Window: Glass or plastic.

E. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.

F. Stem: Metal, for installation in mounting bracket and of length to suit installation.

G. Mounting Bracket: Flanged fitting for attachment to duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

H. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.

B. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: Indicating-dial type complying with ASME B40.100.

1. Case: Liquid-filled type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter.
2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Red metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Brass.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half scale.
10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.

B. Remote-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: ASME B40.100, indicating-dial type.

1. Case: Dry type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter for panel mounting.
2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Red metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Brass.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half scale.
10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.

C. Pressure-Gage Fittings:

1. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
2. Syphons: NPS 1/4 coil of brass tubing with threaded ends.
3. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.

B. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 300 psig at 250 deg F.

C. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.

1. Insert material for air, water, oil, or gas service at 20 to 200 deg F shall be CR.
2. Insert material for air or water service at minus 30 to plus 275 deg F shall be EPDM.

D. Test Kit: Furnish one test kit(s) containing one pressure gage and adaptor, two thermometer(s), and carrying case. Pressure gage, adapter probes, and thermometer sensing elements shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

1. Pressure Gage: Small bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 200 psig.
2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 25 to 125 deg F.
3. High-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 0 to 220 deg F.
4. Carrying case shall have formed instrument padding.

2.6 WAFER-ORIFICE FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Differential-pressure-design orifice insert for installation between pipe flanges; with calibrated flow-measuring element, separate flowmeter, hoses or tubing, valves, fittings, and conversion chart compatible with flow-measuring element, flowmeter, and system fluid.

B. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.

C. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

D. Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.

E. Range: Flow range of flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

F. Permanent Indicators: Suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

G. Portable Indicators: Differential-pressure type calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses in carrying case.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

H. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

2.7 VENTURI FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Differential-pressure design for installation in piping; with calibrated flow-measuring element, separate flowmeter, hoses or tubing, valves, fittings, and conversion chart compatible with flow-measuring element, flowmeter, and system fluid.

B. Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel; with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.

C. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

D. Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.

E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged or welded.

G. Range: Flow range of flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

H. Permanent Indicators: Suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

I. Portable Indicators: Differential-pressure type calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses in carrying case.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

J. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

2.8 TURBINE FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Insertion type for inserting turbine into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.

B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body; with plastic turbine or impeller and integral direct-reading scale.

C. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

D. Temperature Rating: 220 deg F. minimum.

E. Display: Visual instantaneous rate of flow.

F. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2-1/2 percent.

2.9 PITOT-TUBE FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Insertion-type, differential-pressure design for inserting probe into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.

B. Construction: Stainless-steel probe of length to span inside of pipe; with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.

C. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

D. Temperature Rating: 220 deg F. minimum.

E. Display: Visual instantaneous rate of flow.

F. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power connection.

G. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent for liquids and gases.

2.10 FLOW INDICATORS

A. Description: Instrument for installation in piping systems for visual verification of flow.

B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body; with sight glass and plastic pelton-wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

C. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

D. Temperature Rating: 220 deg F.

E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

2.11 INSERTION-TURBINE, THERMAL-ENERGY METER SYSTEMS

A. Description: Flow sensor, strainer, two temperature sensors, transmitter, meter, and connecting wiring.

B. Flow Sensor: Insertion-type turbine or paddle-wheel element with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter.

1. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
2. Temperature Range: 40 to 250 deg F.

C. Meter: Solid-state integrating type.

1. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
3. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.

D. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.

2.12 INLINE-TURBINE, THERMAL-ENERGY METER SYSTEMS

A. Description: Flow sensor, two temperature sensors, transmitter, meter, and connecting wiring.

B. Flow Sensor: Turbine-type water meter with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter.

1. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum working-pressure rating.
2. Temperature Range: 40 to 250 deg F.

C. Meter: Solid-state integrating type.

1. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
3. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.

D. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

A. Install liquid-in-glass thermometers as indicated on the drawings and in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler and chiller.
3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat exchanger.
5. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit.
6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal storage tank.
7. Outside-air, return-air, and mixed-air ducts.

B. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:

1. Heating Hot Water: 30 to 240 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
2. Condenser Water: 30 to 120 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
3. Chilled Water: 30 to 120 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
4. Steam and Condensate: 30 to 300 deg F, with 5-degree scale divisions.
5. Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

3.2 GAGE APPLICATIONS

A. Install dry-case-type pressure gages for discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.

B. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at chilled- and condenser-water inlets and outlets of chillers.

C. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

3.3 INSTALLATIONS

A. Install direct-mounting thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

B. Install remote-mounting dial thermometers on panel, with tubing connecting panel and thermometer bulb supported to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

C. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of diameter of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.

D. Duct Thermometer Support Flanges: Install in wall of duct where duct thermometers are indicated. Attach to duct with screws.

E. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.

F. Install remote-mounting pressure gages on panel.

G. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

H. Install needle-valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.

I. Install test plugs in tees in piping.

J. Install flow indicators, in accessible positions for easy viewing, in piping systems.

K. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters as prescribed by manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.

M. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe upstream and downstream from element as prescribed by manufacturer's written instructions.

N. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.

O. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

P. Install connection fittings for attachment to portable indicators in accessible locations.

Q. Install flowmeters at discharge of hydronic system pumps and at inlet of hydronic air coils.

R. Assemble components and install thermal-energy meters.

S. Mount meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.

C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

D. Connect thermal-energy-meter transmitters to meters.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions, after installation.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 05 23

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. High-performance butterfly valves.
8. Bronze lift check valves.
9. Bronze swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves.
11. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
12. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
13. Iron, center-guided check valves.
14. Iron, plate-type check valves.
15. Bronze gate valves.
16. Iron gate valves.
17. Bronze globe valves.
18. Iron globe valves.
19. Lubricated plug valves.
20. Eccentric plug valves.
21. Chainwheels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 HVAC piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. All valves shall be manufactured in the USA.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Valve Co.
2. Cameron
3. Conbraco Industries.
4. Hammond Valve
5. Milwaukee Valve Co.
6. NIBCO Inc.
7. Powell Valves
8. Watts Regulator Co

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.

b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Regular.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Regular.

F. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

G. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.

c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Bronze.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Reduced.

B. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Reduced.

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Bronze.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    d. Body Design: Two piece.
    e. Body Material: Bronze.
    f. Ends: Threaded.
    g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    h. Stem: Bronze.
    i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    j. Port: Regular.

F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    d. Body Design: Two piece.
    e. Body Material: Bronze.
    f. Ends: Threaded.
    g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    h. Stem: Stainless steel.
    i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    j. Port: Regular.

G. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    d. Body Design: Three piece.
    e. Body Material: Bronze.
    f. Ends: Threaded.
    g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    h. Stem: Bronze.
    i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    j. Port: Full.

H. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    d. Body Design: Three piece.
    e. Body Material: Bronze.
    f. Ends: Threaded.
    g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.

h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 150, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel.
i. Port: Full.

2.6 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

C. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

D. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

E. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Stainless steel.

F. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Stainless steel.

G. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

H. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

I. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

J. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

K. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.

d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Stainless steel.

L. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.7 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
f. Seal: EPDM.

B. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. NPS 8 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 10 and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig.
d. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
e. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
f. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
g. Seal: EPDM.

2.8 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.

c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
g. Disc: Carbon steel.
h. Service: Bidirectional.

B. Class 300, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
b. CWP Rating: 720 psig at 100 deg F.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
g. Disc: Carbon steel.
h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.9 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

2.10 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.11 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.

h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Composition.
h. Seat Ring: Bronze.
i. Disc Holder: Bronze.
j. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
k. Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.12 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.

c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

2.13 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Description:

a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
c. Seal: EPDM.
d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.14 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.

e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Seat: Bronze.

E. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
f. Seat: Bronze.

F. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Seat: Bronze.

G. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
f. Seat: Bronze.

H. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Seat: Bronze.

I. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

J. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

K. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

L. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

M. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
   e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
   f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

N. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a.

2. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
   e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
   f. Ends: Flanged.
   g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

O. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
   e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
   f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

P. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
   e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
   f. Ends: Flanged.
   g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.15 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: API 594.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.

c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: Bronze.

B. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
f. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
f. Seat: Bronze.

E. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

F. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.

b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

G. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

H. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

I. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

J. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.16 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded.
   e. Stem: Bronze.
   f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
   g. Packing: Asbestos free.
   h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded.
   e. Stem: Bronze.
   f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
   g. Packing: Asbestos free.
   h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded.
   e. Stem: Bronze.
   f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
   g. Packing: Asbestos free.
   h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded.
   e. Stem: Bronze.
   f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
   g. Packing: Asbestos free.
   h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.17 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
   e. Ends: Flanged.
   f. Trim: Bronze.
   g. Disc: Solid wedge.
   h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
   e. Ends: Flanged.
   f. Trim: Bronze.
   g. Disc: Solid wedge.
   h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
   e. Ends: Flanged.
   f. Trim: Bronze.
   g. Disc: Solid wedge.
   h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
   e. Ends: Flanged.
   f. Trim: Bronze.
   g. Disc: Solid wedge.
   h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.18 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    d. Ends: Threaded.
    e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    f. Packing: Asbestos free.
    g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    d. Ends: Threaded.
    e. Stem: Bronze.
    f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    d. Ends: Threaded.
    e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    f. Packing: Asbestos free.
    g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.19 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    d. Ends: Flanged.
    e. Trim: Bronze.
    f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.

b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
d. Ends: Flanged.
e. Trim: Bronze.
f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.20 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

B. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

C. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

D. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.

e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

E. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

F. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

G. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

H. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

2.21 ECCENTRIC PLUG VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Eccentric Plug Valves with Resilient Seating.

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-108.
b. CWP Rating: 175 psig minimum.
c. Body and Plug: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray iron; ASTM A 126, gray iron; or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
d. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Stem-Seal Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Plug, Resilient-Seating Material: Suitable for potable-water service unless otherwise indicated.

2.22 CHAINWHEELS

A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
2. Attachment: For connection to ball butterfly and plug valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron, of type and size required for valve.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball butterfly gate globe and plug valves NPS 8 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
4. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe or butterfly valves.
5. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 CHILLED-WATER, CONDENSER WATER AND HOT WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
2. Ball Valves: Three piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, NRS, bronze.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 150.
3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: 150 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 175 CWP.
6. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
7. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
8. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
9. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
10. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 150, compact-wafer, resilient seat.
11. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 150; single plate; resilient seat.
12. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
13. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.
14. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125, flanged.
15. Eccentric Plug Valves: 175 CWP, resilient seating.

3.6 LOW-PRESSURE STEAM VALVE SCHEDULE (15 PSIG OR LESS)

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
2. Ball Valves: One piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, NRS.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 150.
3. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
7. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125.

3.7 HIGH-PRESSURE STEAM VALVE SCHEDULE (MORE THAN 15 PSIG

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
2. Ball Valves: One piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, NRS, bronze.
5. Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze, bronze disc.

B. Pipe Sizes NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 150, iron.
3. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 300, single flange.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 250, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 250, OS&Y.
7. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 250.

3.8 STEAM-CONDENSATE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
2. Ball Valves: One piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, NRS.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 150.
3. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 250, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 250, OS&Y.
7. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 250.
8. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 250, flanged.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for HVAC system piping and equipment:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-protection piping.
3. Division 23 Section " Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
4. Division 23 Section " Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.
5. Division 23 Section(s) " Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel.", AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel.", AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel." and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
4. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
5. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.

B. Material: Carbon Steel

C. Coating: Galvanized, Hot dipped galvanized

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.

B. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

C. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.

D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.7 PIPE STAND FABRICATION

A. Pipe Stands, General: Shop or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod-roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

1. Base: Plastic.
2. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
3. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

1. Bases: One or more plastic.
2. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
3. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
4. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe support made from structural-steel shape, continuous-thread rods, and rollers for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.

14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.

7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.1 (for power piping) and ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.

N. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.1 for power piping and ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 2”.

3.6 PAINTING

A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 48

VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Isolation pads.
2. Isolation mounts.
3. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
4. Housed spring mounts.
5. Spring hangers.
6. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
7. Seismic snubbers.
8. Restraining braces and cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the mechanical system. The requirements for these restraints are found in the North Carolina State Building Code and ASCE 7.

B. The Mechanical Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical System" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for sheet metal ducts, piping, and conduit, etc.

C. The Mechanical Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment systems, and assemblies.

D. For all existing mechanical equipment noted to remain, the Mechanical Contractor shall visit the site to document existing seismic restraints, or lack thereof. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide this information to the Professional Structural Engineer retained to design seismic restraint elements for this project. The Professional Structural Engineer shall review the existing restraints, and indicate any additional requirements. Computations and shop drawings shall include all existing mechanical equipment noted to remain.

E. The professional engineer retained by the Mechanical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation related to seismic restraints.

F. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the NC State Building Code (Chapter 16) and ASCE 7, as determined by the project Structural Engineer of record.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the NC State Building Code (Chapter 16) and ASCE 7.

    a. Component Importance Factor.
    b. Component Response Modification Factor.
    c. Component Amplification Factor.

3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.

    a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.

    a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.

3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:

    a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
    c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
    d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

F. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code, Section 1607.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The professional Engineer retained by the Mechanical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable.

B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control.
2. Mason Industries.
3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
4. Vibration Isolation.
5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.

C. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.

1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.

D. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.

1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.

E. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

F. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

G. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.

1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.

H. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

I. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.

8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Mason Industries.
2. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
3. Vibration Isolation.
4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Hilti, Inc.
2. Kinetics Noise Control.
3. Mason Industries.

B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

C. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.

D. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

E. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

F. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.

G. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

H. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

I. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

J. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

K. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.

1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

B. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

C. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

I. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.

6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
7. Measure isolator deflection.
8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
9. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 05 53

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Valve tags.

1.2 SUBMITTAL

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment (Note: Plastic Labels utilized in a return air plenum shall be listed and approved for use in a return air plenum):

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Red.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Red.

C. Background Color: White.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction. (Note: Plastic Labels utilized in a return air plenum shall be listed and approved for use in a return air plenum):

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

C. Major mechanical equipment shall include:

1. VAV Boxes
2. Air Handlers
3. All AC units and heat pump units (split or packaged, water or air cooled)
4. Fan coil units
5. Chillers
6. Boilers
7. Pumps
8. Fans
9. Expansion Tanks
10. Air Separators
11. Cooling towers

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09.

B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Chilled-Water Piping:

a. Background Color: Green.
b. Letter Color: White.

2. Dual Temperature Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Letter Color: White.

3. Condenser-Water Piping:
   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Letter Color: White.

4. Heating Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

5. Refrigerant Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

6. Drain Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; and shutoff valves. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

   a. Chilled Water: 2 inches, round.
   b. Dual Temperature Water: 2 inches, round.
   c. Refrigerant: 2 inches, round.
   d. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
   e. Gas: 2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Color:

   a. Chilled Water: Natural.
   b. Dual Temperature Water: Natural.
   c. Refrigerant: Natural.
   d. Hot Water: Natural.
   e. Gas: Natural.

3. Letter Color:

   a. Chilled Water: Black.
   b. Dual Temperature Water: Black.
   c. Refrigerant: Black.

d. Hot Water: Black.
e. Gas: Black.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes TAB to produce design objectives for the following:

1. Air Systems:

    a. Constant-volume air systems.
    b. Dual-duct systems.
    c. Variable-air-volume systems.
    d. Multizone systems.
    e. Induction-unit systems.

2. Hydronic Piping Systems:

    a. Constant-flow systems.
    b. Variable-flow systems.
    c. Primary-secondary systems.

3. Steam systems.
4. HVAC equipment quantitative-performance settings.
5. Kitchen hood airflow balancing.
6. Laboratory fume hood airflow balancing.
7. Exhaust hood airflow balancing.
8. Space pressurization testing and adjusting.
9. Vibration measuring.
10. Sound level measuring.
11. Stair-tower pressurization testing and adjusting.
12. Smoke-control systems testing and adjusting.
13. Indoor-air quality measuring.
14. Existing systems TAB.
15. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
16. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Adjust: To regulate fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment, such as to reduce fan speed or adjust a damper.

B. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system, including submains, branches, and terminals, according to indicated quantities.

C. Barrier or Boundary: Construction, either vertical or horizontal, such as walls, floors, and ceilings that are designed and constructed to restrict the movement of airflow, smoke, odors, and other pollutants.

D. Draft: A current of air, when referring to localized effect caused by one or more factors of high air velocity, low ambient temperature, or direction of airflow, whereby more heat is withdrawn from a person's skin than is normally dissipated.

E. NC: Noise criteria.

F. Procedure: An approach to and execution of a sequence of work operations to yield repeatable results.

G. RC: Room criteria.

H. Report Forms: Test data sheets for recording test data in logical order.

I. Smoke-Control System: An engineered system that uses fans to produce airflow and pressure differences across barriers to limit smoke movement.

J. Smoke-Control Zone: A space within a building that is enclosed by smoke barriers and is a part of a zoned smoke-control system.

K. Stair Pressurization System: A type of smoke-control system that is intended to positively pressurize stair towers with outdoor air by using fans to keep smoke from contaminating the stair towers during an alarm condition.

L. Static Head: The pressure due to the weight of the fluid above the point of measurement. In a closed system, static head is equal on both sides of the pump.

M. Suction Head: The height of fluid surface above the centerline of the pump on the suction side.

N. System Effect: A phenomenon that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

O. System Effect Factors: Allowances used to calculate a reduction of the performance ratings of a fan when installed under conditions different from those presented when the fan was performance tested.

P. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

Q. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.

R. Test: A procedure to determine quantitative performance of systems or equipment.

S. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Firm: The entity responsible for performing and reporting TAB procedures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED Submittals:

1. Air Balance Report for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
2. TAB Report for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

B. Qualification Data: Within 15 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of evidence that TAB firm and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

C. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 45 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

D. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.

E. Certified TAB Reports: Submit two copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by TAB firm.

F. Sample Report Forms: Submit two sets of sample TAB report forms.

G. Warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by AABC or NEBB.

B. TAB Conference: Meet with Owner's and Architect's representatives on approval of TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Ensure the participation of TAB team members, equipment manufacturers' authorized service representatives, HVAC controls installers, and other support personnel. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Agenda Items: Include at least the following:

   a. Submittal distribution requirements.
   b. The Contract Documents examination report.
   c. TAB plan.
   d. Work schedule and Project-site access requirements.
   e. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
   f. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard forms from AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems." or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, and Accuracy: As described in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems," Section II, "Required Instrumentation for NEBB Certification."

F. Instrumentation Calibration: Calibrate instruments at least every six months or more frequently if required by instrument manufacturer.

1. Keep an updated record of instrument calibration that indicates date of calibration and the name of party performing instrument calibration.

G. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

H. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.

B. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

C. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. National Project Performance Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" forms stating that AABC will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee includes the following provisions:

1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

B. Special Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on NEBB forms stating that NEBB will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee shall include the following provisions:

1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

1. Contract Documents are defined in the General and Supplementary Conditions of Contract.
2. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.

C. Examine Project Record Documents described in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."

D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.

F. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.

G. Examine system and equipment test reports.

H. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

I. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.

J. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

K. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

L. Examine plenum ceilings used for supply air to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.

M. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.

N. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

O. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

P. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

Q. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.

R. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:

1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including two-way valves and three-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
8. Controller set points are set at indicated values.
9. Interlocked systems are operating.
10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.

S. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems", NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and this Section.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.

C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.

L. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:

    a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
    d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

2. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.

    a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.

3. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices such as sound traps, heat recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
4. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
5. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, economizer, and any other operating modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

    a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR DUAL-DUCT SYSTEMS

A. Verify that the cooling coil is capable of full-system airflow, and set mixing boxes at full-cold airflow position for fan volume.

B. Measure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate mixing-box controls and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing box.

1. If insufficient static pressure exists, increase the airflow at the fan.

C. Test and adjust the constant-volume mixing boxes as follows:

1. Verify both hot and cold operations by adjusting the thermostat and observing the air temperature and volume changes.
2. Verify sufficient inlet static pressure before making volume adjustments.
3. Adjust mixing box to indicated airflows within specified tolerances. Measure the airflow by Pitot-tube traverse readings, totaling the airflow of the outlets; or by measuring static pressure at mixing-box taps if provided by box manufacturer.

D. Remeasure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate mixing-box controls and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing box.

E. Adjust variable-air-volume, dual-duct systems in the same way as constant-volume dual-duct systems, and adjust each mixing-box maximum- and minimum-airflow settings.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a maximum set-point airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.

B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Set outside-air dampers at minimum, and return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.

    a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.

6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.
7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
8. Record the final fan performance data.

C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Balance systems similar to constant-volume air systems.
2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan, if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.

7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.

    a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.

8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.

D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

A. Set unit at full flow through the cooling coil if coil has that capacity.

B. Adjust each zone damper to indicated airflow.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR INDUCTION-UNIT SYSTEMS

A. Balance primary-air risers by measuring static pressure at the nozzles of the top and bottom units of each riser to determine which risers must be throttled. Adjust risers to indicated airflow within specified tolerances.

B. Adjust each induction unit.

3.10 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:

1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
2. Check expansion tank liquid level.
3. Check makeup-water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation and set at indicated flow.
5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures, except for positive-displacement pumps:

1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 5 percent of design.

B. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.

C. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.

1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.

D. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.

E. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:

1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

F. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.

G. Measure the differential-pressure control valve settings existing at the conclusions of balancing.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance the primary system crossover flow first, then balance the secondary system.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR STEAM SYSTEMS

A. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.

B. Measure and record upstream and downstream steam pressure of pressure-reducing valves.

C. Check the setting and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record the final setting.

D. Check the settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

E. Verify the operation of each steam trap.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

A. Measure water flow through all circuits.

B. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.

C. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.

D. Measure inlet steam pressure.

E. Check the setting and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

3.17 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. If water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatt.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatt.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. If air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.18 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:

1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
3. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
4. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
6. Measure cooling tower pump discharge pressure.
7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup-water system.

3.19 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record compressor data.

3.20 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

A. If hydronic, measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

B. If steam, measure entering-water temperature and flow and leaving steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

3.21 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Electric-Heating Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Steam Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Air pressure drop.
4. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Refrigerant Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.22 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.

B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.

C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

3.23 PROCEDURES FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each kitchen hood. For kitchen hoods designed with integral makeup air, measure and adjust the exhaust and makeup airflow. Measure airflow by duct Pitot-tube traverse. If a duct Pitot-tube traverse is not possible, provide an explanation in the report of the reason(s) why and also the reason why the method used was chosen.

1. Install welded test ports in the sides of the exhaust duct for the duct Pitot-tube traverse. Install each test port with a threaded cap that is liquid tight.

B. After balancing is complete, do the following:

1. Measure and record the static pressure at the hood exhaust-duct connection.
2. Measure and record the hood face velocity. Make measurements at multiple points across the face of the hood. Perform measurements at a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) between points and between any point and the perimeter. Calculate the average of the measurements recorded. Verify that the hood average face velocity complies with the Contract Documents and governing codes.
3. Check the hood for capture and containment of smoke using a smoke emitting device. Observe the smoke pattern. Make adjustments to room airflow patterns to achieve optimum results.

C. Visually inspect the hood exhaust duct throughout its entire length in compliance with authorities having jurisdiction. Begin at the hood connection and end at the point it discharges outdoors. Report findings.

1. Check duct slopes as required.
2. Verify that duct access is installed as required.
3. Verify that point of termination is as required.
4. Verify that duct air velocity is within the range required.
5. Verify that duct is within a fire-rated enclosure.

D. Report deficiencies.

3.24 PROCEDURES FOR LABORATORY FUME HOODS

A. Before performing laboratory fume hood testing, measure, adjust and record the supply airflow and airflow patterns of each supply air outlet that is located in the same room as the hood. Adjust the air outlet flow pattern to minimize turbulence and to achieve the desired airflow patterns at the face and inside the hood. Verify that adequate makeup air is available to achieve the indicated flow of the hood.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each laboratory fume hood by duct Pitot-tube traverse with the laboratory fume hood sash in the design open position.

1. For laboratory fume hoods installed in variable exhaust systems, measure, adjust, and record the hood exhaust airflow at maximum and at minimum airflow conditions.
2. For laboratory fume hoods designed with integral makeup air, measure, adjust, and record the exhaust and makeup airflow.

C. For laboratory fume hoods that are connected to centralized exhaust systems using automatic dampers, adjust the damper controller to obtain the indicated exhaust airflow.

D. After balancing is complete, do the following:

1. Measure and record the static pressure at the hood duct connection with the hood operating at indicated airflow.
2. Measure and record the face velocity across the open sash face area. Measure the face velocity at each point in a grid pattern. Perform measurements at a maximum of 12 inches between points and between any point and the perimeter of the opening.

    a. For laboratory fume hoods designed to maintain a constant face velocity at varying sash positions, also measure and record the face velocity at 50 and 25 percent of the design open sash position.
    b. Calculate and report the average face velocity by averaging all velocity measurements.
    c. Calculate and report the exhaust airflow by multiplying the calculated average face velocity by the sash open area. Compare this quantity with the exhaust airflow measured by duct Pitot-tube traverse. Report differences.
    d. If the average face velocity is less than the indicated face velocity, retest the average face velocity and adjust hood baffles, fan drives, and other parts of the system to provide the indicated average face velocity.

3. Check each laboratory fume hood for the capture and containment of smoke by using a hand-held emitting device. Observe the capture and containment of smoke flow pattern across the open face and inside the hood. Make adjustments necessary to achieve the desired results.

E. With the room and laboratory fume hoods operating at indicated conditions, perform an "as-installed" performance test of the laboratory fume hood according to ASHRAE 110. Test each laboratory fume hood(s) and document the test results.

3.25 PROCEDURES FOR EXHAUST HOODS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each exhaust hood. Measure airflow by duct Pitot-tube traverse. If a duct Pitot-tube traverse is not possible, explain why, in the report, and explain the test method used.

B. After balancing is complete, do the following:

1. Measure and record the static pressure at the hood exhaust-duct connection.
2. Check the hood for capture and containment of smoke using a smoke emitting device. Observe the smoke pattern. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.

3.26 PROCEDURES FOR SPACE PRESSURIZATION MEASUREMENTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Before testing for space pressurization, observe the space to verify the integrity of the space boundaries. Verify that windows and doors are closed and applicable safing, gaskets, and sealants are installed. Report deficiencies and postpone testing until after the reported deficiencies are corrected.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the pressurization of each room, each zone, and each building by adjusting the supply, return, and exhaust airflows to achieve the indicated conditions.

C. Measure space pressure differential where pressure is used as the design criteria, and measure airflow differential where differential airflow is used as the design criteria for space pressurization.

1. For pressure measurements, measure and record the pressure difference between the intended spaces at the door with all doors in the space closed. Record the high-pressure side, low-pressure side, and pressure difference between each adjacent space.
2. For applications with cascading levels of space pressurization, begin in the most critical space and work to the least critical space.
3. Test room pressurization first, then zones, and finish with building pressurization.

D. To achieve indicated pressurization, set the supply airflow to the indicated conditions and adjust the exhaust and return airflow to achieve the indicated pressure or airflow difference.

E. For spaces with pressurization being monitored and controlled automatically, observe and adjust the controls to achieve the desired set point.

1. Compare the values of the measurements taken to the measured values of the control system instruments and report findings.
2. Check the repeatability of the controls by successive tests designed to temporarily alter the ability to achieve space pressurization. Test overpressurization and underpressurization, and observe and report on the system's ability to revert to the set point.
3. For spaces served by variable-air-volume supply and exhaust systems, measure space pressurization at indicated airflow and minimum airflow conditions.

F. In spaces that employ multiple modes of operation, such as normal mode and emergency mode or occupied mode and unoccupied mode, measure, adjust, and record data for each operating mode.

G. Record indicated conditions and corresponding initial and final measurements. Report deficiencies.

3.27 PROCEDURES FOR VIBRATION MEASUREMENTS

A. Use a vibration meter meeting the following criteria:

1. Solid-state circuitry with a piezoelectric accelerometer.
2. Velocity range of 0.1 to 10 inches per second.
3. Displacement range of 1 to 100 mils.
4. Frequency range of at least 0 to 1000 Hz.
5. Capable of filtering unwanted frequencies.

B. Calibrate the vibration meter before each day of testing.

1. Use a calibrator provided with the vibration meter.
2. Follow vibration meter and calibrator manufacturer's calibration procedures.

C. Perform vibration measurements when other building and outdoor vibration sources are at a minimum level and will not influence measurements of equipment being tested.

1. Turn off equipment in the building that might interfere with testing.
2. Clear the space of people.

D. Perform vibration measurements after air and water balancing and equipment testing is complete.

E. Clean equipment surfaces in contact with the vibration transducer.

F. Position the vibration transducer according to manufacturer's written instructions and to avoid interference with the operation of the equipment being tested.

G. Measure and record vibration on rotating equipment over 3 hp.

H. Measure and record equipment vibration, bearing vibration, equipment base vibration, and building structure vibration. Record velocity and displacement readings in the horizontal, vertical, and axial planes.

1. Pumps:

a. Pump Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
b. Motor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
c. Pump Base: Top and side.
d. Building: Floor.
e. Piping: To and from the pump after flexible connections.

2. Fans and HVAC Equipment with Fans:

a. Fan Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
b. Motor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
c. Equipment Casing: Top and side.
d. Equipment Base: Top and side.
e. Building: Floor.
f. Ductwork: To and from equipment after flexible connections.
g. Piping: To and from equipment after flexible connections.

3. Chillers and HVAC Equipment with Compressors:

a. Compressor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
b. Motor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
c. Equipment Casing: Top and side.
d. Equipment Base: Top and side.
e. Building: Floor.
f. Piping: To and from equipment after flexible connections.

I. For equipment with vibration isolation, take floor measurements with the vibration isolation blocked solid to the floor and with the vibration isolation floating. Calculate and report the differences.

J. Inspect, measure, and record vibration isolation.

1. Verify that vibration isolation is installed in the required locations.
2. Verify that installation is level and plumb.
3. Verify that isolators are properly anchored.
4. For spring isolators, measure the compressed spring height, the spring OD, and the travel-to-solid distance.

5. Measure the operating clearance between each inertia base and the floor or concrete base below. Verify that there is unobstructed clearance between the bottom of the inertia base and the floor.

3.28 PROCEDURES FOR SOUND-LEVEL MEASUREMENTS

A. Perform sound-pressure-level measurements with an octave-band analyzer complying with ANSI S1.4 for Type 1 sound-level meters and ANSI S1.11 for octave-band filters. Comply with requirements in ANSI S1.13, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calibrate sound meters before each day of testing. Use a calibrator provided with the sound meter complying with ANSI S1.40 and that has NIST certification.

C. Use a microphone that is suitable for the type of sound levels measured. For areas where air velocities exceed 100 fpm, use a windscreen on the microphone.

D. Perform sound-level testing after air and water balancing and equipment testing are complete.

E. Close windows and doors to the space.

F. Perform measurements when the space is not occupied and when the occupant noise level from other spaces in the building and outside are at a minimum.

G. Clear the space of temporary sound sources so unrelated disturbances will not be measured. Position testing personnel during measurements to achieve a direct line-of-sight between the sound source and the sound-level meter.

H. Take sound measurements at a height approximately 48 inches above the floor and at least 36 inches from a wall, column, and other large surface capable of altering the measurements.

I. Take sound measurements in dBA and in each of the 8 unweighted octave bands in the frequency range of 63 to 8000 Hz.

J. Take sound measurements with the HVAC systems off to establish the background sound levels and take sound measurements with the HVAC systems operating.

1. Calculate the difference between measurements. Apply a correction factor depending on the difference and adjust measurements.

K. Perform sound testing at <**Insert number**> locations on Project for each of the following space types. For each space type tested, select a measurement location that has the greatest sound level. If testing multiple locations for each space type, select at least one location that is near and at least one location that is remote from the predominant sound source.

1. Private office.
2. Open office area.
3. Conference room.
4. Auditorium/large meeting room/lecture hall.
5. Classroom/training room.
6. Patient room/exam room.
7. Sound or vibration sensitive laboratory.
8. Hotel room/apartment.
9. Each space with a noise criterion of RC or NC 25 or lower.

10. Each space with an indicated noise criterion of RC or NC 35 and lower that is adjacent to a mechanical equipment room or roof mounted equipment.
11. Inside each mechanical equipment room.

3.29 PROCEDURES FOR STAIR-TOWER PRESSURIZATION SYSTEM MEASUREMENTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Before testing, observe the stair tower to verify that construction is complete. Verify the following:

1. Walls and ceiling are free of unintended openings and are capable of achieving a pressure boundary.
2. Firestopping and sealants are installed.
3. Doors, door closers, and door gaskets are installed and adjusted.
4. If applicable, window installation is complete.

B. Measure and record wind speed and direction, outside-air temperature, and relative humidity on each test day.

C. Test each stair tower as a single system. If multiple fans serve a single stair tower, operate the fans together.

D. Air Balance:

1. Open the doors indicated to be open and measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each:

   a. Stair-tower fan.
   b. Air outlet supplying the stair tower.

2. For ducted systems, measure the fan airflow by duct Pitot-tube traverse.

E. Pressurization Test:

1. After air balancing is complete, perform stair-tower pressurization tests.
2. Establish a consistent procedure for recording data throughout the entire test. Set the stair-tower side of the doors as the reference point and the floor side of the doors with positive pressure when higher than the stair tower, and negative pressure when lower than the stair tower.
3. With the HVAC systems operating in their normal mode of operation and the stair-tower pressurization systems off, measure and record the following:

   a. Pressure difference across each stair-tower door with all doors in the stairwell closed.
   b. Force necessary to open each door, using a spring-type scale.

4. With the HVAC systems operating and the stair-tower pressurization system activated, perform the following:

   a. Place building HVAC systems in their normal operating mode including equipment not used to implement smoke control, such as air-handling units, toilet exhaust fans, fan coil units, and similar equipment.

b. Measure and record the pressure difference across each stair-tower door with all doors in the stair tower closed. Adjust the stair-tower pressure relief to prevent overpressurization.
c. Use a spring scale to measure and record the force needed to open the door closest to the fan. With the initial door held in the open position, measure and record the pressure difference across each remaining closed stair-tower door.
d. Open additional doors (up to the number indicated) one at a time, and measure and record the pressure difference across each remaining closed stair-tower door after the opening of each additional door.
e. Open the doors indicated to be open and measure and record the direction and velocity through each of the open doors by a traverse of every 1 sq. ft. grid of door opening.
f. Calculate the average of the door velocity measurements. Compare the average velocity to the Contract Documents and governing code requirements.

5. Repeat the pressurization tests with the smoke-control systems and the HVAC systems operating.
6. Criteria for Acceptance:

a. The opening force on any door shall not exceed 30 lbf.
b. Code requirements.

F. Operational Tests:

1. Check the proper activation of the stair-tower pressurization system(s) in response to all means of activation, both automatic and manual.
2. Verify that each initiating occurrence produces the proper system response under each of the following modes of operation:

a. Normal.
b. Alarm.
c. Manual override of normal mode and alarm.
d. Return to normal.

3. Verify that the smoke detector at the stair pressurization fan inlet de-energizes the fan and closes the damper at the fan.
4. If standby power is provided for stair pressurization systems, test to verify that the stair pressurization systems operate while on both normal and standby power.
5. Conduct additional tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Prepare a complete report of observations, measurements, and deficiencies.

3.30 PROCEDURES FOR SMOKE-CONTROL SYSTEM TESTING

A. Before testing smoke-control systems, verify that construction is complete and verify the integrity of each smoke-control zone boundary. Verify that windows and doors are closed and that applicable safing, gasket, and sealants are installed. Report deficiencies and postpone testing until after the reported deficiencies are corrected.

B. Measure and record wind speed and direction, outside-air temperature, and relative humidity on each test day.

C. Measure, adjust, and record airflow of each smoke-control system with all fans that are a part of the system operating as intended by the design.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each fan. For ducted systems, measure the fan airflow by duct Pitot-tube traverse.

E. After air balancing is complete, perform the following pressurization testing for each smoke-control zone in the system:

1. Verify the boundaries of each smoke-control zone.
2. With the HVAC systems in their normal mode of operation and smoke control not operating, measure and record the pressure difference across each smoke-control zone. Make measurements after closing doors that separate the zones. Make one measurement across each door. Clearly indicate the high and low pressure side of each door.
3. With the system operating in the smoke-control mode and with each zone in the smoke-control system activated, perform the following:

    a. Measure and record the pressure difference across each door that separates the smoke zone from adjacent zones. Make measurements with doors that separate the smoke zone from the other zones closed. Clearly indicate the high and low pressure side of the door. Doors that have a tendency to open slightly due to the pressure difference should have one pressure measurement made while held closed and another measurement made with the door open.
    b. Continue to activate each separate zoned smoke-control system and make pressure difference measurements.
    c. After testing a smoke zone's smoke-control system, deactivate the HVAC systems involved and return them to their normal operating mode before activating another zone's smoke-control system.
    d. Verify that controls necessary to prevent excessive pressure differences are functional.

F. Operational Tests:

1. Check the proper activation of each zoned smoke-control system in response to all means of activation, both automatic and manual.
2. Check automatic activation in response to fire alarm signals received from the building's fire alarm and detection system. Initiate a separate alarm for each means of activation to ensure that the proper operation of the correct zoned smoke-control system occurs.
3. Check and record the proper operation of fans, dampers, and related equipment as outlined below for each separate zone of the smoke-control system.

    a. Fire zone in which a smoke-control system automatically activates.
    b. Type of signal that activates a smoke-control system, such as pull station, sprinkler water flow, or smoke detector.
    c. Smoke zone(s) where maximum mechanical exhaust to the outside is implemented and no supply air is provided.
    d. Positive pressure smoke-control zone(s) where maximum air supply is implemented and no exhaust to the outside is provided.
    e. Fan(s) "ON" as required to implement the smoke-control system. Multiple- or variable-speed fans should be further noted as "MAX. VOLUME" to verify that the intended control configuration is achieved.
    f. Fan(s) "OFF" as required to implement the smoke-control system.
    g. Damper(s) "OPEN" where maximum airflow must be achieved.

h. Damper(s) "CLOSED" where no airflow should take place.
i. Auxiliary functions to achieve the smoke-control system configuration such as changes or override of normal operating pressure and temperature-control set points.
j. If standby power is provided for the smoke-control system, test to verify that the system functions while operating under both normal and standby power.

G. Conduct additional tests required by authorities having jurisdiction. Unless required by authorities having jurisdiction, perform testing without the use of smoke or products that simulate smoke.

H. Prepare a complete report of observations, measurements, and deficiencies.

3.31 PROCEDURES FOR INDOOR-AIR QUALITY MEASUREMENTS

A. After air balancing is complete and with HVAC systems operating at indicated conditions, perform indoor-air quality testing.

B. Observe and record the following conditions for each HVAC system:

1. The distance between the outside-air intake and the closest exhaust fan discharge, cooling tower, flue termination, or vent termination.
2. Specified filters are installed. Check for leakage around filters.
3. Cooling coil drain pans have a positive slope to drain.
4. Cooling coil condensate drain trap maintains an air seal.
5. Evidence of water damage.
6. Insulation in contact with the supply, return, and outside air is dry and clean.

C. Measure and record indoor conditions served by each HVAC system. Make measurements at multiple locations served by the system if required to satisfy the following:

1. Most remote area.
2. One location per floor.
3. One location for every 5000 sq. ft..

D. Measure and record the following indoor conditions for each location two times at two-hour intervals, and in accordance with ASHRAE 113:

1. Temperature.
2. Relative humidity.
3. Air velocity.
4. Concentration of carbon dioxide (ppm).
5. Concentration of carbon monoxide (ppm).
6. Nitrogen oxides (ppm).
7. Formaldehyde (ppm).

3.32 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.

2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished.

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows and determine the new fan, speed, filter, and coil face velocity.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated airflow and water flow rates. If 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Air balance each air outlet.

3.33 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.

B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.

C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.

D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).

E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.

F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.

G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.

H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.

I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.

J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.

K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

3.34 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances (code required minimums must meet or exceed rates indicated on plans):

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Minus 5 to plus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: minus 10 to plus 10 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: minus 10 to plus 10 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: minus 10 to plus 10 percent.

3.35 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: As Work progresses, prepare reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.36 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.

B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.

1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of TAB firm.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

    a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

F. Air-Handling Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data: Include the following:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.

c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Unit arrangement and class.
g. Discharge arrangement.
h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
i. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
j. Number of belts, make, and size.
k. Number of filters, type, and size.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
i. Outside airflow in cfm.
j. Return airflow in cfm.
k. Outside-air damper position.
l. Return-air damper position.
m. Vortex damper position.

G. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil type.
d. Number of rows.
e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
f. Make and model number.
g. Face area in sq. ft..
h. Tube size in NPS.
i. Tube and fin materials.
j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.

b. Average face velocity in fpm.
c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
d. Outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
h. Water flow rate in gpm.
i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

H. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Fuel type in input data.
g. Output capacity in Btuh.
h. Ignition type.
i. Burner-control types.
j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
n. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Low-fire fuel input in Btuh.
i. High-fire fuel input in Btuh.
j. Manifold pressure in psig.
k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
l. Operating set point in Btuh.
m. Motor voltage at each connection.
n. Motor amperage for each phase.
o. Heating value of fuel in Btuh.

I. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btuh.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Airflow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Heat output in Btuh.
b. Airflow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

J. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number of belts, make, and size.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.

d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

K. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

a. System and air-handling unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft..
g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

L. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Test apparatus used.
d. Area served.
e. Air-terminal-device make.
f. Air-terminal-device number from system diagram.
g. Air-terminal-device type and model number.
h. Air-terminal-device size.
i. Air-terminal-device effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Air velocity in fpm.
c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
f. Final velocity in fpm.
g. Space temperature in deg F.

M. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Room or riser served.
d. Coil make and size.
e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
    e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

N. Packaged Chiller Reports:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Make and model number.
    c. Manufacturer's serial number.
    d. Refrigerant type and capacity in gal..
    e. Starter type and size.
    f. Starter thermal protection size.
    g. Compressor make and model number.
    h. Compressor manufacturer's serial number.

2. Water-Cooled Condenser Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Refrigerant pressure in psig.
    b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    e. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
    f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

3. Air-Cooled Condenser Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Refrigerant pressure in psig.
    b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering- and leaving-air temperature in deg F.

4. Evaporator Test Reports (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Refrigerant pressure in psig.
    b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    e. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
    f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

5. Compressor Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Suction pressure in psig.
    b. Suction temperature in deg F.
    c. Discharge pressure in psig.
    d. Discharge temperature in deg F.
    e. Oil pressure in psig.
    f. Oil temperature in deg F.

g. Voltage at each connection.
h. Amperage for each phase.
i. Kilowatt input.
j. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
k. Chilled-water control set point in deg F.
l. Condenser-water control set point in deg F.
m. Refrigerant low-pressure-cutoff set point in psig.
n. Refrigerant high-pressure-cutoff set point in psig.

6. Refrigerant Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Oil level.
b. Refrigerant level.
c. Relief valve setting in psig.
d. Unloader set points in psig.
e. Percentage of cylinders unloaded.
f. Bearing temperatures in deg F.
g. Vane position.
h. Low-temperature-cutoff set point in deg F.

O. Compressor and Condenser Reports: For refrigerant side of unitary systems, stand-alone refrigerant compressors, air-cooled condensing units, or water-cooled condensing units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Unit make and model number.
d. Compressor make.
e. Compressor model and serial numbers.
f. Refrigerant weight in lb.
g. Low ambient temperature cutoff in deg F.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Inlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
b. Outlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
c. Entering-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F.
d. Leaving-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F.
e. Condenser entering-water temperature in deg F.
f. Condenser leaving-water temperature in deg F.
g. Condenser-water temperature differential in deg F.
h. Condenser entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Condenser leaving-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
j. Condenser-water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
k. Control settings.
l. Unloader set points.
m. Low-pressure-cutout set point in psig.
n. High-pressure-cutout set point in psig.
o. Suction pressure in psig.
p. Suction temperature in deg F.
q. Condenser refrigerant pressure in psig.

r. Condenser refrigerant temperature in deg F.
s. Oil pressure in psig.
t. Oil temperature in deg F.
u. Voltage at each connection.
v. Amperage for each phase.
w. Kilowatt input.
x. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
y. Number of fans.
z. Condenser fan rpm.
aa. Condenser fan airflow rate in cfm.
bb. Condenser fan motor make, frame size, rpm, and horsepower.
cc. Condenser fan motor voltage at each connection.
dd. Condenser fan motor amperage for each phase.

P. Cooling Tower or Condenser Test Reports: For cooling towers or condensers, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Make and type.
c. Model and serial numbers.
d. Nominal cooling capacity in tons.
e. Refrigerant type and weight in lb.
f. Water-treatment chemical feeder and chemical.
g. Number and type of fans.
h. Fan motor make, frame size, rpm, and horsepower.
i. Fan motor voltage at each connection.
j. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
k. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
l. Number of belts, make, and size.
m. Pump make and model number.
n. Pump manufacturer's serial number.
o. Pump motor make and frame size.
p. Pump motor horsepower and rpm.

2. Pump Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Voltage at each connection.
b. Amperage for each phase.
c. Water flow rate in gpm.

3. Water Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
b. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
c. Water temperature differential in deg F.
d. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
e. Leaving-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
g. Water flow rate in gpm.
h. Bleed water flow rate in gpm.

4. Air Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Duct airflow rate in cfm.
    b. Inlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
    c. Outlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
    d. Average entering-air, wet-bulb temperature in deg F.
    e. Average leaving-air, wet-bulb temperature in deg F.
    f. Ambient wet-bulb temperature in deg F.

Q. Heat-Exchanger/Converter Test Reports: For steam and hot-water heat exchangers, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Service.
    d. Make and type.
    e. Model and serial numbers.
    f. Ratings.

2. Steam Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Inlet pressure in psig.
    b. Condensate flow rate in lb/h.

3. Primary Water Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    b. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
    d. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    e. Water flow rate in gpm.

4. Secondary Water Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    b. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
    d. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    e. Water flow rate in gpm.

R. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Service.
    d. Make and size.
    e. Model and serial numbers.
    f. Water flow rate in gpm.
    g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Impeller diameter in inches.
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.
n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

S. Boiler Test Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and type.
e. Model and serial numbers.
f. Fuel type and input in Btuh.
g. Number of passes.
h. Ignition type.
i. Burner-control types.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Operating pressure in psig.
b. Operating temperature in deg F.
c. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
e. Number of safety valves and sizes in NPS.
f. Safety valve settings in psig.
g. High-limit setting in psig.
h. Operating-control setting.
i. High-fire set point.
j. Low-fire set point.
k. Voltage at each connection.

l. Amperage for each phase.
m. Draft fan voltage at each connection.
n. Draft fan amperage for each phase.
o. Manifold pressure in psig.

T. Air-to-Air Heat-Recovery Unit Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and type.
e. Model and serial numbers.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. If fans are an integral part of the unit, include the following for each fan:

a. Make and type.
b. Arrangement and size.
c. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
d. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

4. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total exhaust airflow rate in cfm.
b. Purge exhaust airflow rate in cfm.
c. Outside airflow rate in cfm.
d. Total exhaust fan static pressure in inches wg.
e. Total outside-air fan static pressure in inches wg.
f. Pressure drop on each side of recovery wheel in inches wg.
g. Exhaust air temperature entering in deg F.
h. Exhaust air temperature leaving in deg F.
i. Outside-air temperature entering in deg F.
j. Outside-air temperature leaving in deg F.
k. Calculate sensible and total heat capacity of each airstream in MBh.

U. Vibration Measurement Reports:

1. Date and time of test.
2. Vibration meter manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
3. Equipment designation, location, equipment, speed, motor speed, and motor horsepower.
4. Diagram of equipment showing the vibration measurement locations.
5. Measurement readings for each measurement location.
6. Calculate isolator efficiency using measurements taken.
7. Description of predominant vibration source.

V. Sound Measurement Reports: Record sound measurements on octave band and dBA test forms and on an NC or RC chart indicating the decibel level measured in each frequency band for both "background" and "HVAC system operating" readings. Record each tested location on a separate NC or RC chart. Record the following on the forms:

1. Date and time of test. Record each tested location on its own NC curve.
2. Sound meter manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
3. Space location within the building including floor level and room number.
4. Diagram or color photograph of the space showing the measurement location.
5. Time weighting of measurements, either fast or slow.
6. Description of the measured sound: steady, transient, or tonal.
7. Description of predominant sound source.

W. Indoor-Air Quality Measurement Reports for Each HVAC System:

1. HVAC system designation.
2. Date and time of test.
3. Outdoor temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, and wind direction at start of test.
4. Room number or similar description for each location.
5. Measurements at each location.
6. Observed deficiencies.

X. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.37 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the Final Report.
2. Randomly check the following for each system:

a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
d. Measure sound levels at two locations.
e. Measure space pressure of at least 10 percent of locations.
f. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
g. Note deviations to the Contract Documents in the Final Report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and evidence by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect.
2. TAB firm test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect.
3. Architect shall randomly select measurements documented in the final report to be rechecked. The rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded, or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If the rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
6. TAB firm shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes and resubmit the final report.
7. Request a second final inspection. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner shall contract the services of another TAB firm to complete the testing and balancing in accordance with the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the final payment.

3.38 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 07 00

HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:

    a. Calcium silicate.
    b. Cellular glass.
    c. Flexible elastomeric.
    d. Mineral fiber.
    e. Phenolic.
    f. Polyisocyanurate.
    g. Polyolefin.
    h. Polystyrene.
    i. Mass loaded vinyl

2. Fire-rated insulation systems.
3. Adhesives.
4. Mastics.
5. Lagging adhesives.
6. Sealants.
7. Factory-applied jackets.
8. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
9. Field-applied cloths.
10. Field-applied jackets.
11. Tapes.
12. Securements.
13. Corner angles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
2. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Insulation."
3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.
4. Division 33 Section "Underground Hydronic Energy Distribution" for loose-fill pipe insulation in underground piping outside the building.
5. Division 33 Section "Underground Steam and Condensate Distribution Piping" for loose-fill pipe insulation in underground piping outside the building.

1.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Aeroflex
2. Armacell
3. Certain Teed Corp.
4. Johns Manville
5. Knauf Insulation
6. Owens Corning
7. Pittsburg Corning Corp.
8. Dyplast Products

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
8. Detail field application for each equipment type.

D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.

1. Sample Sizes:

a. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
b. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
c. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
d. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.

e. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

F. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Chilled water pump insulation installation instructions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Calcium Silicate:

1. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
2. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
3. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

H. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.

K. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

L. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.

M. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
2. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

N. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.

O. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

P. Phenolic:

1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

    a. Preformed Pipe Insulation: ASJ.
    b. Board for Duct and Plenum Applications: ASJ.
    c. Board for Equipment Applications: ASJ.

Q. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.

1. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
2. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1-1/2 inches as tested by ASTM E 84.
3. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

   a. Pipe Applications: ASJ-SSL.
   b. Equipment Applications: ASJ-SSL.

R. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

S. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

T. Mass Loaded Vinyl: Flexible, non-reinforced mass loaded vinyl that resists the passage of sound waves and reduced the transmission of airborne noise. Weight of 1 lb/sq ft; 0.100" thickness, -40 deg F to 180 deg F temperature range. Noise transmission loss (db) shall be included in the submittal per ASTM E-90-97 E413-87.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
   b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
   c. Nelson Firestop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
   d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
   e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.

G. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

H. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F.
3. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct, equipment, and pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants: Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate and Polystyrene Products.

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Duct and Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch for covering equipment.

C. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch, in a Leno weave, for duct, equipment, and pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

    a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.

a. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
b. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

a. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
b. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

G. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

H. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

I. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Film Thickness: 4 mils.

3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

   a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
   b. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

   a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.

c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
b. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, aluminum sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping"irestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.

c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Provide 1” foam-core insulation on all chilled water pumps. Install pump insulation per foam-core insulation manufacturer’s pump insulation installation instructions. Include pump insulation installation instructions with insulation submittals.
2. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.6 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.7 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Boiler Breechings and Ducts:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.8 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.10 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

E. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 75 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface.

Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

F. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 75 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.11 PHENOLIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.13 POLYOLEFIN INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.14 POLYSTYRENE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.15 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.

2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch- circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.16 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.17 FINISHES

A. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Coat exposed outdoor flexible elastomeric insulation with two coats of manufacturer's recommended protective white coating; or cover with aluminum jacketing all exposed outdoor flexible elastomeric insulation, in lieu of paint.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
2. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
3. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.19 BOILER BREECHING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Round, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.

2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Round, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.
2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Rectangular, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.
2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Rectangular, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.
2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.20 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed and exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
4. Indoor, concealed and exposed kitchen hood make-up air.
5. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
6. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Indoor, exposed supply and return air in air conditioned, occupied spaces
4. Exhaust ductwork, including Type II Kitchen Exhaust and Dishwasher Exhaust
5. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
6. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Vibration-control devices.
9. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.21 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Supply-air Ducts, Concealed (installed above ceilings):

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

B. Return Air Ducts, Concealed (installed above ceilings):

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

C. Exposed Supply and Return Ductwork in Air Conditioned, Occupied Spaces, and Exhaust Air Ductwork:

1. None.
2. Wrap the first 10'-0" of exposed supply, return or exhaust ductwork in occupied areas with a mass loaded vinyl noise barrier.

D. Exposed Supply and Return Ductwork exposed in Air Conditioned Utility Spaces (Conditioned Mechanical Rooms or Mechanical Rooms used as Return Air Plenums) and Exposed in Non-Air Conditioned Spaces (Boiler Rooms, et. Al):

1. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

E. Outside-Air Ducts:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

F. Type-I Commercial Kitchen Hood Exhaust Ducts:
1. Fire Rated Insulation System as identified in this specification section.

G. Type-II Commercial Kitchen Hood and Dishwasher Exhaust Ducts:
1. None.

H. Kitchen Hood Make-Up Air Ducts:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

3.22 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Supply-air, return-air and outside-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.23 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.

C. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles, condenser bundles, heat-recovery bundles, suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles as recommended by the manufacturer.

D. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for cooling service) insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inch thick.

E. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for heating service) insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Steam-to-hot-water converter insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

G. Hot-water-to-steam converter insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

H. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

I. Condenser-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

J. Dual-service heating and cooling pump insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

K. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

L. Dual-service heating and cooling expansion/compression tank insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

M. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

N. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

O. Condenser-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

P. Dual-service heating and cooling air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

Q. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

R. Thermal storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

S. Steam condensate tank and receiver insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

T. Steam flash-tank, flash-separator, and blow-off-tank insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.

2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.24 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.25 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate, Cold Water Make-up and Equipment Drain Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
c. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

B. Chilled Water Supply and Return:

1. Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inch thick.
c. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

C. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:

1. Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 1-1/2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

D. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 1-1/2” and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inch thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

2. NPS 2” and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 2 inch thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.

E. Steam and Steam Condensate:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Calcium Silicate: 2 inches thick.
b. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches thick.

2. NPS 1 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 3 inches thick.

F. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. Insulation shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Dual-Service Heating and Cooling, 40 to 200 Deg F:

1. Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 2 inches thick.
c. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches thick.

H. Hot Service Drains:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch thick.

I. Hot Service Vents:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch thick.

3.26 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Chilled Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inch thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.

B. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.

C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 2 inch thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.

D. Steam and Steam Condensate:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches Insert thickness thick.
b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I or II: 3 inches thick.

E. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be as recommended by the manufacturer.

F. Dual-Service Heating and Cooling:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 3 inches thick.
d. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.

3.27 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 33 piping distribution Sections.

B. Chilled Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

C. Condenser-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

D. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

E. Steam and Steam Condensate, All Sizes:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.

F. Dual-Service Heating and Cooling, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

3.28 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts, Plenums, and Piping, Concealed (installed above ceilings) and Exposed in Air Conditioned Occupied Spaces:

1. None.

D. Ducts, Plenums, and Piping, Exposed in Air Conditioned Utility Spaces (Conditioned Mechanical Rooms and Mechanical Rooms used as Return Air Plenums):

1. 8 ounce canvas with lagging adhesive.

E. Ducts, Plenums, and Piping, Exposed in Non-Air Conditioned Spaces (Boiler Rooms, et. al.):

1. PVC: 20 mils thick (N/A if installed in a return air plenum).
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

F. Equipment, Concealed (installed above ceilings):

1. None.

G. Equipment, Exposed (all applications):

1. PVC: 20 mils thick (N/A if installed in a return air plenum)
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.29 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with: 0.032 inch thick.

F. Equipment, Concealed:

1. None.

G. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

H. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with: 0.032 inch thick.

I. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

J. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.30 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 09 00

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for measuring equipment that relates to this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.

B. I/O: Input/output.

C. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.

D. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.

E. PC: Personal computer.

F. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.

G. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Comply with the following performance requirements:

1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 15 seconds.
2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 15 seconds.
3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than ten seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within ten seconds.
5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as one minute, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per 10 seconds.
8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:

a. Water Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
b. Water Flow: Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.

c. Water Pressure: Plus or minus 2 percent of full scale.
d. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1.5 deg F.
e. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
f. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
g. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F.
h. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F.
i. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
j. Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
k. Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
l. Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.
m. Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg.
n. Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg.
o. Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
p. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
q. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.5 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION – See Plans for points list and sequence of operation.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated. Submittals shall demonstrate compliance with technical requirements by reference to each subsection of the specification. Where a specific item does not comply with the specification requirements, the deviation shall be presented to the Owner and A/E a minimum of 14 working days prior to bid, along with information as to how the intent of the specification requirement is to be satisfied, for approval. It is the Contractor’s responsibility to demonstrate compliance.

1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
5. Written description of sequence of operation.
6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
8. DDC System Hardware:

a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.

c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.

9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
10. Controlled Systems:

a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
d. Points list.

C. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

D. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.

E. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals on pdf file on local C:drive.
2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc or on local computer C:drive, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

F. Qualification Data: The DDC system as specified herein shall be provided in its entirety by the controls contractor. Bids by wholesalers, contractors or franchised dealers or any other firm whose principal business is not that of manufacturing and installing automatic temperature control systems shall not be acceptable. Bids and work must be performed by the manufacturer’s local factory office.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Maintenance instructions.
2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
3. Help function when using building automation software.
4. Final shop drawings as-builts and product data sheets and sequence of operation.
5. Verification records and list of set points.
6. Three copies of O/M shall be supplied and utilized in operator’s training.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project. At a minimum, three fulltime factory trained and certified servicemen located with twenty five miles of building services shall be employed by controls subcontractor.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use. The system shall have UL 916, UL873 or UL 864 listing applicable to the application and installation.

C. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.

B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, CO2 sensors, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.

B. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.

C. Coordinate with Division 23 section for “Boilers”. It is the intent that the Boiler manufacturer is to provide communications gateway to interface with building automation system. Controls subcontractor is to review the boiler specification and bring to the A/E attention if the boiler specification is not properly coordinated.

D. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" to achieve 120Vac for building automation system. BAS contractor shall provide all 120Vac circuits required for building automation use from any nearest electrical panel available spare circuit. Mark locations on as-built drawings.

E. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Panelboards" to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.

F. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Motor-Control Centers" to achieve compatibility with motor starters and annunciation devices.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Schneider Controls
2. Automated Logic Controls
3. Johnson Controls Inc.
4. Reliable Controls Corp. (Mach-System by Building Automation Services)

B. Qualification Data: The DDC system as specified herein shall be provided in its entirety by the controls contractor. Bids by wholesalers, contractors or franchised dealers or any other firm whose principal business is not that of manufacturing and installing automatic temperature control systems shall not be acceptable. Bids and work must be performed by the manufacturer’s local factory office.

C. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems. Common industry protocols shall be BacNet over IP, LonTalk for all systems including primary and secondary networks. Ethernet connections to interface with the LAN or WAN.

D. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT

A. Operator Workstation: Provide a computer workstation and installed at school system central maintenance office:

1. Dell laptop or equivalent.
2. Processor: Intel 2 Duo Core Process 2.20 GHz.
3. Random-Access Memory: 1 MB.
4. Graphics: Video adapter, 128-MB video memory.
5. Monitor: 17" Ultrasharp Flat Panel.
6. Keyboard: QWERTY, 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
7. Hard-Disk Drive: 160 GB
8. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48.
9. Mouse: Three button, optical.
10. Integrated 56K V.90 modem with one integrated USB 2.0 port, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), 2 additional USB.
11. Operating System: Microsoft Windows
12. Application Software:
    a. I/O capability from operator station.
    b. System security for each operator via software password and access levels.
    c. Automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
    d. Database creation and support.
    e. Automatic and manual database save and restore.
    f. Dynamic color graphic displays with up to 5 screen displays at once.
    g. Custom graphics generation and graphics library of HVAC equipment and symbols.
    h. Alarm processing, messages, and reactions.
    i. Trend logs retrievable in spreadsheets and database programs.
    j. Alarm and event processing.
    k. Object and property status and control.
    l. Automatic restart of field equipment on restoration of power.
    m. Data collection, reports, and logs. Include standard reports for the following:
        1) Current values of objects.
        2) Current alarm summary.
        3) Logs.
    n. Custom report development.
    o. Workstation application editors for controllers and schedules.
13. Custom Application Software:
    a. English language oriented.
    b. Full-screen character editor/programming environment.

c. Allow development of independently executing program modules with debugging/simulation capability.
d. Support conditional statements.
e. Support floating-point arithmetic with mathematic functions.
f. Contains predefined time variables.

B. Building Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:

a. Global communications.
b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.

3. Standard Application Programs:

a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, anti short cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
c. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
d. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
e. Remote communications.
f. Maintenance management.
g. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).

4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
5. LonWorks or BACnet Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk or BACnet protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

C. Programmable Direct Digital Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:

a. Global communications.
b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.

3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
5. LonWorks or BACnet Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk or BACnet protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

D. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.

1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation..
5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA.
6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

E. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity..

2.4 WEB BASE OPERATOR INTERFACE

A. System shall include a web-based operator (WEB-OPS) interface to allow user functions to be accomplished from any network connected PC that includes a web browser.

B. Operators shall be able to utilize a browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer with the appropriate plug-in software.

C. All communications between the web browser and web page server shall be encrypted using 128 bit SSL encryption.

D. The web page server shall be able to be located on the owners Intranet or on the Internet.

E. The system shall have adequate capacity to store and serve up to 450 user defined graphics that each include up to 30 points per graphic.

F. Any unlimited number of users shall be able to access system web pages. Up to 30 users shall be able to use the system simultaneously.

G. Operators shall be required to enter a valid user name and password to access the system. The view of the system provided for the user will be customized based on user identity.

H. Operator security. Each operator shall be able to be assigned a unique user name and password. Users shall be assigned to view, view and edit or administrative capability.

I. The web-based operator interface shall display the same graphics that have been created for any associated Windows-based Operators Workstation. Graphics shall be able to contain both static information such as floor plans and equipment schematics, as well as dynamic information including space temperatures, setpoints, and equipment status information.

J. All dynamic values shall be refreshed with live data upon initial graphic presentation and automatically refreshed every 10 seconds thereafter. The refresh of dynamic data shall not require a refresh of the static information on the graphic.

K. Operators with proper security shall be able to override setpoints and equipment operation.

L. System schedules shall be easily selected for display. Operators with valid security shall be allowed to make changes to schedules including modifications to start and stop times and creating exception days. These changes shall be made graphically within the web browser.

M. A log of system alarms and events shall be able to be viewed from the web browser. Operators with proper security shall be able to acknowledge alarms.

N. System trends shall be able to be selected and viewed. Trends shall be shown graphically with the proper axis scaling automatically selected. Multiple trends shall be able to be viewed at one time.

2.5 UNITARY APPLICATION SPECIFIC AND PROGRAMMABLE CONTROLLERS

A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

1. Configuration: Diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios.
2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms.
3. LonWorks Compliance: Communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol using LonTalk protocol.
4. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
5. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 120 deg F.

2.6 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required. Thermistor sensing, RTD and transmitter sensing is acceptable for any application.

B. Fan Coil Unit and Terminal Unit Thermostats and other Thermistor Temperature Sensors (type II) and Transmitters:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Kele (Room sensor ST-S24-EW-XA).
   b. MAMAC Systems, Inc (Room sensor TE-205-EX-X-2).
   c. Trane (Room sensor BAYSEN074A).
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 deg F at calibration point.
3. Wire: as recommended by building automation system provider.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, length as required by application.
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 12 inches.
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
7. Room Sensor: Kele ST-S24-EW-XA. Sensor with lever setpoint adjust, on/override to. Trane BAYSEN074A.
8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.

C. RTDs and Transmitters:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Kele.
   b. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
   c. Basys.
   d. Veris.
   e. Trane.

2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 deg F at calibration point.
3. Wire: as recommended by building automation system provider.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, length as required by application.
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 12 inches.
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
7. Room Sensor: Space sensor located in public area (corridors, lobby, etc) shall be metallic wall plate type 2 thermistor with no logo or adjustment dial. Or sensor with setpoint adjust, on/override to match existing.
8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.

D. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.

1. Manufacturers:

   a. ACI model A/RH3-D.
   b. Vaisala HMD50U.
   c. Trane 3% RH series type.

2. Accuracy: 3 percent full range with linear output.
3. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
4. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
5. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
6. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 0 to 120 degrees.
7. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

E. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:

1. Manufacturers:

   a. Kele.
   b. General Eastern Instruments.
   c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
   d. TCS/Basys Controls.
   e. Vaisala.
   f. Trane.

2. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.

   a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
   b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
   c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 1-inch wg .
   d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.

3. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
4. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
5. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
6. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

2.7 STATUS SENSORS

1. Manufacturers:

    a. Trane.
    b. Veris.
    c. Kele.

B. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa). Or current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 120 percent of rated motor current.

C. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig (55 to 414 kPa), piped across pump.

D. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 120 percent of rated motor current.

E. Status of fans, pumps, or motor using current switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

F. Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

1. Manufacturers:
    a. JCI.
    b. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.
    c. Trane.

2.8 CO2 and CO sensors

A. Manufacturers:

1. Telaire.
2. Veris.
3. Kele.
4. Vaisala.
5. Trane.

B. Carbon Dioxide and Carbon Monoxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F (minus 5 to plus 55 deg C) and factory calibrated, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting or duct mounting as required by application.

2.9 AIR/WATER FLOW MEASURING STATIONS

A. Duct Airflow Station: Combination of air straightener and multiport, self-averaging pitot tube station. Outside air flow station to be provided by RTU equipment manufacturer.

1. Manufacturers:

    a. Air Monitor Corporation.
    b. Ebtron Gold Series.
    c. Trane Traq.

2. Casing: Galvanized-steel frame.
3. Flow Straightener: Aluminum honeycomb, 3/4-inch (20-mm) parallel cell, 3 inches (75 mm) deep.

4. Sensing Manifold: Copper manifold with bullet-nosed static pressure sensors positioned on equal area basis.
5. Factory mounted Traq damper is acceptable.
6. Ebtron thermal disbursement technology type is acceptable.
7. For water flow Onicon F1210 dual turbine flow meter.

2.10 THERMOSTATS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Kele.
2. Trane.
3. JCI.

B. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.

1. Label switches ["FAN ON-OFF"].
2. Mount on single electric switch box.

C. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.

D. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.

1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.

E. Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
2. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
3. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
4. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
5. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
6. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.

F. Fire-Protection Thermostats where shown on plans or points list: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction; with fixed or adjustable settings to operate at not less than 75 deg F (24 deg C) above normal maximum operating temperature, and the following:

1. Reset: Manual.
2. Reset: Automatic, with control circuit arranged to require manual reset at central control panel; with pilot light and reset switch on panel labeled to indicate operation.

G. Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.

H. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-]reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or below set point.

1. Bulb Length: Minimum 10 feet.
2. Quantity: As required by application.

I. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or above set point.

1. Bulb Length: Minimum 10 feet.
2. Quantity: As required by application.

2.11 ACTUATORS

A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Belimo, Trane or approved equal. Actuator on VAV, FCU, UV, Blower coil terminal unit valves are failed in place floating signal type.
3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).

B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

1. Manufacturers:

   a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
   b. Trane.

2. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
3. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:

   a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
   b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
   c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
   d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
   e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.
   f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.

4. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.

5. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
6. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
7. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 V ac.
8. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
9. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA.
10. Tri-state: Floating signal.
11. Temperature Rating: 40 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C).
12. Run Time: Sized as required for application.

2.12 CONTROL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Belimo.
2. Trane.
3. JCI.
4. Hays Fluid Controls.

B. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:

1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Class 125 bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
3. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel or brass seats.

.

a. Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom.

4. Sizing: 3 to 5 psi maximum pressure drop at design flow rate or the following:

a. Two Position: Line size.
b. Two-Way Modulating: Either the value specified above or twice the load pressure drop, whichever is more.
c. Three-Way Modulating: Twice the load pressure drop, but not more than value specified above.

5. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.
6. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head for two-way valves and 100 percent of pressure differential across valve or 100 percent of total system (pump) head.

D. Butterfly Valves: 200-psig (1380-kPa), maximum pressure differential, ASTM A 126 cast-iron or ASTM A 536 ductile-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable EPDM or Buna N sleeve and stem seals.

1. Body Style: Wafer.
2. Disc Type: Nickel-plated ductile iron.
3. Sizing: 1-psig (7-kPa) maximum pressure drop at design flow rate.

E. Terminal Unit Control Valves (VAV, FCU, UV): Brass, bronze, copper, or ductile iron body with threaded, sweat, or flanged connection types. Factory set to maintain constant flow rate

with +/- 10 % accuracy over system pressure fluctuations; operating ranges shall fall within 2 – 80 psid. Each valve shall have an identification label, or tag attached by chain, and be factory marked with the manufacturer identification, valve series, and flow rate. Optional readout kit including differential pressure gauge, probes, and carrying case must be made available for purchase from the manufacturer.

1. Operating Pressure: Up to 3" - Minimum 400 PSIG / Above 3" - Minimum 200.
2. Temperature Range: 32° - 225°F.
3. Flow Control Cartridge: Cartridge design shall consist of a tamper proof brass, stainless steel, or elastomeric diaphragm and polyphenylsulfone orifice plate. Manufacturer shall offer optional valve body style that allows for flow control cartridge change-out.
4. Combination Valve Assemblies: Y-Type body to include flow control cartridge, ball valve, pressure/temperature ports, and union end connection.

2.13 DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Ruskin.
2. Trane.
3. JCI.
4. United Enertech Corp.

B. Dampers: AMCA-rated, parallel or opposed-blade design; 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches (200 mm) and length of 48 inches (1220 mm).

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with nylon blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. (50 L/s per sq. m) of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf (5.6 N x m); when tested according to AMCA 500D.

2.14 CONTROL CABLE

A. HVAC control system shall be full DDC. All control wiring in the cable tray shall use purple and yellow colored plenum rated cable. Each color shall be consistent for the entire project and noted on the plans. Blue should be used for the primary network cable and yellow for the secondary network connections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that duct-, pipe-, and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices as shown on drawings above the floor.

1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

D. Mechanical contractor shall install automatic dampers according to Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

E. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.

F. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

G. Mechanical contractor shall install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

H. Mechanical contractor shall install steam and condensate instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping."

I. Mechanical contractor shall install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping."

J. Mechanical contractor shall install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 23 Sections specifying air ducts.

K. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Install building wire and cable according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Install signal and communication cable for building automation system:

1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed. In mechanical rooms, install wiring in conduit.
2. In concealed accessible area, install cable using plenum rated cable or in cable tray.
3. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
4. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
5. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
6. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions.

E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
4. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
5. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C. DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop checks.
2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
5. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
6. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
7. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
8. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction..
9. Check DDC system as follows:

    a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
    c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
    d. Verify that main building unit controller(s) are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Verify reading to within accuracy tolerance or use factory calibrated device.
2. Control System Inputs and Outputs:

    a. Check analog inputs to verify reading is within accuracy tolerance.
    b. Stoke analog output from 0 to 100% span.
    c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
    d. Energize binary output to verify operation.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Demonstrate that all controls are installed, adjusted and can perform all functions required. When coordinated with the Energy Manager with an advance two-week notice, this demonstration may be performed in conjunction with instructions to the Owner’s operations personnel.

C. Final Operational Test: Performance test period is not less than 720 consecutive hours until performance standard is met. Operation reliability level of at least 95%. Whenever downtime occurs, correct defects before resuming test. Failure, due to an individual sensor or controller shall not count as system downtime provided that the system records the fault or that the reliability level for all sensors and controllers together is at least 99 percent of the test period.

3.7 TRAINING

A. Refer to 230500

3.8 WARRANTY SERVICE

A. Provide all labor, material and equipment necessary to maintain beneficial performance of the entire control system for a period of one (1) year after acceptance by an authorized representative of the Owner. The controls subcontractor at no charge to the Owner shall promptly correct any defects in workmanship or material during the warranty period. All work shall be accomplished during normal working hours M-F if possible. Critical component failure shall be repaired immediately whether labor involves overtime, weekend, or holidays. Precaution shall be taken to minimize disruption of facility operations.

B. Owner’s involvement in modifications to hardware and/or software or the addition of panels and points shall not void warranty.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 21 13
HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. **BID ALTERNATE #6:** Provide alternate pricing to utilize SDR-11 HDPE piping. Provide with molded fittings, HDPE resin socket or butt-fusion type made to match HDPE pipe dimensions and class. See specification 232113.33 Ground Loop Heat Pump Piping for further details.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
1. Condenser-water piping.
2. Makeup-water piping.
3. Condensate-drain piping.
4. Blowdown-drain piping.
5. Air-vent piping.
6. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
1. Condenser-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
2. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
3. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
4. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
5. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. All piping shall be manufactured in the USA.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
2. Pressure-seal fittings.

3. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
4. Air control devices.
5. Chemical treatment.
6. Hydronic specialties.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Water-Treatment Chemicals: Furnish enough chemicals for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

H. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.

a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Unions:

1. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.

D. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

G. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.5 VALVES

A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    c. Flow Design Inc.
    d. Griswold Controls.
    e. Taco.

4. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
5. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
6. Plug: Resin.
7. Seat: PTFE.
8. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
9. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
10. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
11. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
12. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    c. Flow Design Inc.
    d. Griswold Controls.
    e. Taco.

4. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
5. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
6. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
7. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
8. Seat: PTFE.
9. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
10. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
11. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
12. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
13. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Amtrol, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
    f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

4. Body: Bronze or brass.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: Brass.
7. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
8. Diaphragm: EPT.
9. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
10. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
11. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
12. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Amtrol, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
    f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Flow Design Inc.
    b. Griswold Controls.

4. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
5. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.
6. Combination Assemblies: Include bonze or brass-alloy ball valve.
7. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
8. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
9. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
10. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.6 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Amtrol, Inc.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
4. Taco.

C. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

D. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.

7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

E. Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested with taps fabricated and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig working pressure and 250 deg F maximum operating temperature.
3. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
4. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

F. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

G. Combination Tangential Air/Particle Separator:
1. The Combination Tangential Air/Particle Separator shall have inlet and outlet connections tangential to the vessel shell to match pipe sizes shown on plans. Vessel shell diameter to be three times the nominal inlet/outlet pipe diameter.
2. The unit shall have an internal stainless steel air collector tube with 5/32" diameter perforations and 63% open area designed to direct accumulated air to the compression tank or automatic air vent via an NPT connection at top of unit.
3. Manufacturer to furnish data sheet specifying air collection efficiency, particle separator efficiency and pressure drop at rated flow.
4. The combination air/particle separator must be designed, constructed, and stamped for 125 psig @ 350°F in accordance with Section VIII, Division I of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, and registered with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors. A Manufacturers' Data Report for Pressure Vessels, Form U-1 as required by the provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code shall be furnished for each air/particle separator upon request.
5. The Air/Sediment Separator shall be installed in the system so that full system flow is directed through the SRS for fast elimination of sediment and solids that may damage pump seals or other system components.

H. Air Purgers:

1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig.
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.

1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

2.8 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

C. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

F. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

B. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

D. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints. Do not install PVC piping in return air plenums.

E. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

F. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

G. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

D. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.

T. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

U. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
8. NPS 6: Maximum span, 17 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
9. NPS 8: Maximum span, 19 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 8-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

C. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.

D. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

E. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.

F. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:

1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum 100 ppm.
5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
    a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
    b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
    e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
6. Soluble Copper: Maximum 0.20 ppm.
7. Tolyiriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum 10 ppm.
8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum 10 ppm.
9. Ammonia: Maximum 20 ppm.
10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum 20 ppm.
11. Microbiological Limits:
    a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum 1000 organisms/ml.
    b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum 100 organisms/ml.
    c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/ml.
    d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
    e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum 0 organisms/ml

B. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

C. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 21 13.33

GROUND-LOOP HEAT-PUMP PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes piping for horizontal and vertical, direct-buried, ground-loop, heat-pump systems that operate between 23 and 104 deg F.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ground-Loop, Heat-Pump Piping: 160 psig.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Pipe and fittings.
2. Joining method and equipment.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. HDPE Pipe: ASTM D 2239, SDR-11; with PE compound number required to achieve required system working pressure.

1. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683 or ASTM D 3261, HDPE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match HDPE pipe dimensions and class.

B. U-Bend Assembly: Factory fabricated with embossed depth stamp every 36 inches from U-bend.

2.2 BOREHOLE BACKFILL

A. Surface Seal: Thermally enhanced bentonite-sand mixture with thermal conductivity greater than 1.20 Btu/h x sq. ft. x deg F.

B. Backfill below Surface Seal: Thermally enhanced bentonite-sand mixture with thermal conductivity greater than 1.20 Btu/h x sq. ft. x deg F.

C. All backfill materials must comply with all NC State regulations, including Aquifer Protection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, warning tape, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

B. Well drilling must be performed by a North Carolina certified well driller.

C. All drilling must comply with all NC State regulations, including Aquifer Protection.

D. The installation of geothermal supply and return piping and well piping must be performed by a North Carolina H-2 licensed contractor and cannot be subcontracted to an unlicensed contractor.

3.2 HORIZONTAL PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Separate trenches by 10 feet minimum, unless otherwise indicated. Remove rocks in trenches that could contact pipe.

B. Backfill to 18 inches above pipe with mud developed from excavated rock-free soil or with sand, pea gravel, or fly ash. Backfill from slurry level to grade with excavated soil, compacting as specified for pipe burial in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

C. Extend pipe from trench onto the bottom of the body of water at an elevation that is at least 12 inches below frost line. Seal membrane or impervious liner under the body of water after installing piping.

D. Install PE piping in trenches according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM F 645.

1. Clean PE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D 2657. Minimize number of joints.

E. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before backfilling trenches.

F. Install continuous detectable warning tape for underground piping. Locate tape a minimum of 24 inches below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

G. Common piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

3.3 VERTICAL PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install HDPE piping in boreholes according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM F 645.

1. Clean HDPE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D 2657. Minimize number of joints.

B. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before backfilling boreholes.

C. After installation of loop pipe in borehole, fill piping loop with water or antifreeze solution, and pump backfill into borehole to discharge at base of borehole.

D. Fill borehole with backfill to a point at least 60 inches below grade and backfill remainder with surface seal material.

E. Extend piping and connect to water-source, ground-loop, heat-pump piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.

1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building water-source, ground-loop, heat-pump piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps. Make connections to building water-source, ground-loop, heat-pump piping systems when those systems are installed.

F. Wall sleeves are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

G. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Piping Tests: Fill piping 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize piping. Use potable water only.

B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 1-1/2 times the pipe working-pressure rating allowing for static pressure of borehole depth.

1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 30 minutes. Slowly increase to next test pressure increment and hold for 30 minutes. After testing at maximum test pressure, reduce pressure to 30 psig. Hold for 90 minutes, and measure pressure at 30-minute intervals. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

C. Prepare reports of testing activity.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 21 23

HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
2. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
3. Separately coupled, vertical, in-line centrifugal pumps.
4. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
5. Separately coupled, base-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
6. Separately coupled, vertical-mounted, turbine centrifugal pumps.
7. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Bell & Gossett; Div. of ITT Industries.
3. Peerless Pump; a Member of the Sterling Fluid Systems Group.
4. Taco, Inc.
5. Patterson Pump Company

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded flanged connections. Casing shall include vent and drain ports.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.

3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.

C. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

D. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and flanged connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with integral pump support. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

C. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.3 SPLIT COUPLED, VERTICAL, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded flanged connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.

4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings/Throttle Bushings: Carbon graphite throttle bushing.

C. Shaft Coupling: Axially split spacer coupling.

D. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with lifting eye and supporting lugs in motor enclosure. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

E. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.4 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and flanged connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Internally flushed carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

C. Shaft Coupling: Flexible type spacer coupler capable of absorbing torsional vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor, EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications. Manufacturer shall align coupler before shipment.

D. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

E. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor. Bases shall have closed ends and wide open grouting areas.

F. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.5 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, DOUBLE-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Horizontally split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 flanges. Casing supports shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
4. Mechanical Seal: Internal flushed with carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

C. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor, EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.

D. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

E. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.

F. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.6 SEPARATELY COUPLED, VERTICAL-MOUNTED, TURBINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, end-suction pump as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; designed for installation with pump and

motor shafts mounted vertically and projecting into a sump. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Pump Bowl: Cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear ring, basket strainer, and suction bell.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel sized per AWWA E-101.
4. Pump Bearings: Water-lubricated bronze and rubber sleeve bearings contained in cast-iron housing.
5. Pump Column: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B steel pipe.
6. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Seal shall be replaceable without removing the motor or disturbing the piping.
7. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.

C. Shaft Coupling: Keyed with locking collets.

D. Discharge Head: ASME B16.1, Class 125 discharge flange with threaded gage tapping. Top of discharge head shall have a registered fit to accurately locate the driver.

E. Drive Ratchet: Nonreversing ratchet.

F. Hollow Shaft Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to discharge head. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.7 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

A. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

2.8 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser: Angle pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast -iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting; with drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features. Brass gage ports with integral check valve, and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E. Suspend vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps independent of piping. Install pumps with motor and pump shafts vertical. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 21 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment." Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment/Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

F. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment procedure is complete.

1. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches between pump base and foundation for grouting.
2. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.

G. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

3.4 ALIGNMENT

A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.

B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation, HI 2.1-2.5, " Vertical Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check valve and throttling or triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install Y-type strainer or suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.

K. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

L. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

    a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
6. Start motor.
7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

3.8 INSULATION

A. Following start-up, inspection and approval by the engineer of all pump, pump accessory , installation and operation, provide pump insulation (as dictated by pump service), according to 230700.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 23 00

REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.

B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.4 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.

2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.

3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24 V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
8. Manual operator.

F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg .
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 450 psig

H. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

I. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.

5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated charcoal.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: as indicated on the drawings.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated charcoal.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS ¼ connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: tons as indicated on the drawings
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
3. NPS 2 to NPS 3: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

F. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

G. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
3. NPS 2 to NPS 3: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B. Install service valves for gage taps at strainers if they are not an integral part of strainers.

C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Compressor.

K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

L. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping in accordance with the equipment manufacturer’s recommendations.

C. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

Q. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.

R. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

S. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

B. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
2. NPS 5/8 Maximum span, 60 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
3. NPS 1 Maximum span, 72 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch

4. NPS 1-1/4 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
5. NPS 1-1/2 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
6. NPS 2 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
7. NPS 2-1/2 Maximum span, 108 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
8. NPS 3 Maximum span, 10 feet minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
9. NPS 4 Maximum span, 12 feet minimum rod size, 1/2 inch

C. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

    a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.

3. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
4. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 25 00

HVAC WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:

1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
2. Biocide chemical-feed equipment and controls.
3. Chemical treatment test equipment.
4. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.

B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, ground loop heat pump piping, dual-temperature water, and glycol cooling, shall have the following water qualities:

1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
6. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
9. Microbiological Limits:

    a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
    b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
    c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
    d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
    e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

D. Open hydronic systems, including condenser water, shall have the following water qualities:

1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
4. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
5. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
6. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
7. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
8. Microbiological Limits:

a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

9. Polymer Testable: Maintain a minimum value within 10 to 40.

E. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.

1. pH: Maintain a value within 7 to 8.
2. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.
3. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Other Informational Submittals:

1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal..
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

2.2 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
4. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
5. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.

B. Inhibitor Injection Timers:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Programmable timers with infinite adjustment over full range, and mounted in cabinet with hand-off-auto switches and status lights.
3. Test switch.
4. Hand-off-auto switch for chemical pump.
5. Illuminated legend to indicate feed when pump is activated.
6. Programmable lockout timer with indicator light. Lockout timer to deactivate the pump and activate alarm circuits.
7. LCD makeup totalizer to measure amount of makeup and bleed-off water from two water meter inputs.

C. pH Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 14 units. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal pH indication.
5. High or low pH alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for acid pump.
7. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.

D. TDS Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 5000 micromhos. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.

4. High, low, and normal conductance indication.
5. High or low conductance alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for solenoid bleed-off valve.
7. Bleed-off valve activated indication.
8. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
9. Bleed Valves:

    a. Cooling Systems: Forged-brass body, globe pattern, general-purpose solenoid with continuous-duty coil, or motorized valve.

E. Biocide Feeder Timer:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. 24-hour timer with 14-day skip feature to permit activation any hour of day.
3. Precision, solid-state, bleed-off lockout timer and clock-controlled biocide pump timer. Prebleed and bleed lockout timers.
4. Solid-state alternator to enable use of two different formulations.
5. 24-hour display of time of day.
6. 14-day display of day of week.
7. Battery backup so clock is not disturbed by power outages.
8. Hand-off-auto switches for biocide pumps.
9. Biocide A and Biocide B pump running indication.

F. Chemical Solution Tanks:

1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
3. Capacity: 30 gal..

G. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:

1. Self-priming, positive-displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
2. Adjustable flow rate.
3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
4. Built-in relief valve.
5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

H. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints.

I. Injection Assembly:

1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
2. Ball Valve: Two-piece, stainless steel; selected to fit quill.
3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

2.3 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TDS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.

B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.

1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.
2. Four-station rack for open systems.

2.4 CHEMICALS

A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

B. Water Softener Chemicals:

1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb of salt.
2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.

C. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.

D. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.

E. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, dual-temperature water, and glycol cooling, and equipped with the following:

1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
5. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.

F. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for condenser water and include the following:

1. Install makeup water softener.
2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
3. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.

    a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.

4. Install test equipment and provide test-kit to Owner. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
5. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.

    a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.

6. Install pH sensor and controller with injection pumps and solution tanks.

    a. Injector pumps shall operate to maintain required pH.

7. Install biocide feeder alternating timer with two sets of injection pumps and solution tanks.

    a. Injection pumps shall operate to feed biocide on an alternating basis.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

E. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.

F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in Division 26 Sections for connecting electrical equipment.

G. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

H. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. At eight-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

F. Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining water treatment system while the system is under warranty (for a minimum period of one year from substantial completion). Mechanical contractor shall document all water analyses performed.

G. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:

1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.

4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 31 13

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Duct liner.
6. Sealants and gaskets.
7. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.

2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Perimeter moldings.

E. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Lindab Inc.
b. McGill AirFlow LLC.

c. SEMCO Incorporated.
d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
f. Hamlin Sheet Metal
g. Turn Key Duct Systems

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Lindab Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. SEMCO Incorporated.
4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.

C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials

involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.

E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
b. Johns Manville.
c. Knauf Insulation.
d. Owens Corning.

3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
b. Armacell LLC.

c. K-Flex USA.

2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

   a. Fan discharges.
   b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
   c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and

calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.

B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom of duct.

C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.

C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.

E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.

G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.8 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:
1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
   a. All medium pressure supply mains from built-up Air Handling Units to the terminal box connections.
   b. All concealed low pressure supply mains from built up Air Handing Units.
   c. Low pressure supply ducts (single zone units and supply ductwork downstream of terminal boxes): Test representative duct sections**,** totaling no less than 10 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

   a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.11 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel unless noted otherwise.

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Indoor Units, Packaged Heat Pumps, and Downstream of Terminal Boxes:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Indoor Units and Packaged Heat Pumps:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

2. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.

a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
b. Concealed: Carbon-steel sheet.
c. Welded seams and joints.
d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
f. SMACNA Leakage Class: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

3. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods:

a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
g. SMACNA Leakage Class: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Indoor Units or Packaged Heat Pumps:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: Per current SMACNA standards based on specified pressure class.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.

2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:

a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.

G. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:

1. Supply Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.
2. Return Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.

H. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."

a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

I. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."

a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 33 00

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Ceiling dampers.
7. Smoke dampers.
8. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
9. Corridor dampers.
10. Flange connectors.
11. Duct silencers.
12. Turning vanes.
13. Remote damper operators.
14. Duct-mounted access doors.
15. Flexible connectors.
16. Flexible ducts.
17. Duct security bars.
18. Duct accessory hardware.
19. Airflow Monitoring Stations

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control damper installations.
d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
e. Duct security bars.
f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304.

D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.
7. SEMCO Incorporated.

B. Description: Gravity balanced.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1500 fpm.

D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

E. Maximum Leakage: 40” wide, 1% of max. flow.

F. Frame: 0.09-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners.

G. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.

H. Blade Action: Parallel.

I. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.

J. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.

K. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

L. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

M. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

N. Accessories: (as noted on plans or required by installation)

1. Electric actuators.
2. Chain pulls.
3. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.

a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage minimum.
b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.

4. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
5. Screen Material: Aluminum.
6. Screen Type: Bird or Insect (as noted on drawings)
7. 90-degree stops.

2.3 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.
7. SEMCO Incorporated.

B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm..

D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

E. Maximum Leakage: 40” wide, 1% of max. flow.

F. Frame: 0.09-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners.

G. Blades:

1. Multiple, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum.
2. Maximum Width: 2 inches.
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted.

H. Blade Seals: Vinyl.

I. Blade Axles: ½” diameter synthetic

J. Tie Bars and Brackets:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

L. Bearings: Synthetic.

M. Accessories: (as noted on plans or required by installation)

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Flange on intake.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    c. METALAIRE, Inc.
    d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    e. Ruskin Company.

2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
3. Frames:

    a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 16-gauge minimum thickness.
    b. Mitered and welded corners.
    c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

4. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Galvanized-steel, 16-gauge thick.

5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
6. Bearings:

    a. Molded synthetic.
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. METALAIRE, Inc.
4. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches, airfoil design.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized steel.
4. 14-gauge thickness.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Stainless-steel sleeve.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
5. NCA Manufacturing.
6. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 20-gauge galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links (unless noted otherwise).

2.7 CEILING DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. NCA Manufacturing.
5. Ruskin Company.

B. General Requirements:

1. Labeled according to UL 555C by an NRTL.
2. Comply with construction details for tested floor- and roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

C. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, round or rectangular, style to suit ceiling construction.

D. Blades: Galvanized sheet steel with refractory insulation.

E. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links (unless noted otherwise).

2.8 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. NCA Manufacturing.
5. Ruskin Company.

B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Frame: Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

D. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 16-gauge thickness, galvanized sheet steel. Blades shall be true airfoil blades.

E. Leakage: Class I .

F. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 20-gauge thickness, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

H. Damper Motors: two-position action, electric 120V or 24V as noted on the plans.

I. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 120V or 24V as noted on the drawings.

J. Accessories: (as indicated on the drawings)

1. Auxiliary switches for or position indication.
2. Momentary test switch, damper mounted.

2.9 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. NCA Manufacturing.
5. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links (unless noted otherwise).

G. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Leakage: Class I.

J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 20-gauge thickness, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.

M. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 120V or 24V as noted on the drawings.

O. Accessories: (as indicated on the drawings)

1. Auxiliary switches for position indication.
2. Momentary test switch, damper mounted.

2.10 CORRIDOR DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. NCA Manufacturing.
5. Ruskin Company.

B. General Requirements: Label combination fire and smoke dampers according to UL 555 for 1-1/2-hour rating by an NRTL.

C. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links (unless noted otherwise).

D. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.

E. Frame: Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 16-gauge galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

H. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

I. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 120V or 24V as noted on the drawings.

2.11 DUCT SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Industrial Noise Control, Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ruskin Company.
4. Vibro-Acoustics.

B. General Requirements:

1. Factory fabricated.
2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

C. Shape:

1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
5. Rectangular transitional with splitters or baffles.

D. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, galvanized sheet steel, 0.034 inch thick.

E. Round Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units up to 24 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch thick.
2. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 26 through 40 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch thick.
3. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 42 through 52 Inches in Diameter: 0.052 inch thick.
4. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 54 through 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.064 inch thick.

F. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 galvanized sheet metal, 0.034 inch thick, and with 1/8-inch- diameter perforations.

G. Special Construction:

1. Suitable for outdoor use.
2. High transmission loss to achieve STC 45.

H. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.

I. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:

1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
2. Dissipative type with fill material.

    a. Fill Material: Moisture-proof nonfibrous material.

b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, and heat sealed before assembly.

3. Lining: Mylar bag.

J. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.

1. Lock form and seal or continuously weld joints.
2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

K. Source Quality Control: Test according to ASTM E 477.

1. Testing in accordance with ASTM E-477.
2. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least 2000-fpm face velocity.
3. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or 6-inch wg static pressure, whichever is greater.

L. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.12 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 30 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.13 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
3. Young Regulator Company.
4. Metropolitan.

B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.

C. Tubing: Brass.

D. Cable: Stainless steel.

E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed, 3/4 inches deep.

F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

2.14 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
7. Ruskin

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

C. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Single wall, 12-gauge.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 2” to 10” for positive pressure and -4” to -10” for negative pressure.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.15 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.

1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.

1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.

5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

2.16 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007.

D. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.17 DUCT SECURITY BARS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carnes.
2. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
3. Price Industries.
4. Ruskin

B. Description: Factory-fabricated and field-installed duct security bars.

C. Configuration:

1. Frame: 2½” x 2½” x ¼” angle frame.
2. Sleeve: 3/16-inch, continuously welded steel frames with 2½” x 2½” x ¼” angle frame factory welded to 1 end. To be poured in place or set with concrete block or welded or bolted to wall, one side only. Duct connections on both sides.
3. Horizontal Bars: 2 by 1/4 inch.

4. Vertical Bars: 2 by 1/4 inch.
5. Bar Spacing: 6 inches.
6. Mounting: As noted on the drawings and required for specific installation.

2.18 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.19 AIRFLOW MONITORING STATIONS

A. Air Measuring Stations to be furnished under this section of specification and installed under Division 23 Section. Provide where indicated and scheduled, an airflow measuring element assembly capable of continuously monitoring the airflow capacity in the duct.

1. The airflow sensing elements shall be constructed of 6000 Series extruded aluminum, forming two (2) integral chambers for Total and Static pressure averaging, without the physical presence of forward projecting sensors. Individual Total and Static pressure sensing elements are not acceptable.

2. The number of sensing ports on each element, and the quantity of elements utilized at each installation, shall comply with the ASHRAE Standard #111 for duct traversing. The airflow traverse elements shall be capable of producing steady, non-pulsating signals of standard total and static pressure, without amplification nor flow correction (K factors), or field calibration, with an accuracy of 2% of actual flow for operating velocities as low as 100 feet per minute.

3. The airflow elements shall not induce a pressure drop greater than .03" Water Column at 2000 FPM, nor shall the sound level within the duct be amplified by its presence in the air stream. Each airflow measuring element shall contain multiple Total and Static pressure sensors.

4. Where primary flow elements are located outside of the manufacturers published installation guidelines the manufacturer shall be consulted, and approve of any special configurations, such as air equalizers and/or additional and strategically placed measuring points as may be required.

5. Where the stations are installed in insulated ducts, the airflow passage of the station shall be the same size as the inside airflow dimension of the duct. Station flanges shall be two inch to three inch to facilitate matching connecting ductwork.

6. The main take-off point from both the total pressure and the static pressure elements MUST be symmetrical. The probes shall be mounted in an eight inch deep, 16 gauge galvanized steel casing with 90 degree undrilled flanges, fabricated to the duct size, and shall contain multiple airflow traverse elements interconnected as herein before described.

7. An identification label shall be placed on each element listing the Model No., System Served, Size and Identifying Tag Number.

8. The airflow measuring element shall be the FE-1500 as manufactured by Paragon Controls Incorporated (or approval equal).

B. Airflow Indicating Transducers to be furnished and installed under this section of the specification.

1. Provide individual airflow transducers, especially selected for the required design operating spans of each of the above primary elements.

2. The electronic flow transducer(s) shall be solid-state analog type, with infinite resolution to facilitate volume tracking control functions. Microprocessor based transducers with time-sharing of multiple square root extractors and/or controllers are not acceptable.

3. The transducer(s) shall be housed in a NEMA 1 enclosure with integral terminal strip for field wiring, and power and output signal conduit connection port.

4. Each transducer=s output shall not be affected by direction of mounting (attitude) or external vibrations, and shall be furnished with a factory calibrated span. The analog output signal shall be linear to air volume, which is factory set for a full scale value equal to 110% of the maximum design capacity of the flow measuring element served for variable air volume applications, or 200% of the design operating value for constant volume applications.

5. Electronic transducers shall operate on 16 to 36 VDC: Transducer(s) shall have outputs of 4 to 20 mA/2-wire or 0-10VDC/3-wire.

6. Each transducer shall be provided with a local indicating meter. The local digital indicating meter shall be one half-inch high, three and one half digit liquid crystal display (LCD) type. The LCD shall indicate the measured air volume in engineering units of cubic feet per minute (CFM). The meter shall be calibrated to an accuracy of + 1 count.

7. Transducer performance shall be equal or better than the following:

Hysteresis: +0.05%
Linearity: +0.4%
Repeatability: +0.1%
Temperature Effects: <+0.03% F.S./□F
Over-pressure: 5 PSIG Proof
Response: <0.25 seconds for full span input
Noise Filtration: Low Pass Filter, factory set @ 3.2Hz
Transducer Span: < 2 times the design velocity pressure @ maximum flow
Accuracy: +0.5% F.S. (Terminal Point) / +0.35% F.S. (BFSL)

8. The airflow indicating transducers shall be the FIT-1001D as manufactured by Paragon Controls Incorporated (or approval equal).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing and manufacturer’s instructions.

H. Install duct security bars. Construct duct security bars from 0.164-inch steel sleeve, continuously welded at all joints and 1/2-inch- diameter steel bars, 6 inches o.c. in each direction in center of sleeve. Weld each bar to steel sleeve and each crossing bar. Weld 2-1/2-by-2-1/2-by-1/4-inch steel angle to 4 sides and both ends of sleeve. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.

I. Connect ducts to duct silencers with flexible duct connectors.

J. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
2. Upstream from duct filters.
3. At duct mounted smoke detectors for inspection.
4. At drain pans and seals.
5. Where noted on plans: Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. Control devices requiring inspection.
8. Elsewhere as indicated.

K. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

L. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

M. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

N. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

O. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

P. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 6-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

Q. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 48-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

R. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with approved strap and sealant.

S. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

T. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 34 23

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. See fan schedule on drawings for additional requirements and specific options required for each fan.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Utility set fans.
2. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
3. Axial roof ventilators.
4. Upblast propeller roof exhaust fans.
5. Centrifugal wall ventilators.
6. Ceiling-mounting ventilators.
7. In-line centrifugal fans.
8. Propeller fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on sea level.

B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck
2. Loren Cook Company
3. Penn Ventilation
4. Twin City Fans

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Roof curbs.
7. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, wiring diagrams, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.

D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.

B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 UTILITY SET FANS

A. Description: Direct- or Belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and accessories.

B. Housing: Fabricated of galvanized steel with side sheets fastened with a deep lock seam or welded to scroll sheets.

1. Housing Discharge Arrangement: Adjustable to eight standard positions.

C. Fan Wheels: Single-width, single inlet; welded to cast-iron or cast-steel hub and spun-steel inlet cone, with hub keyed to shaft.

1. Blade Materials: Steel.
2. Blade Type: Backward inclined (unless noted otherwise on the fan schedule).

D. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.

E. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings with ABMA 9, L_{50} of 500,000 hours or L_{10} of 100,000 hours.

F. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.

1. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.5.
2. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 10 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
4. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.

G. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Inlet and Outlet: Flanged.
2. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
3. Backdraft Dampers: Gravity actuated with counterweight and interlocking aluminum blades with felt edges in steel frame installed on fan discharge.
4. Access Door: Gasketed door in scroll with latch-type handles.
5. Scroll Dampers: Single-blade damper installed at fan scroll top with adjustable linkage.
6. Inlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
7. Drain Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded coupling drain connection installed at lowest point of housing.
8. Weather Hoods: Weather resistant with stamped vents over motor and drive compartment.
9. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, sealed ball bearings, with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
10. Variable Inlet Vanes: With blades supported at both ends with two permanently lubricated bearings of same material as housing. Variable mechanism terminating in single control lever with control shaft for double-width fans.
11. Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.

H. Coatings: As indicated on the drawings.

I. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains and grease collector for UL 762 kitchen hood exhaust fans.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:

1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops. Backdraft dampers on all roof mounted supply fans shall be motorized.

F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 8 inches (unless noted otherwise).
3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
5. Burglar Bars: 1/2-inch- thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-inch squares (where indicated on the drawings).
6. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides (where indicated on the drawings).

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.3 AXIAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven axial fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

B. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, hinged, aluminum base.

1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and blades.

D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:

1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.

E. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
4. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 8 inches (unless noted otherwise).
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation matrix.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Burglar Bars: 1/2-inch- thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-inch squares (where indicated on the drawings).

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.4 UPBLAST PROPELLER ROOF EXHAUST FANS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven propeller fans consisting of housing, wheel, butterfly-type discharge damper, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

B. Wind Band, Fan Housing, and Base: Reinforced and braced galvanized steel, containing butterfly dampers and rain trough, motor and drive assembly, and fan wheel.

1. Damper Rods: Steel with bronze bearings.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing; weatherproof housing of same material as fan housing with the following features:

1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
2. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
4. Motor Mount: On outside of fan cabinet, adjustable base for belt tensioning.

E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 8 inches (unless noted otherwise).
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation matrix.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Burglar Bars: 1/2-inch- thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-inch squares Where indicated on the plans).

F. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.5 CENTRIFUGAL WALL VENTILATORS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and accessories.

B. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; venturi inlet cone.

C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:

1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Wall Grille: Ring type for flush mounting.
5. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in wall sleeve; factory set to close when fan stops.
6. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

F. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.6 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS

A. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

D. Grille: Plastic, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless-steel springs, and fusible link.
6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.7 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description: In-line, direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.

B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

C. Direct-Driven Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.

D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.

F. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.

4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Galvanized steel.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.8 PROPELLER FANS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven propeller fans consisting of fan blades, hub, housing, orifice ring, motor, drive assembly, and accessories.

B. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.

C. Steel Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gage steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.

D. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

E. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.

1. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.

    a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L_{10} of 100,000 hours.

4. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 10 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
6. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
7. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.

F. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Gravity Shutters: Aluminum blades in aluminum frame; interlocked blades with nylon bearings.
2. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
3. Wall housing: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
4. Weathershield Hood: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
5. Weathershield Front Guard: Galvanized steel with expanded metal screen.
6. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
7. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.9 MOTORS

A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Support units using spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.

C. Install floor-mounting units on concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Install floor-mounting units on concrete bases designed to withstand, without damage to equipment, the seismic force required by code. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

E. Secure roof-mounting fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

F. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

G. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

H. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

I. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 37 13

DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Perforated diffusers.
4. Louver face diffusers.
5. Linear bar diffusers.
6. Linear slot diffusers.
7. Round induction diffusers.
8. Linear floor diffuser plenums.
9. Drum louvers.
10. Modular core supply grilles.
11. Continuous tubular diffusers.
12. Adjustable Bar Register
13. Security registers and grilles.
14. Fixed face registers.
15. Linear bar grilles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carnes
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. Nailor industries
4. Price
5. Titus
6. Tuttle & Bailey
7. Krueger

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a

written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.

D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

E. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Round Ceiling Diffuser:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
4. Face Style: Three cone.
5. Mounting: Duct connection.
6. Pattern: Fully adjustable.
7. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

B. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches or as indicated on the drawings.
5. Face Style: Four cone.
6. Mounting: As required.
7. Pattern: Fixed.
8. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

C. Perforated Diffuser:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with steel or aluminum face as indicated on the drawings.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches or as indicated on the drawings.
5. Duct Inlet: Round or Square as indicated on the drawings.
6. Face Style: Flush.
7. Mounting: T-bar.
8. Pattern Controller: Adjustable with louvered pattern modules at inlet.
9. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

D. Louver Face Diffuser:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
4. Face Size: As indicated on the drawings.
5. Mounting: As required.
6. Pattern: Four-way core style, unless noted otherwise.
7. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

2.2 UNDERFLOOR AIR DISTRIBUTION DIFFUSERS

A. Round Induction Diffusers:

1. Airflow Principle: Swirl-pattern induction.
2. Material: Plastic, high impact, and resistant to cart and foot traffic.
3. Color: Gray or as indicated on the drawings.
4. Components:

    a. Diffuser core.
    b. Flow regulator.
    c. Dirt and liquid catch pan.
    d. Spacer flange.
    e. Gasketed, underfloor compression ring.

B. Linear Floor Diffuser Plenums:

1. Material: Steel.
2. Finish: White baked acrylic.
3. Deflection: 15 degrees.
4. Components:

    a. Aluminum diffuser core.
    b. Diffuser frame.
    c. Plenum, 0.034-inch steel.

2.3 HIGH-CAPACITY DIFFUSERS

A. Drum Louver:

1. Airflow Principle: Extended distance for high airflow rates.

2. Material: Aluminum, heavy gage extruded.
3. Finish: White baked acrylic.
4. Border: 1-1/4-inch width with countersunk screw holes.
5. Gasket between drum and border.
6. Body: Drum shaped; adjustable vertically.
7. Blades: Individually adjustable horizontally.
8. Mounting: Surface to duct.
9. Inlet Width: As indicated on the drawings.
10. Inlet Length: As indicated on the drawings.
11. Accessories:

    a. Opposed-blade steel damper.
    b. Duct-mounting collars with countersunk screw holes.

2.4 FLEXIBLE DIFFUSION OUTLETS

A. Continuous Tubular Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. DuctSox Corp.
    b. Patron Products Inc.

2. Material: Flame-retardant, coated polyester and fiberglass fabric.
3. Duct Connection: Round.
4. Duct Connection Size: As indicated on the drawings.
5. Diffusion Hole Size: As indicated on the drawings.
6. Diffusion Hole Frequency - Number per 100 Feet: As indicated on the drawings.
7. Accessories:

    a. Quick-connect joint.
    b. Snap hooks.
    c. Cleanout zipper.
    d. Condensate drain.

2.5 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register:

1. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
3. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
7. Mounting: Concealed.
8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
9. Accessories:

    a. Rear-blade gang operator.
    b. Filter.

B. Security Register <**Insert drawing designation**>:

1. Security Level: [**Maximum**] [**Medium**] [**Minimum**] [**and suicide deterrent**].
2. Application: [**Ducted return**] [**Air transfer**] [**Barrier**].
3. Material: [**Steel**] [**Aluminum**].
4. Material Thickness: [**0.19 inch**] <**Insert dimension**>.
5. Finish: [**Baked enamel, white**] [**Baked enamel, color selected by Architect**] <**Insert finish**>.
6. Face Arrangement:

    a. Shape: [**Square**] [**Rectangular**] [**Round**].
    b. Design: [**Fixed bar**] [**Perforated**] [**Lattice**].
    c. Frame: [**Yes**] [**No**].
    d. Deflection: [**Zero**] [**38**] degrees.
    e. Core: [**None**] [**Louvered**].
    f. 3/16-inch- thick, front lattice plate with 2-by-2-inch- square holes and 1-inch frets, 0.135-inch wire mesh, and 1/4-inch- thick backer plate.
    g. 3/16-inch- thick, perforated faceplate with 5/16-inch- diameter holes spaced 7/16 inch o.c., staggered at 60 degrees.
    h. 1-1/2-inch bars and mandrel tubes and rods with [**zero**] [**15**]-degree deflection in 1-1/4-by-1-1/4-by-3/16-inch angle border.
    i. 1-3/8-inch bars and double mandrel tubes with [**zero**] [**15**]-degree deflection in 1-3/4-inch angle border.

7. Damper Operation: [**None**] [**Face operated**] [**Rear operated**].
8. Damper Type: [**Adjustable opposed blade**] [**NRTL listed, opposed blade, spring closing, and with fusible link for 160 deg F**].
9. Wall Sleeve: [**3/16 inch welded to face**] [**1/8 inch welded to face**] [**Mechanically fastened to border**].
10. Mounting: [**1-by-1-by-3/16-inch retaining angle frame**] [**1-1/4-by-1-1/4-by-3/16-inch retaining angle frame**] [**1-1/4-by-1-1/4-by-3/16-inch cast-in-place frame and tamperproof machine screws**].

C. Security Grille <**Insert drawing designation**>:

1. Security Level: [**Maximum**] [**Medium**] [**Minimum**] [**and suicide deterrent**].
2. Application: [**Ducted return**] [**Air transfer**] [**Barrier**].
3. Material: [**Steel**] [**Aluminum**].
4. Material Thickness: [**0.19 inch**] <**Insert dimension**>.
5. Finish: [**Baked enamel, white**] [**Baked enamel, color selected by Architect**] <**Insert finish**>.
6. Face Arrangement:

    a. Shape: [**Square**] [**Rectangular**] [**Round**].
    b. Design: [**Fixed bar**] [**Perforated**] [**Lattice**].
    c. Frame: [**Yes**] [**No**].
    d. Deflection: [**Zero**] [**38**] degrees.
    e. Core: [**None**] [**Louvered**].
    f. 3/16-inch- thick, front lattice plate with 2-by-2-inch- square holes and 1-inch frets, 0.135-inch wire mesh, and 1/4-inch- thick backer plate.
    g. 3/16-inch- thick perforated faceplate with 5/16-inch- diameter holes spaced 7/16 inch o.c., staggered at 60 degrees.
    h. 1-1/2-inch bars and mandrel tubes and rods with [**zero**] [**15**]-degree deflection in 1-1/4-by-1-1/4-by-3/16-inch angle border.

i. 1-3/8-inch bars and double mandrel tubes with [**zero**] [**15**]-degree deflection in 1-3/4-inch angle border.

7. Wall Sleeve: [**3/16 inch welded to face**] [**1/8 inch welded to face**] [**Mechanically fastened to border**].
8. Mounting: [**1-by-1-by-3/16-inch retaining angle frame**] [**1-1/4-by-1-1/4-by-3/16-inch retaining angle frame**] [**1-1/4-by-1-1/4-by-3/16-inch cast-in-place frame and tamperproof machine screws**].

D. Fixed Face Register:

1. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Frame: 1 inch wide.
6. Mounting: Concealed.
7. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
8. Accessory: Filter.

E. Linear Bar Grille:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
4. Distribution plenum.
   a. Internal insulation.
   b. Inlet damper.
5. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
6. Mounting: Concealed.
7. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

2.6 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Slot Diffuser:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material - Shell: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
4. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, white exterior with black interior, unless noted otherwise.
5. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
6. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, white.
7. Slot Width: As indicated on the drawings.
8. Number of Slots: as indicated on the drawings.
9. Length: as indicated on the drawings.
10. Accessories:
    a. End caps in lay-in ceilings.
    b. End Borders where not installed in lay-in ceilings.
    c. Insulated plenum: By manufacturer black finish unless otherwise noted.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 37 23

HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of roof-mounting intake and relief ventilators:

1. Louver penthouses.
2. Roof hoods.
3. Goosenecks.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for ventilator assemblies provided as part of the general construction.
2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Power Ventilators" for roof-mounting exhaust fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Intake and relief ventilators shall be capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads, wind loads, seismic loads (if required), and thermal movements without permanent deformation of components, noise or metal fatigue, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors.

B. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Acme Corp.
2. Greenheck
3. Loren Cook Co.
4. Penn Ventilation
5. Ruskin

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings: For intake and relief ventilators. Include details and ventilator attachments to curbs and curb attachments to roof structure.

D. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain ventilators through one source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of intake and relief ventilators and are based on the specific equipment indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.

D. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.

1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.

2. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187, when noted on the drawings.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Factory or shop fabricate intake and relief ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.

C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.

D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.

E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

2.3 LOUVER PENTHOUSES

A. Construction: All-welded assembly with 4-inch-deep louvers, mitered corners, and aluminum sheet roof.

B. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.052 inch for frames and 0.052 inch for blades.

1. Blade Spacing: 4”.
2. Blade Angle: 45 degrees.
3. Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop at 750-fpm free-area velocity.
4. AMCA Seal: Mark units with the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
5. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades and with fully recessed mullions at corners.

C. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches unless noted otherwise.

D. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

E. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROOF HOODS

A. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figures 5-6 and 5-7.

B. Materials: Galvanized-steel sheet, minimum 0.064-inch- thick base and 0.040-inch- thick hood; suitably reinforced.

C. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches unless noted otherwise.

D. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

E. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 GOOSENECKS

A. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 5-5; with a minimum of 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet.

B. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches.

C. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install intake and relief ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Secure intake and relief ventilators to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

C. Install goosenecks on curb base where throat size exceeds 9 by 9 inches.

D. Install intake and relief ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.

E. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.

G. Label intake and relief ventilators according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

H. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.

I. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 81 26

SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components. Units are designed for exposed or concealed mounting, and may be connected to ducts.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each unit indicated. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

B. Operation and maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials and workmanship within five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carrier
2. Lennox
3. Trane
4. York

2.2 EVAPORATOR-FAN UNIT

A. Concealed Unit Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.

1. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
2. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated and complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.

C. Evaporator Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.

D. Fan Motor: Multispeed.

E. Filters: 1 inch thick, in fiberboard frames.

2.3 AIR-COOLED, COMPRESSOR-CONDENSER UNIT

A. Casing steel, finished with baked enamel, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

B. Compressor: Hermetically sealed reciprocating type with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.

1. Refrigerant: R-410a (unless otherwise indicated on the drawings).

C. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.

D. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.

E. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.

F. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.

G. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

H. Minimum Energy Efficiency: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

B. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

1. Minimum Insulation Thickness: 1/2 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

B. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.

C. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.

D. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

E. Install compressor-condenser components on restrained, spring isolators with a minimum static deflection of 1 inch. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

B. Connect supply and return condenser connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.

C. Install piping adjacent to unit to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connection, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

C. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new components, and retest.

D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 23 81 46

WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of water-source heat pumps:

1. Concealed horizontal or vertical units, 6 tons and smaller.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each model.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of water-source heat pump, signed by product manufacturer. All equipment listed in this section must be rated and certified in accordance with American Refrigeration Institute / International Standards Organization (ARI / ISO) and Canadian Standards Association (CSA-US). The units shall have ARI / ISO and CSA-US labels

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water-source heat pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Climate Master
2. Carrier
3. Florida Heat Pump
4. Trane
5. McQuay

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a

written request 10 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of water-source heat pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15.
2. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery water-source heat pumps.

G. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct-system connections.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of water-source heat pumps and suspension components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.

2. Warranty Period: Manufacturer shall warranty all parts one year from start-up or 18 months from shipment. The compressor shall have a 5 year warranty. Installing contractor shall provide warranty labor for a period on one year.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS

A. Description: Packaged water-source heat pump with temperature controls; factory assembled, tested, and rated according to ARI-ISO-13256-1.

B. Cabinet and Chassis: Galvanized-steel casing, powder coated on both sides, with the following features:

1. Minimum of three (3) Access panels for serviceability of internal components.
2. Knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
3. Flanged duct connections.
4. Compressor Section Cabinet Insulation: Glass-fiber liner, minimum 1/2 inch thick, dual density, 1 ¾lb.
5. Air Handling Section Cabinet Insulation: Glass-fiber liner, minimum 1/2 inch thick, single density, foil backed 1 ¾lb.
6. Standard cabinet panel insulation must meet NFPA 90A requirements, air erosion and mold growth limits of UL-181, stringent fungal resistance test per ASTM-C1071 and ASTM G21, and shall meet zero level bacteria growth per ASTM G22.
7. Condensate Drainage: HDPE or stainless-steel drain pan with condensate drain piping projecting through unit cabinet and complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.
9. All units must have an insulated panel separating the fan compartment from the compressor compartment. The compressor shall be located outside the air stream.

C. Fan and Motor:

1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Blower shall have inlet rings to allow removal of wheel and motor from one side without removing housing. Units shall have a direct-drive centrifugal fan. The fan motor shall be 3-speed, permanently lubricated, PSC type, with internal thermal overload protection. Units supplied without permanently lubricated motors must provide external oilers for easy service. The fan motor shall be isolated from the fan housing by a torsionally flexible motor mounting system with rubber type grommets to inhibit vibration induced high noise levels associated with “hard wire belly band” motor mounting. The fan and motor assembly must be capable of overcoming the external static pressures as shown on the schedule. Airflow / Static pressure rating of the unit shall be based on a dry coil and a clean filter in place.

D. Water Circuit:

1. Refrigerant-to-Water Heat Exchangers:

a. Coaxial heat exchangers with copper water tube with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube leak tested to 500 psig on

refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side. Factory mount heat exchanger in unit on resilient rubber vibration isolators.

b. Stainless-steel, brazed-plate heat exchanger leak tested to 450 psig for refrigerant side and 400 psig for water side. Factory mount heat exchanger in unit on resilient rubber vibration isolators.

2. Motorized Water Valve: Stop water flow through the unit when compressor is off.

E. Refrigerant-to-Air Coils: Copper tubes with aluminum fins, leak tested to 450 psig.

F. Refrigerant Circuit Components:

1. Sealed Refrigerant Circuit: Charge with R-32 or R-454B refrigerant.
2. Filter-Dryer: Factory installed to clean and dehydrate the refrigerant circuit.
3. Charging Connections: Service fittings on suction and liquid for charging and testing.
4. Reversing Valve: Pilot-operated sliding-type valve designed to be fail-safe in heating position with replaceable magnetic coil.
5. Compressor: Hermetic rotary or scroll compressor installed on vibration isolators and housed in an acoustically treated enclosure with factory-installed safeties. Activation of any safety device shall prevent compressor operation via a microprocessor lockout circuit. The lockout circuit shall be reset at the thermostat or at the contractor supplied disconnect switch. Factory installed safeties required as follows:

   a. Anti- short cycle timer.
   b. High-pressure cutout.
   c. Low-pressure cutout or loss of charge switch.
   d. Water coil low temperature sensor
   e. Air coil low temperature sensor
   f. Condensate overflow sensor

6. Refrigerant Piping Materials: ASTM B 743 copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
7. Pipe Insulation: Refrigerant minimum 3/8-inch- thick, flexible elastomeric insulation on piping exposed to airflow through the unit. Maximum 25/50 flame-spread/smoke-development indexes according to ASTM E 84.
8. Refrigerant Metering Device: Thermal expansion valve to allow specified operation with entering-water temperatures from 40 to 100 deg F.
9. Provide units with applicable factory refrigerant monitoring devices and BAS point monitoring, with circuit shut off in compliance with ASHRAE Standard 15-2002 for A2L Refrigerants.

G. Filters: Disposable, pleated type, 1 inch thick and with a minimum of 90 percent arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1 and a minimum efficiency reporting value of 7 according to ASHRAE 52.2.

H. Sound Attenuation (required for units 5 tons and below only):

1. Ultra quiet package shall consist of high technology sound attenuating material that is strategically applied to the compressor and air handling compartment casings and fan scroll in addition to the standard system design, to further dampen and attenuate sound transmissions.

I. Hot gas reheat (where indicated)

1. Dehumidification (where indicateded) is provided through a hot gas reheat option. The coil shall consist of 3/8"/1/2" copper tubes mechanically expanded into evenly spaced aluminum fins. All coils shall be proof and leak tested. The proof test must be performed at 1.5 times the maximum operating pressure and the leak test performed at the maximum operating pressure.

J. Drain Pan: the drain pan shall be constructed of 304 Stainless Steel to inhibit corrosion. This corrosion protection system shall meet the stringent 1000 hour salt spray test per ASTM B117. If plastic type material is used, it must be HDPE (High Density Polyethylene) to avoid thermal cycling shock stress failure over the lifetime of the unit. Drain pan shall be fully insulated. Drain outlet shall be located at pan as to allow complete and unobstructed drainage of condensate. Drain outlet for horizontal units shall be connected from pan directly to IPT fitting. The unit as standard will be supplied with solid-state electronic condensate overflow protection. Vertical units shall be furnished with a PVC slip condensate drain connection and an internal factory installed condensate trap.

K. Control equipment is specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Controls for HVAC." See plans for Sequence of Operation.

L. Controls:

Solid state control system shall communicate with thermostat to display (at the thermostat) the unit status, fault status, and specific fault condition, as well as retrieve previously stored fault that caused unit shutdown. The Remote Service Sentinel allows building maintenance personnel or service personnel to diagnose unit from the wall thermostat. The control board shall provide a signal to the thermostat fault light, indicating a lockout. Upon cycling the G (fan) input 3 times within a 60 second time period, the fault light shall display the specific code as indicated by a sequence of flashes. A detailed flashing code shall be provided at the thermostat LED to display unit status and specific fault status such as over/under voltage fault, high pressure fault, low pressure fault, low water temperature fault, condensate overflow fault, etc. The control board will be supplied with a LONWORKS interface board, which is LONMark certified or BACnet certified interface board. This will permit all units to be daisy chained via a 2-wire twisted pair shielded cable. The following points must be available at a central or remote computer location:

a. space temperature
b. leaving water temperature
c. discharge air temperature
d. command of space temperature setpoint
e. cooling status
f. heating status
g. low temperature sensor alarm
h. low pressure sensor alarm
i. high pressure switch alarm
j. condensate sensor alarm
k. hi/low voltage alarm
l. fan "ON/AUTO" position of space thermostat as specified above
m. unoccupied / occupied command
n. cooling command
o. heating command
p. fan "ON / AUTO" command
q. fault reset command
r. itemized fault code revealing reason for specific shutdown fault (any one of 7)

M. Electrical Connection: Single electrical connection.

N. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.2 HOSE KITS

A. General: Hose kits shall be designed for minimum 400 psig working pressure, and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F. Tag hose kits to equipment designations.

B. Hose: Length 24 inches. Minimum diameter, equal to water-source heat-pump connection size.

C. Isolation Valves: Two-piece bronze-body ball valves with stainless-steel ball and stem and galvanized-steel lever handle. Provide valve for supply and return. If balancing device is combination shutoff type with memory stop, the isolation valve may be omitted on the return.

D. Strainer: Y-type with blowdown valve in supply connection.

E. Balancing Device: Mount in return connection. Include meter ports to allow flow measurement with differential pressure gage.

1. Automatic balancing valve, factory set to operate within +/-5% of gpm rating. Cartridge must be accessible without removing valve from piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of water-source heat pumps.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electric installations for water-source heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections and electrical conduit before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Concrete Bases: Install floor mounted units on 4-inch- high concrete bases. See Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC" for concrete base materials and fabrication requirements.

B. Unless otherwise noted, mount horizontal and vertical water-source heat pumps on concrete base with vibration isolators. Vibration isolators are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

1. Units with Internally Isolated Fans and Compressors: Support on concrete bases using neoprene pads with minimum 0.125-inch static deflection. Secure units to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases.
2. Units without Internally Isolated Fans and Compressors: Support on concrete bases using housed-spring isolators with minimum 1-inch static deflection. Secure units to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases.
3. Install units level.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with hose kits.
2. Connect heat-pump condensate drain pan to indirect waste connection with condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against the pressure of fan. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.

B. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Connect supply and return ducts to water-source heat pumps with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.

D. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing water-source heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE (Provided by Installing Contractor)

A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
3. Inspect internal insulation.
4. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
5. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
6. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
7. Verify that filters are installed.
8. Adjust vibration isolators.
9. Inspect operation of barometric dampers.

10. Verify bearing lubrication on fan.
11. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
12. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
13. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
14. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
15. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
16. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
17. Verify thermostat and humidistat calibration.
18. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
19. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
20. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following:

    a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.

21. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

    a. Supply-air volume.
    b. Return-air volume.
    c. Relief-air volume.
    d. Outdoor-air intake volume.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Replace filters used during construction prior to air balance or substantial completion.

B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished water-source heat pumps, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water-source heat pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 00

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
3. Sleeve seals.
4. Grout.
5. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
   1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
      a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
      b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
      a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
      b. Calpico, Inc.
      c. Metraflex Co.
      d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   3. Sealing Elements: EPDM NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
   4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
   5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.

I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants.".

J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

K. s in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 19

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Alpha Wire Company.

2. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
3. Okonite Company (The).
4. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

E. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
3. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Alpha Wire Company.
2. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
3. Okonite Company (The).
4. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.

E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.

2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.

4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.4 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.5 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. Calpico, Inc.
3. Metraflex Co.
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 1/0 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 1/0 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

F. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

I. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway, Type MC Mineral-insulated, Type MI.

J. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

K. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

L. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway Power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes Power-limited tray cable, in cable tray.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
   1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
   1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
   2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.

G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

N. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
   2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
      a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
      b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
      c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
   1. Test procedures used.
   2. Test results that comply with requirements.
   3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 23

CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. UTP cabling.
2. 50/125-micrometer, multimode optical fiber cabling.
3. RS-232 cabling.
4. RS-485 cabling.
5. Low-voltage control cabling.
6. Control-circuit conductors.
7. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

D. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

E. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
1. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
2. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
3. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
4. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Maintenance Data: For wire and cable to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
2. Test optical fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install UTP and optical fiber cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
3. Straps and other devices.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

A. Description: Plywood, AC Grade, 2 coats fire retardant paint on all sides, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.
1. Belden CDT Inc.; Electronics Division.
2. CommScope, Inc.
3. Superior Essex Inc.
4. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
5. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.

B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP.
1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6.
4. Verified by NRTL to TIA/EIA-568-B.2, TIA/EIA 568-B.2-1 Category 6.

5. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
   a. Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX complying with UL 1581 VW-1
   b. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM complying with UL 1581(Vertical Tray)
   c. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR complying with UL 1666
   d. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with NFPA 262.

2.4 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Leviton Voice & Data Division.
2. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
3. Panduit Corp.
4. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
5. Commscope.

B. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

C. Connecting Blocks: 110 style for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare; integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

2.5 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CommScope, Inc.
2. Superior Essex Inc.
3. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.

B. Description: Multimode, 50/125-micrometer, 24 fiber, nonconductive, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B for detailed specifications.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 262 for the following types:
   a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
   b. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR complying with UL 1666.
   c. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP complying with NFPA 262.
   d. Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR complying with UL 1666.
5. Conductive cable shall be aluminum-armored type.
6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
7. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 50 700 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm

C. Jacket:
1. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

2.6 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
2. Corning Cable Systems.
3. Dynacom Corporation.
4. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
5. Optical Connectivity Solutions Division; Emerson Network Power.
6. AMP; a Tyco International Ltd. company.

B. Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with the Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
1. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
2. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

2.7 RS-232 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.8 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.9 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

C. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

D. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.10 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.

B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway[power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes complying with UL 83.

C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

2.11 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
2. HellermannTyton.
3. Kroy LLC.
4. Panduit Corp.
5. AMP; a Tyco International Ltd. company.

B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.

B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.

D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

E. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering room from overhead.
4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

F. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
6. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
7. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
8. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

F. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inchesapart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

G. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Coil cable 72 inches long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point.

H. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.3 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. For data communication wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not after cross connection.
    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
4. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
        1) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
        2) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 26

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to specification section 27 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems for technology grounding requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
   1. Underground distribution grounding.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
   1. Test wells.
   2. Ground rods.
   3. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
   4. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
   1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells ground rings grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
      a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
      b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:
1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.

D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by10 feet in diameter.

B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install barecopper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum, or as indicated on the plans.
   1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
   2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
   1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch, minimum, from wall 6 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.

E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
   1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
   2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
   3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
   4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
   1. Feeders and branch circuits.
   2. Lighting circuits.
   3. Receptacle circuits.
   4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
   5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
   6. Flexible raceway runs.
   7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
   8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
   9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
   1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
   2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
   2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

C. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
   1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
   1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
   2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
   3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
   1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
   2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
   3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
      a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
      b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
   3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
   1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
   2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
   3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
   4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
   5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
   6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
      b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      c. ERICO International Corporation.
      d. GS Metals Corp.
      e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
      f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
      g. Wesanco, Inc.
   2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
   3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
   4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
   5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c., in at least 1 surface.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
      b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
      d. Seasafe, Inc.
   2. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
   3. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles.
   4. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.

C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Not Allowed.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
        2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
        3) Hilti Inc.
        4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
        5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
   1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
   1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
   2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
   3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
   4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
   5. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
   6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
   7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section " Cast-in-Place Concrete (Limited Applications)."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
   1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
   1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 05 33

RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.

D. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.

F. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

G. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Custom enclosures and cabinets.
2. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:
   a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
   b. Frame and cover design.
   c. Grounding details.
   d. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
   e. Joint details.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand

seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   a. The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

E. Source quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Alflex Inc.
3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
5. Electri-Flex Co.
6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
9. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.

C. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.

D. IMC: ANSI C80.6.

E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated IMC.
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.

F. EMT: ANSI C80.3.

G. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.

H. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

I. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
2. Fittings for EMT: Steel, compression type. Set-screw or crimp shall not be permitted.
3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

J. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. ElecSYS, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Co.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
11. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.

C. LFNC: UL 1660.

D. Fittings for RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

E. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

2.3 OPTICAL FIBER/COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Arnco Corporation.
2. Endot Industries Inc.
3. IPEX Inc.
4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

B. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for plenum installation.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Square D; Schneider Electric.

B. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 12, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
   b. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
   c. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.
   d. Panduit

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast or sheet metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.

E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

F. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.

G. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.

H. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

2.7 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.8 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. Calpico, Inc.
3. Metraflex Co.
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: IMC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC- 80-PVC, direct buried.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.
6. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:
   a. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
   b. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer-concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
   c. Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf vertical loading.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:
1. MC cable not permitted.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
4. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:
   a. Loading dock.
   b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
   c. Mechanical rooms.
5. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
7. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
8. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway.
9. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: Riser-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway.
10. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: General-use, optical fiber/communications cable raceway.
11. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, nonmetallic in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Change from ENT to rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.

I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

K. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

L. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
1. 3/4-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
2. 1-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

M. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

N. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F, and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet.
1. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:
   a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
   b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
   c. Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
   d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change.
3. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.

O. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

P. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.

Q. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

R. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.

2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Provide a bright colored plastic marker strip reading: "Caution - Electrical Conduits" in each underground conduit trench. Install a maximum of 12" below grade or a minimum of 18" above top of duct bank. All underground markings shall have metallic marking tape.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
   1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
   2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
   1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.9 AS-BUILT COORDINATION

A. Provide dimensioned locations for all underground conduits. A minimum of two dimensions from building reference points shall be provided along with bury depth.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 05 36

CABLE TRAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes aluminum cable trays and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.
1. Show fabrication and installation details of cable tray, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.
2. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, who is responsible for their preparation.
   a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
   b. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.

C. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and sections, drawn to scale. Include scaled cable tray layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Show the following:
1. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
2. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
3. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cable trays to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain cable tray components through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store indoors to prevent water or other foreign materials from staining or adhering to cable tray. Unpack and dry wet materials before storage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Cooper B-Line, Inc. (Preferred Brand)
   2. MONO-SYSTEMS, Inc.
   3. Cablofil.

2.2 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

A. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Steel, complying with NEMA VE 1.
   1. Factory-standard primer, ready for field painting; with cadmium-plated hardware according to ASTM B 766.
   2. Mill galvanized before fabrication, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating; with hardware galvanized according to ASTM B 633.
   3. Electrogalvanized before fabrication, complying with ASTM B 633; with hardware galvanized according to ASTM B 633.
   4. Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Class B2; with chromium-zinc, ASTM F 1136, hardware.
   5. PVC coating applied in a fluidized bed or by electrostatic spray; with chromium-zinc, ASTM F 1136 hardware.
   6. Epoxy-resin paint over paint manufacturer's recommended primer and corrosion-inhibiting treatment; with cadmium-plated hardware according to ASTM B 766.

B. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Aluminum, complying with NEMA VE 1, Aluminum Association's Alloy 6063-T6 for rails, rungs, and cable trays, and Alloy 5052-H32 or Alloy 6061-T6 for fabricated parts; with chromium-zinc, ASTM F 1136, splice-plate fasteners, bolts, and screws

C. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Stainless steel, Type 304, complying with NEMA VE 1.

D. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Fiberglass, complying with NEMA FG 1 and UL 568. Splice-plate fasteners, bolts, and screws shall be fiberglass-encapsulated stainless steel. Design fasteners so that no metal is visible when fully assembled and tightened. Fastener encapsulation shall not be damaged when torqued to manufacturer's recommended value.

E. Sizes and Configurations: Refer to the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.
   1. Center-hanger supports may be used only when specifically indicated.

2.3 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.

B. Covers: Louvered type of same materials and finishes as cable tray.

C. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as cable tray.

D. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.4 WARNING SIGNS

A. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch- high, black letters on yellow background with legend "WARNING! NOT TO BE USED AS WALKWAY, LADDER, OR SUPPORT FOR LADDERS OR PERSONNEL."

B. Materials and fastening are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform design and production tests according to NEMA FG 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with recommendations in NEMA VE 2. Install as a complete system, including all necessary fasteners, hold-down clips, splice-plate support systems, barrier strips, hinged horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, and crosses.

B. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.

C. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure and install seismic restraints.
1. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and to comply with seismic-restraint details according to Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
2. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules.
3. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
4. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
5. Manufacture center-hung support, designed for 60 percent versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.
6. Locate and install supports according to NEMA FG 1.

D. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable tray and to equipment. Support cable tray independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable tray on equipment enclosure.

E. Install expansion connectors where cable tray crosses building expansion joint and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA FG 1. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.

F. Make changes in direction and elevation using standard fittings.

G. Make cable tray connections using standard fittings.

H. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

I. Sleeves for Future Cables: Install capped sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.

J. Workspace: Install cable trays with enough space to permit access for installing cables.

K. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing; or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.

L. After installation of cable trays is completed, install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays.

3.2 CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install cables only when cable tray installation has been completed and inspected.

B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties as recommended by NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.

C. On vertical runs, fasten cables to tray every 18 inches. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.

D. In existing construction, remove inactive or dead cables from cable tray.

E. Install covers after installation of cable is completed.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground cable trays according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor with cable tray, in addition to those required by NFPA 70. Refer to NEC 392.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements. Perform the following field quality-control survey:
   1. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable tray, vibration, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
   2. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable tray do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communication or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers.
   3. Verify that there is no intrusion of such items as pipe, hangers, or other equipment that could damage cables.
   4. Remove deposits of dust, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
   5. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorque in suspect areas.

6. Check for missing or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
7. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable tray.

B. Report results in writing.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed cable trays.
1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
3. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to protect exposed cables from falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials until the risk of damage is over.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 05 43

UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Conduit, ducts, and duct accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct banks, and in single duct runs.
2. Handholes and boxes.
3. Manholes.

1.3 DEFINITION

A. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
2. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
4. Warning tape.

B. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the following:
1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
2. Reinforcement details.
3. Frame and cover design and manhole frame support rings.
4. Ladder details.
5. Grounding details.
6. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
7. Joint details.

C. Shop Drawings for Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details, including the following:
1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
2. Cover design.
3. Grounding details.
4. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

D. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.

1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

E. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.

F. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

G. Source quality-control test reports.

H. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Comply with ANSI C2.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.

B. Store precast concrete and other factory-fabricated underground utility structures at Project site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.

C. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.

B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators, and associated fasteners in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantity of each item installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT

A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.

B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC and Type EPC-80-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

2.2 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ARNCO Corp.
2. Beck Manufacturing.
3. Cantex, Inc.
4. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
5. Condux International, Inc.
6. ElecSys, Inc.
7. Electri-Flex Company.
8. IPEX Inc.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
11. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.

B. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type EB-20-PVC, ASTM F 512, UL 651A, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.

C. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type DB-60-PVC and Type DB-80-PVC, ASTM F 512, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.

D. Duct Accessories:
1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
3. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches in size, manufactured from 6000-psi concrete.
    a. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
    b. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- high, 3/8-inch- deep letters.

2.3 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Carder Concrete Products.
2. Christy Concrete Products.
3. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
4. Oldcastle Precast Group.
5. Riverton Concrete Products; a division of Cretex Companies, Inc.
6. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.

7. Utility Vault Co.
8. Wausau Tile, Inc.

B. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.

C. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
2. Coordinate remaining subparagraphs and associated subparagraphs below with Drawings.
3. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
4. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." Or "TELEPHONE." As indicated for each service.
5. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
   a. Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches.
   b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
7. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks plus an additional 12 inches vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
   a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
   b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
   c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
8. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
   a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
   b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
9. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
1. Color: Gray.
2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." Or "TELEPHONE." As indicated for each service.
6. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

7. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

B. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
   a. Armorcast Products Company.
   b. Carson Industries LLC.
   c. CDR Systems Corporation.
   d. NewBasis.

C. High-Density Plastic Boxes: Injection molded of high-density polyethylene or copolymer-polypropylene. Cover shall be polymer concrete.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Carson Industries LLC.
   b. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
   c. PenCell Plastics.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or the manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

A. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, installed in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths Walks and Driveways Roadways and Railroads: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less, Including Telephone, Communications, and Data Wiring:
1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20 Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 structural load rating.
4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf vertical loading.

3.3 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 22 Section "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 32 Sections "Turfs and Grasses" and "Plants."

D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching."

3.4 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes to drain in both directions.

B. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches 12.5 feet 25 feet, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.

D. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
   1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
   2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole.
   3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.

E. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Division 26 Section "Common Work Results for Electrical/Common Work Results for Communications/Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security."

F. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.

G. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf- test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.

H. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
   1. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
   2. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
      a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
      b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
   3. Pouring Concrete: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Use a plank to direct concrete down sides of bank assembly to trench bottom. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.
   4. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
   5. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
   6. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and signal ducts.

7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout the length of the elbow.
9. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
10. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.

I. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:
1. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
2. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
3. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 22 Section "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
4. Install backfill as specified in Division 22 Section "Earth Moving."
5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 22 Section "Earth Moving."
6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches below finished grade, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below the frost line.
9. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
10. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole Installation:
1. Comply with ASTM C 891, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:
1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below the frost line, 12” below grade.
4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

D. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07 Section " Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing."After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

E. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing." After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

F. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

G. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.

H. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches for manholes and 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

I. Warning Sign: Install "Confined Space Hazard" warning sign on the inside surface of each manhole cover.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by the manufacturer.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, 12” below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
1. Concrete: 3000 psi, 28-day strength, complying with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep.

3.7 GROUNDING

A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
2. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 48

VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Isolation pads.
2. Spring isolators.
3. Restrained spring isolators.
4. Channel support systems.
5. Restraint cables.
6. Hanger rod stiffeners.
7. Anchorage bushings and washers.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. The IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the electrical system. The requirements for these restraints are found in the ASCE 7.

B. The Electrical Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical System" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for sheet metal ducts, piping, and conduit, etc.

C. The Electrical Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment systems, and assemblies.

D. The professional engineer retained by the Electrical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation related to seismic restraints. Site classification is “D”.

E. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
1. Site Class shall be as Defined in the NC State Building Code (Chapter 16) and ASCE 7, as determined by the project Structural Engineer of record.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category shall be as Defined in the NC State Building Code (Chapter 16) and ASCE 7 for the following:
   a. Component Importance Factor.
   b. Component Response Modification Factor.
   c. Component Amplification Factor.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
   a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
3. Restrained-Isolation Devices: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
   a. Coordinate design calculations with wind-load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 26 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
2. Indicate materials and dimensions and identify hardware, including attachment and anchorage devices.
3. Field-fabricated supports.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
   a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
   b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
   c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
3. California Dynamics Corporation.
4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
5. Kinetics Noise Control.
6. Mason Industries.
7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
8. Vibration Isolation.
9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Pads: Arrange in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass.

C. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

D. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. California Dynamics Corporation.
3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
4. Hilti Inc.
5. Loos & Co.; Seismic Earthquake Division.
6. Mason Industries.
7. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
8. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.

B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

C. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized -steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.

F. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.

G. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.

H. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

I. Mechanical Anchor: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

J. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.3 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
1. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
2. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

D. Drilled-in Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post-connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
7. Measure isolator deflection.
8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
9. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. The professional engineer retained by the Mechanical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation related to seismic restraints.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 05 53

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
2. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
3. Underground-line warning tape.
4. Warning labels and signs.
5. Instruction signs.
6. Equipment identification labels.
7. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.

B. Color for Printed Legend:
1. Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
2. Normal Power = Black; Emergency = Red; UPS = Blue
3. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.

C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Description: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.
1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick.
2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.

2.4 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.

C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

2.5 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.
1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb, minimum.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
1. Exterior Concrete, Stucco, and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
2. Exterior Concrete Unit Masonry:
   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a block filler.
      1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
      2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
3. Exterior Ferrous Metal:
   a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
4. Exterior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
   a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Exterior zinc-coated metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
5. Interior Concrete and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
   a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Interior concrete and masonry primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss alkyd enamel.
6. Interior Concrete Unit Masonry:
   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a block filler.
      1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
7. Interior Gypsum Board:
   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
8. Interior Ferrous Metal:
   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
9. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      1) Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 100A: Identify with orange self-adhesive vinyl label.

B. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands:
1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
7. Control Wiring: Green and red.

C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For primary and secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use metal tags. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.

D. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use color-coding conductor tape. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.

E. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source and circuit number.

F. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.

G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

H. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply self-adhesive warning label s. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
   a. Power transfer switches.
   b. Controls with external control power connections.

2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

I. Instruction Signs:
1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer or load shedding.

J. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
1. Labeling Instructions:
   a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
   a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
   b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
   c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
   d. Transformers.
   e. Electrical substations.
   f. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
   g. Motor-control centers.
   h. Disconnect switches.
   i. Enclosed circuit breakers.
   j. Motor starters.
   k. Push-button stations.
   l. Power transfer equipment.
   m. Contactors.
   n. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
   o. Battery inverter units.
   p. Battery racks.
   q. Power-generating units.
   r. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
   s. Master clock and program equipment.
   t. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
   u. Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
   v. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
   w. Security and intrusion-detection control stations, control panels, terminal cabinets, and racks.
   x. Monitoring and control equipment.
   y. Uninterruptible power supply equipment.
   z. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach nonadhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
   1. Color shall be factory applied or, for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit, field applied.
   2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
      a. Phase A: Black.
      b. Phase B: Red.
      c. Phase C: Blue.
   3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
      a. Phase A: Brown.
      b. Phase B: Orange.
      c. Phase C: Yellow.
   4. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

H. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

I. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

J. Painted Identification: Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 73.13

SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 05 73.16 “Coordination Studies” and Section 26 05 73.19 “Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.

B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.

C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.

G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals may be in digital form.
    a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
    b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:
   a. Final one-line diagram.
   b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
   c. Short-circuit study data files.
   d. Power system data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.
2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.

1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. Executive summary of study findings.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations and ratings.
6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.

D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document, separate from one-line diagram.

E. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:

1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
2. Power sources available.
3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
4. Conductors.
5. Transformer data.

G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:

1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    a. Voltage.
    b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
    c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    d. Equivalent impedance.
2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    a. Voltage.
    b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.

c. Fault-point X/R ratio.

d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:

1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.

3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

a. Voltage.

b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.

c. Fault-point X/R ratio.

d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.

e. Equivalent impedance.

f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.

2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.

2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.

3. Power sources and ties.

4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.

5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.

6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.

7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.

8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.

9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.

10. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
11. Derating factors.

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.

B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.

C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:

1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.

F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

G. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

I. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 05 73.16

COORDINATION STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 05 73.13 “Short-Circuit Studies” and Section 26 05 73.19 “Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

B. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

C. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

D. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.

E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

F. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

G. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals may be in digital form.
    a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
    b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
    a. Final one-line diagram.
    b. Final protective device coordination study.
    c. Coordination study data files.
    d. List of all protective device settings.
    e. Time-current coordination curves.
    f. Power system data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.

2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.

C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

1. Optional Features:
    a. Arcing faults.
    b. Simultaneous faults.
    c. Explicit negative sequence.
    d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.2 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. Executive summary of study findings.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
    a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."

D. Protective Device Coordination Study:

1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
    a. Phase and Ground Relays:
        1) Device tag.
        2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
        3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
    b. Circuit Breakers:
        1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
        2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
        3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
        4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
    c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.

E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:

1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
    a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
    b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.

c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.

d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.

e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.

f. Cables and conductors damage curves.

g. Ground-fault protective devices.

h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.

i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.

j. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.

5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.

6. Maintain maximum achievable selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads on series-rated devices.

7. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.

8. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.

2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.

2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.

3. Power sources and ties.

4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).

5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Maximum demands from service meters.
13. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
14. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
15. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
16. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, cable construction, metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
17. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
    a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
    b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
    c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
    d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
    e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
    f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
    g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
    h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
    i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
    j. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
    k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.

B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:

1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.

F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:

1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
   a. Inrush current when first energized.
   b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
   c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

H. Motor Protection:

1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.

I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.

K. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

M. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

3.4 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY

A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:

1. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
2. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of load buses.
3. Prepare load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or that might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

3.5 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY

A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of motor starting on the power system stability.

B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141 and voltage sags so as not to affect operation of other utilization equipment on system supplying the motor.

3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING

A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under the "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.

B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:

1. Acquaint personnel in fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
2. Hand-out and explain the coordination study objectives, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting time-current coordination curves.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 05 73.19

ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 05 73.13 “Short-Circuit Studies” and Section 26 05 73.16 “Coordination Studies”.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

B. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

C. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

D. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

F. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

G. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals may be in digital form:

1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. Provide maintenance procedures in equipment manuals according to requirements in NFPA 70E.

2. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.

2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

A. Executive summary of study findings.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

C. One-line diagram, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.

2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.

3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.

4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.

5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.

D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."

F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.16 "Coordination Studies."

G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:

1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in the report:
    a. Voltage.
    b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
    e. Equivalent impedance.
    f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:

1. Arcing fault magnitude.
2. Protective device clearing time.
3. Duration of arc.
4. Arc-flash boundary.
5. Restricted approach boundary.
6. Limited approach boundary.
7. Working distance.
8. Incident energy.
9. Hazard risk category.
10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.

B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:

1. Location designation.
2. Nominal voltage.
3. Protection boundaries.
    a. Arc-flash boundary.
    b. Restricted approach boundary.
    c. Limited approach boundary.
4. Available incident energy.
5. Working distance.

6. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.

B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.

1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
2. Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.16 "Coordination Studies."

C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.

1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to IEEE 1584 recommendations.

D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.

E. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.

F. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:

1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).

G. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:

1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.

H. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
14. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
15. Medium-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, conductor material, conductor construction and metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.4 LABELING

A. Apply one arc-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment for each equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.

B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:

1. Low-voltage switchboard.
2. Low voltage transformers.

3. Panelboards.
4. Control panel.
5. Automatic transfer switches.
6. Fused panelboards.

C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.

1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
2. Indicate protection level required.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

A. Install arc-flash warning labels.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 09 23

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Scope: The following specifications detail the minimum performance and related criteria for the Lighting Control System. Provide, connect, and furnish all necessary equipment for proper installation and service of the Lighting Control System indicated on the drawings and specified herein.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. The extent of lighting control system work is indicated by the drawings and the requirements of this section. The Lighting Control System as defined under this section includes all lighting control equipment, user interface devices, occupant and daylight sensors, and ancillary programming equipment. Types of equipment and wiring specified in this section include the following:

1. Programmable Light Energy Managers with time clock
2. Multi-level drivers or Full dimmable
3. Occupancy and Daylight Sensor Connectors
4. Wall controllers
5. Building Automation Interface

B. Requirements are indicated elsewhere in these specifications for work including, but not limited to, raceways, electrical boxes, wire, lighting fixtures, and fittings required for installation of the lighting control system, which are not part of this section.

C. It is the responsibility of the lighting supplier to meet the intent of these specifications. Where a specific piece of equipment cannot meet the requirements from the base design system, it is the manufacturer's responsibility to supplement the device in order to meet the intent with additional relays, graphical interface, switch controllers, etc.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Alternate and substituted equipment submittals shall provide a written line-by-line review of the specification.

B. Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 and Division 16 Specification Sections.

1. Product data for each of the products specified. Include data on features, components, ratings, and performance. Include dimensioned drawings with isometric projections of components and enclosures.
2. Sample of the equipment, devices, and device plates (white) for color selection and evaluation of technical features, as required by Engineer.
3. Wiring diagrams detailing internal and interconnecting wiring for power signal, and control that distinguish between field-installed and factory-installed wiring.
4. Equipment Riser (one-line) Diagram with wire type details.
5. Complete details on BACnet connection to Building Automation System, including complete Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS).

1.4 APPROVALS

A. Prior approval is required for alternate proposals in accordance with this project's specifications general requirements.

B. Complete Catalog data, specifications, and technical information on alternate equipment must be furnished to the Engineer, Architect, and Owner on the bid date.

C. System must utilize a passive detection technology. Ultrasonic sensor systems will not be allowed that interfere with the "Mimio" technology school system will be using. All control systems submitted shall have documentation stating non-interference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer experience: manufacturer of Lighting Control System shall have a minimum of 10 years of continuous experience in manufacturing lighting control products and luminaires.
B. To insure a single source of responsibility, all switching, dimming, and related lighting control equipment described herein shall be supplied by the lighting manufacturer.
C. Manufacturer shall have a nationwide network of factory trained and authorized service representatives capable of providing initial system commissioning, ongoing service contracts and on-site post-installation service support.
D. Approvals – all primary equipment and related accessories shall be UL or CSA marked as appropriate.
E. If requested, the contractor/manufacturer shall supply to the owner a written certification of compatibility to ensure that all components of the Lighting Control System, as defined in Section 1.3 and the remainder of this document, are fully compatible with each other for proper system functionality. This includes control electronics, sensors, drivers, and lamps.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer shall provide at minimum, a full one-year warranty on all equipment supplied. A three-year warranty shall be furnished on all equipment supplied when system is installed with modular wiring. A five year warranty shall be furnished on all compatible drivers.

1.7 COMMISSIONING (Required)

A. System Checkout, programming, and training – A factory certified technician shall functionally test the system, program all settings and schedules per owner's specification, and verify performance after contractor installation. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to coordinate with the owner and supply the necessary "as-installed" information and desired schedules to the manufacturer in a timely manner. The factory certified technician shall conduct a training session for the building operations personnel on the set-up, programming, operation and maintenance of the lighting control system. In addition to the commissioning and training, provide up to three visits to trouble shoot and set the systems. Full day visits, travel and expenses shall be included. Three additional full day visits shall be provided for post final/CO testing, refining and commissioning.

PART 2 - EQUIPMENT

2.0 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The lighting control system specified in this section shall provide time-based, sensor-based (both occupancy and daylight), and manual lighting control without the use of any centrally hardwired switching equipment (relay panels). The system's control shall be exerted by directly switching lighting loads on and off and/or dimming 0-10 VDC dimmable drivers.

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

This specification is based on the nLight® Control System from Sensor Switch, Inc. (800-727-7483, www.sensorswitch.com). Systems wishing to be substituted must be submitted no less than 5 days prior to bid date. An AutoCAD drawing of the facility showing coverage patterns and technical data must be provided with substitution request. All substitutions must clearly identify any and all exceptions to the specifications, with a detailed explanation as to the exception. If substitution is approved, the contractor shall bear the responsibility of a fully functional system to the owner's and an Architect's satisfaction. Acceptable equals:

1. nLight
2. Wattstopper DLM system.
3. Cooper Industries, Greengate.
4. **Preferred Brand Alternate No. 9:** Johnson Controls

2.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The installing contractor shall be responsible for a complete and functional system in accordance with all applicable local and national codes.
B. All applicable products must be UL and CUL or CSA Listed.
C. Product must be manufactured in the USA and be warranted for 5 years.

PART 3 – PRODUCTS

3.1 GENERAL SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS

The following sections describe the features which the lighting control system shall possess as a complete operational system. Individual device features and specifications are listed in section 2.02.

3.2 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. All switching relays shall be located within either a sensor device, single gang wall switch device, or power (relay) pack device.
B. All switching and dimming for a specific lighting zone shall take place within the devices located in the zone itself (i.e. not in a remotely located device).
C. System shall have a primary wall mounted network control "gateway" device that is capable of accessing and controlling all other system devices and linking into an Ethernet LAN.
D. System shall use "bridge" devices that route communication and distribute power for up to 8 lighting zones together for purposes of decreasing system wiring requirements.
E. System shall be able to utilize ZigBee® wireless mesh networking to facilitate communication with management software.
F. All devices within a single lighting zone shall be capable of being daisy-chain wired with CAT-5 low voltage cabling.
G. Communication and Class 2 system power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors. All cabling shall be installed by contractor providing lighting control system.
H. All system devices shall have at least two RJ-45 ports.
I. All wall mounted user control / gateway devices shall be low voltage, fit within a two gang switch box, and have a backlit LCD panel. User control shall be made available via finger-touch buttons with no moving parts.
J. System must have a web-based software management program that enables system control, status monitoring, and creation of lighting control profiles.
K. Each control gateway device shall be capable of linking 400 devices to the management software.
L. Individual lighting zones must continue to provide a user defined default level of lighting control in the event of a system communication failure or the management software becoming unavailable.

3.3 LIGHTING CONTROL PROFILES

A. Changes to the operation of the system can be made in real-time or scheduled via lighting control profiles. These profiles are outlines of settings that direct how a collection of devices function for a defined time period.
B. Lighting control profiles shall be capable of being created and applied to a single device, zone of devices, or customized group of zones.
C. All relays and dimming outputs shall be capable of being scheduled to track or ignore information regarding occupancy, daylight, and local user switches via lighting control profiles.
D. Every device parameter (e.g. sensor time delay and photocell set-point) shall be configurable via a lighting control profile.
E. All lighting control profiles shall be stored on the network gateway device and on the software's host server.
F. Lighting control profiles shall be capable of being scheduled to run according to the following calendar options: start date/hour/minute, end date/hour/minute, and sunrise/sunset +/- timed offsets.
G. Sunrise/sunset times shall be automatically derived from location information using an astronomical clock.
H. Daylight savings time adjustments shall be capable of being performed automatically, if desired.
I. Lighting control profile schedules shall be capable of being given the following recurrence settings: daily, weekday, weekend, weekly, monthly, and yearly.
J. Software shall provide a graphical tool for easily viewing scheduled lighting control profiles.

3.4 MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

A. Every device parameter (e.g. sensor time delay and photocell set-point) shall be available and configurable remotely from the software.
B. The following status monitoring information shall be made available from the software for all devices for which it is applicable: current occupancy status, current PIR Status, current Microphonics Status, remaining occupancy time delay(s), current photocell reading, current photocell inhibiting state, photocell transitions time remaining, current dim level, device temperature, and device relay state(s).
C. The following device identification information shall be made available from the software: model number, model description, serial number, manufacturing date code, custom label(s), and parent network device.
D. A printable network inventory report shall be available via the software.
E. Up to 40 simultaneous user sessions shall be capable of being supported.
F. Software shall require all users to login with a User Name and Password.
G. Software shall provide at least three permission levels for users.
H. All sensitive stored information and privileged communication by the software shall be encrypted.
I. All device firmware and system software updates must be available for automatic download and installation via the internet.

3.5 COMMISSIONING FEATURES

A. To facilitate commissioning, all devices daisy-chained together (using CAT-5) shall automatically be grouped together into a functional lighting control zone.
B. All lighting control zones shall be able to function according to default settings once adequate power is applied and before any system software is installed.
C. Once software is installed, system shall be able to auto-discover all system devices without requiring any commissioning.
D. All system devices shall be capable of being given user defined names.
E. All devices within the network shall be able to have their firmware reprogrammed remotely and without being physically uninstalled for purposes of upgrading functionality at a later date.
F. Manufacturer shall commission final product including all programming, zone set up, and owner training sessions. Session training shall include up to (2) days of 8 hour training of facility personnel.

3.6 INDIVIDUAL DEVICE SPECIFICATIONS

The lighting control system outlined above shall consist of only devices of the following types; occupancy sensors, daylight (photocell) sensors, wall switches, dimming switches, power (relay) packs, power supplies, communication bridges, network control gateways. Panel based relay devices are not acceptable.

3.7 Occupancy & Photocell Sensors

A. General Specifications

1 Occupancy sensing technologies shall be completely passive meaning that they will not emit any radiation that is known to interfere with certain types of hearing aides, or electronic devices such as electronic white board readers. Passive Infrared (PIR) or PIR/Microphonic Dual Technology detection technologies shall be acceptable. Ultrasonic or Microwave based sensing technologies shall not be accepted.
2 Sensors shall be available with zero, one, or two integrated Class 1 switching relays.
3 Sensors shall be available with one or two occupancy “poles”, each of which provides a programmable time delay.
4 Sensors shall be available in multiple lens options which are customized for specific applications.
5 Communication and Class 2 low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
6 All sensors shall have two RJ-45 ports.
7 Every sensor parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.

8 Sensors shall be able to function together with other sensors in order to provide expanded coverage areas by simply daisy-chain wiring together the units with CAT-5 cabling.
9 Sensors shall be equipped with an automatic override for 100 hour burn-in of lamps. This feature must be available at any time for lamp replacements.

B. Wall Switch Sensors

1 Sensor shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2 Sensor must meet NEC grounding requirements by providing a dedicated ground connection and grounding to mounting strap. Line and load wire connections shall be interchangeable. Sensor shall not allow current to pass to the load when sensor is in the unoccupied (Off) condition.
3 Sensor shall have optional features for photocell/daylight override, vandal resistant lens, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
4 Sensors shall be available in four colors (Ivory, White, Almond, Gray)

C. Ceiling & Corner Mount Sensors

1 Sensor shall have optional features for photocell/daylight override, dimming control, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
2 Sensors with dimming control can control 0 to 10 VDC dimmable drivers by sinking up to 20 mA of Class 2 current (typically 40 or more drivers).
3 All sensors have at least one or two occupancy poles, each of which provides a programmable time delay

D. Daylight (Photocell) Sensors

1. Sensor shall provide for an On/Off set-point, and a deadband to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Delay shall be incorporated into the photocell to prevent rapid response to passing clouds.
2. Sensors' set-point and deadband shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor's microcontroller by initiating the "Automatic Set-point Programming" subroutine. Further adjustment may be made manually if needed. Deadband setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., furniture layouts, lamp depreciation, or lamp outages).
3. Sensors with dimming control can control 0 to 10 VDC dimmable drivers by sinking up to 20 mA of Class 2 current (typically 40 or more drivers).
4. Photocell sensor's set point shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor's microcontroller by initiating the "Automatic Set-point Programming" subroutine. Min and Max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
5. Dual zone option shall be available for On/Off Photocell, Automatic Dimming Control Photocell, or Combination units. The second zone shall be controlled as an "offset" from the primary zone and shall be the zone farthest from the natural light source.

E. Power (Relay) Packs and Supplies

1. Power Packs shall accept 120 or 277 VAC (or optionally 347 VAC), be plenum rated, and provide Class 2 power to the system.
2. All devices shall have two RJ-45 ports.
3. Every Power Pack parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
4. Power Pack shall securely mount to junction location through a threaded ½ inch chase nipple. Plastic clips into junction box shall not be accepted. All Class 1 wiring shall pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads. Note: UL Listing under Energy Management or Industrial Control Equipment automatically meets this requirement, whereas Appliance Control Listing does not meet this safety requirement.
5. When required by local code, Power Pack must install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All Class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.

6. Power Pack shall incorporate a Class 1 relay and contribute low voltage power to the rest of the system. Slave Packs shall incorporate the relay, but shall not be required to contribute system power. Power Supplies shall provide system power only, but are not required to switch line voltage circuit. Auxiliary Relay Packs shall switch low voltage circuits only.
7. Class 1 Relays used in Power (Slave) Packs shall provide 16 Amp switching of all load types, and be rated for 400,000 cycles.
8. Power packs shall be supplied with supplemental relays where HVAC interface is required.

F. Wall Switches & Dimmers

1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2. Devices shall provide user control via touch sensitive buttons that utilize no mechanical parts.
3. Devices shall be available with zero or one integrated Class 1 switching relay.
4. Communication and Class 2 low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
5. All sensors shall have two RJ-45 ports.
6. All devices shall provide toggle switch control. Dimming control and low temperature/high humidity operation are available options.
7. Devices shall be available in four colors (Ivory, White, Almond, Gray).
8. Devices with dimming control outputs can control 0 to 10 VDC dimmable drivers by sinking up to 20 mA of Class 2 current (typically 40 or more drivers).

G. Scene Controller

1. Device shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2. Device shall provide user control via touch sensitive buttons which have no mechanical parts.
3. Communication and Class 2 low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
4. All sensors shall have two RJ-45 ports.
5. Device shall have four touch sensitive buttons for selecting programmable lighting control profiles.
6. Device shall have four LEDs indicating current selection.

H. Communication Bridges

1 Device shall surface mount to a standard 4” x 4” square junction box.
2 Device shall have either 4 or 8 RJ-45 ports.
3 Device shall be capable of aggregating communication with connected daisy-chains of system devices.
4 Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply or delivered via a CAT-5 cabled connection.
5 Device shall be capable of communicating with other system devices using the ZigBee® wireless mesh networking standard.
6 Provide (4) additional bridges for future use.

I. Network Control Gateway

1 Device shall recess into a two-gang switch box.
2 Device shall provide user control via touch sensitive buttons which have no mechanical parts.
3 Device shall have a backlit LCD panel.
4 Device shall contain a real-time clock capable of synchronization with a network time authority.

5 Device shall be capable of communicating on an Ethernet network with a fixed or DHCP assigned IP address.
6 Device shall have three RJ-45 ports for connection to system devices and one RJ-45 port for connection to Ethernet network.
7 Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly-wired power supply or delivered via a CAT-5 cabled connection.

3.8 HARDWARE

A. LIGHT ENERGY MANAGER (LEM)

1. The LEM power supply shall be protected from power line surges per IEEE specification 62.41 for category a locations.
2. Each LEM shall support 8 independent configurations. It shall be possible for the user to program unique schedules and settings for each configuration. Each room may then be assigned to one of the configurations via the local wall station so that no knowledge of installation details (such as data wiring or power circuiting) shall be required for configuration. Advanced settings that may be configured via the LEM include:

   a. Occupancy Sensor behavior:

      1) Manual ON/Automatic OFF (default)
      2) Automatic ON/Automatic OFF
      3) Set lights to minimum when no motion is detected during scheduled ON times and to OFF when no motion is detected during scheduled of times.

   b. Wall station, photocell and occupancy sensors may be disabled by schedule
   c. Time schedules may be temporarily suspended for 1, 2, 4, 8, 12, or 24 hours to accommodate special events. At the end of this period, the system shall automatically revert to the normal schedules.

3. Occupied Period Scheduling: The system shall support both fully adaptive and manually programmed time-of-day schedules.

   a. Adaptive Scheduling: the system shall have the ability to automatically adapt the time clock schedule to the actual use of each room in the space without requiring the use of occupancy sensors or manual programming of the system beyond setting the project location.
   b. Manual Scheduling: the system shall also have the ability to have schedules manually programmed if required.

      1) The system shall support 8 independent schedules which may be programmed with the following events:

         a) ON
         b) OFF
         c) Cancel Switch Timeouts

      2) Scheduled events may be programmed to occur at a fixed time of the day or at the calculated Sunrise and Sunset times. It shall also be possible to schedule an event to occur up to 120 minutes before or after Sunrise or Sunset.
      3) Schedule events may be programmed to occur on individual or multiple days of the week facilitating a rotating Monday through Sunday weekly operating scenario.
      4) Schedule events may also be assigned to occur on a holiday. Holiday events shall automatically supersede assigned weekday schedules based on a list of holiday dates. Holiday dates may be programmed to reoccur automatically each year or only on a specific year.

   c. For both schedule types, of events shall be preceded by a warning sequence to warn the occupants of the impending of event. To maximize lamp life for loads

with drivers, this warning sequence shall not turn of and re-strike the lamps, but rather dim them to minimum, then maximum, then return them to their previous level. The warning sequence shall turn non-dim loads of and then back ON again. It shall be possible to disable this warning sequence on a room by room basis if necessary to accommodate HID loads.

4. Load Shed Schedule: The LEM shall support a dedicated load shed schedule which allows the owner to shed from 1% to 85% of the lighting load on a time-of-day basis. When in effect, the load shed event shall proportionally subtract the programmed amount from the current occupant-set or schedule-set level. All other occupant and system controls shall remain operational during this time, but the actual level of the lights shall be the set level minus the load shed percentage.
5. Program Backup: The user program shall be stored in non volatile memory. The program memory shall be integrated into the device, be maintenance free, and not require batteries for retention of memory.
6. Pre-set load level "High Trim" for all classrooms. The commissioning agent or factory representative shall be able to adjust the driver factor or maximum percentage of input power that the connected smart junction box drivers will consume so that the lighting power density for a given space can be easily tailored by authorized personnel without changing the lighting fixture layout. The means to set this maximum input power percentage shall be located behind a hinged locking door and it shall not be possible for the occupants to adjust this setting.
7. Network Connections: The LEM shall be equipped with the following connections:
    a. lighting control network
    b. BACnet/IP over 10/100base-T Ethernet with two ports and integral switch.
    c. EIA RS-485 port for connection to up to 16 SYRS series digital remote stations
    d. EIA RS-232 port
    e. Onboard modem for remote monitoring and programming of the system.
8. Low Voltage Inputs: The LEM shall be equipped with the following inputs:
    a. Dry contact: programmable to accept maintained, momentary, normally-open, or normally-closed contacts.
    b. Analog: 3 wire, 0-10V analog input with 24VDC supply compatible with Synergy LSA APS series photocells.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION AND DOCUMENTATION

A. Installation – The control system shall be installed and connected as shown on the plans and as directed by the manufacturer. The contractor shall complete all electrical connections to all control circuits, network terminations, RS-232 connections, sensors and override wiring.

B. Telephone Lines – The contractor shall arrange for all required telephone lines and touch-tone telephone override wiring as shown on the plans. All phone connections shall be terminated into a RJ-11 modular telephone connector. If multiple lines are required, they shall be installed on a rotating line such that when one line is busy the call will automatically switch to the next line.

C. Documentation – Contractor shall provide accurate "as built" drawings to the owner indicating correct and latest program information.

D. Operation and Service Manuals – Provide operation and service manuals for all components as indicated in the General Provisions.

E. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
    1. Timed sensors shall be set to the midpoint of their range of the time limit setting.

2. Daylight sensors be set to 100% of the required lighting level for the room they are in, typical set marks classroom: 50fc, corridors: 30fc, multipurpose rooms: 50fc. Dimmable drivers shall be set at reductions according to manufacturer or 20% per setting.

4.2 PRODUCT SUPPORT AND SERVICE

A. System Start-up

1. Provide a factory authorized technician to verify the installation, test the system, and train the owner on proper operation and maintenance of the system. Before requesting start-up services, the installing contractor shall verify that:

   a. The control system has been fully installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

   b. Phone lines have been checked for dial tone.

   c. Low voltage wiring for overrides and sensors is completed.

   d. Any schedules or settings specified by the owner have been fully documented and supplied to the factory at time start-up is scheduled.

2. Proper notification of the impending start-up has been provided to the owner's representative.

4.3 FACTORY SUPPORT

A. Factory telephone support shall be available at no cost to the owner for the life of the system. Factory Assistance shall consist of assistance in solving programming or other application issues pertaining to the control equipment. The Factory shall provide a toll-free number for technical support.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 09 43

NETWORK LIGHTING CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a networked lighting control system comprised of the following components:
   1. System Software Interfaces
      a. Management Interface
      b. Historical Database and Analytics Interface
      c. Visualization Interface
      d. Personal Control Applications
   2. System Backbone and Integration Equipment
      a. System Controller
   3. Wired Networked Devices
      a. Wall Stations
      b. Graphic Wall Stations
      c. Digital Key Switches
      d. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices
      e. Occupancy and Photocell Sensors
      f. Wall Switch Sensors
      g. Embedded Sensors
      h. Power Packs and Secondary Packs
      i. Networked Luminaires
      j. Relay and Dimming Panel
      k. Communication Bridge

B. The networked lighting control system shall meet all of the characteristics and performance requirements specified herein.

C. The contractor shall provide, install and verify proper operation of all equipment necessary for proper operation of the system as specified herein and as shown on applicable drawings.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. BMS: Building management systems

B. LCS: The term ‘Lighting Control System is defined as the interconnected set of hardware and software components that collectively serve to regulate the illumination levels of an interior and/or exterior space. The components that comprise the LCS are sub categorized into three groups: LCS Input Devices, LCS End Devices and LCS Control devices.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product data:
   1. Product Specification Sheets indicating general device descriptions, dimensions, electrical specifications, wiring details, and nomenclature.

B. Complete list of Bill of Materials necessary to install the networked lighting control system.

C. Shop Drawings: Submittal shall be provided including the following items.
   1. Riser Diagrams showing device wiring connections of system backbone and typical per room/area type.
   2. Information Technology (IT) connection information pertaining to interconnection with facility IT networking equipment and third-party systems.
   3. Other Diagrams and Operational Descriptions – as needed to indicate system operation or interaction with other system(s).
   4. Contractor Startup/Commissioning Worksheet (must be completed prior to factory start-up).
   5. Service Specification Sheets indicating general service descriptions, including startup, training, post-startup support, and service contract terms.
   6. Hardware and Software Operation Manuals.

D. Provide all manufacturer warranty dates, registration documents and information.

1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Submit evidence that lighting controls are compatible with connected monitoring and control devices and systems specified in other Sections.
   1. Show interconnecting signal and control wiring, and interface devices that prove compatibility of inputs and outputs.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.
   1. Describe system features, operation and architecture in electronic and printed documentation. Include user account information, network access information and technical support contact information.

B. Software Operational Documentation:
   1. Software operating manuals.
   2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
   3. Device address list.
   4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer shall provide a minimum five-year warranty on all hardware devices supplied and installed. Warranty coverage shall begin on the date of shipment.

B. The hardware warranty shall cover repair or replacement any defective products within the warranty period.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

B. Include installation, programming, and maintenance instructions.

C. Do not install equipment until following conditions can be maintained in spaces to receive equipment:
   1. Ambient temperature:

a. Lighting Control System: 0 degrees to 40 degrees C (32 degrees to 104 degrees F).
b. System server/computer: 10 degrees to 35 degrees C (50 degrees to 90 degrees F)
c. Relative humidity: Maximum 90 percent, non-condensing.

D. All components of the LCS must be protected from dust during installation.

E. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

F. Do not install sensors until building is operating at ambient temperature and humidity ranges that are consistent with those intended for buildings ultimate use.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Qualifications
1. System electrical components shall be listed or recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (e.g., UL, ETL, or CSA) and shall be labeled with required markings as applicable.
2. System shall be listed as qualified under DesignLights Consortium Networked Lighting Control System Specification V2.0.
3. System luminaires and controls are certified by manufacturer to have been designed, manufactured and tested for interoperability.
4. All components shall be subjected to 100% end of line testing prior to shipment to the project site to ensure proper device operation.
5. All components and the manufacturing facility where product was manufactured must be RoHS compliant.

B. Installation and Startup Qualifications
1. System startup shall be performed by qualified personnel approved or certified by the manufacturer.

C. Service and Support Requirements
1. Phone Support: Toll free technical support shall be available.
2. Remote Support: Remote support capability shall be provided.
3. Onsite Support: Onsite support that is billable at whole day rates.
4. Service Contract: Service Contract that packages phone, remote, and onsite support calls for the project. Response times for each type of support call shall be indicated in the terms of the service contract included in the bid package.

D. The manufacturer shall make available to the owner new parts, upgrades, and/or replacements available for a minimum of 5 years following installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers Any alternate product or system that has not received prior approval from the owner’s representative at least 10 days prior to submission of a proposal package shall be rejected. Provide product by one of the following:
1. Basis of Design System: Hubbell NX Distributed Intelligence
2. Acuity Controls nLight
3. Wattstopper DLM

2.2 SYSTEM COMPLIANCE

A. System components shall comply with UL 916 and UL 924 standards where applicable.

B. System components shall comply with CFR Title 47, Part 15 standards where applicable.

C. All equipment shall be installed and connected in compliance with NFPA 70.

2.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. System Architecture
1. System shall have an architecture that is based upon three main concepts: (1) networkable intelligent lighting control devices, (2) standalone lighting control zones using distributed intelligence, (3) optional system backbone for remote, time based and global operation between control zones.
2. Intelligent lighting control devices shall have individually addressable network communication capability and consist of one or more basic lighting control components: occupancy sensor, photocell sensor, relay, dimming output, contact closure input, analog 0-10V input, and manual wall station capable of indicating switching, dimming, and/or scene control. Combining one or more of these components into a single device enclosure shall be permissible so as to minimize overall device count of system.
3. System must be capable of interfacing directly with networked luminaires such that either low voltage network cabling or wireless RF communication is used to interconnect networked luminaires with control components such as sensors, switches and system backbone.
4. Lighting control zones consisting of one or more networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices and shall be capable of providing automatic control from sensors (occupancy and/or photocell) and manual control from local wall stations without requiring connection to a higher-level system backbone; this capability is referred to as “distributed intelligence.”
    a. Lighting control zones (wired and wireless) of at least 128 devices per zone shall be supported.
5. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices shall support individual (unique) configuration of device settings and properties, with such configuration residing within the networked luminaires and intelligent control devices.
6. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices shall have distributed intelligence programming stored in non-volatile memory, such that following any loss of power the lighting control zones shall operate according to their defined default settings and sequence of operations.
7. Lighting control zones shall be capable of being networked with a higher-level system backbone to provide time based control, remote control from inputs and/or systems external to the control zone, and remote configuration and monitoring through a software interface.
8. The system may include one or more system controllers that provide time-based control and global system control across multiple control zones and backbone network segments. The system controller also provides a means of connecting the lighting control system to a system software interface and building management systems via BACnet/IP or BACnet MS/TP protocol.
9. The system may include “communication bridge” devices that route communication from lighting control zones (wired or wireless) to and from the system controller, for purposes of decreasing system wiring requirements.
10. All system devices shall support remote firmware update, such that physical access to each device is not necessary, for purposes of upgrading functionality at a later date.

B. Wired Networked Control Zone Characteristics
1. Connections to devices within a wired networked lighting control zone and to backbone components shall be with a single type of low voltage network cable, which shall be compliant with CAT5e specifications or higher. To prevent wiring errors and provide cost savings, the use of mixed types of low voltage network cables shall not be permitted.

2. Devices in an area shall be connected via a “daisy-chain” topology; requiring all individual networked devices to be connected back to a central component in a “hub-and-spoke” topology shall not be permitted, so as to reduce the total amount of network cable required for each control zone.
3. System shall provide the option of having pre-terminated plenum rated low voltage network cabling supplied with hardware so as to reduce the opportunity for improper wiring and communication errors during system installation.
4. Following proper installation and provision of power, all networked devices connected together with low voltage network cable shall automatically form a functional lighting control zone without requiring any type of programming, regardless of the programming mechanism (e.g., software application, handheld remote, pushbutton). The “out of box” default sequence of operation is intended to provide typical sequence of operation so as to minimize the system startup and programming requirements and to also have functional lighting control operation prior to system startup and programming.
5. Once software is installed, system shall be able to automatically discover all connected devices without requiring any provisioning of system or zone addresses.
6. All networked devices shall have the ability to detect improper communication wiring and blink its LED in a specific cadence as to alert installation/startup personnel.
7. Networked control devices intended for control of egress and/or emergency light sources shall not require the use of additional, externally mounted UL924 shunting and/or 0-10V disconnect devices, so as to provide a compliant sequence of operation while reducing the overall installation and wiring costs of the system. The following types of wired networked control devices shall be provided for egress and/or emergency light fixtures:
    a. Low-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall automatically provide 100% light level upon detection of loss of power sensed via the low voltage network cable connection.
    b. UL924 Listed Line-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall be listed as emergency relays under the UL924 standard, and shall automatically close the load control relay and provide 100% light output upon detection of loss of power sensed via line voltage connection to normal power.

C. System Integration Capabilities
1. The system shall interface with third party building management systems (BMS) to support two-way communication using the industry standard BACnet/IP or BACnet MS/TP protocols. The following system integration capabilities shall be available via BACnet/IP and BACnet MS/TP protocols:
    a. The system shall support control of individual devices, including, but not limited to, control of relay and dimming output.
    b. The system shall support reading of individual device status information. The available status will depend on the individual device type and capabilities, which may include but not be limited to, relay state, dimming output, power measurement, occupancy sensor status, and photocell sensor states or readings. All system devices shall be available for polling for devices status.
2. The system shall support activation of Profiles (local or global) and Preset Scenes from third party systems by receiving dry contact closure output signals or digital commands via RS-232/RS-485.
3. The system shall support activation of demand response levels from Demand Response Automation Servers (DRAS) via the OpenADR 2.0a protocol.

D. Supported Sequence of Operations
1. Characteristics and performance requirements herein shall be supported by the networked lighting control system.
2. Control Zones

a. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices installed in an area (also referred to as a group of devices) shall be capable of transmitting and tracking occupancy sensor, photocell sensor, and manual switch information within at least 48 unique control zones to support different and reconfigurable sequences of operation within the area. These shall also be referred to as local control zones.
b. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices located in different areas shall be able to transmit and track information within at least 128 system-wide control zones to support required sequences of operation that may span across multiple areas. Occupancy and photocell commands shall be available across a single controller, and switch commands shall be available across single or multiple controllers. These shall also be referred to as global control zones.

3. Wall station Capabilities
   a. Wall stations shall be provided to support the following capabilities:
      1) On/Off of a local control zone and global control zone simultaneously, as required.
      2) Continuous dimming control of light level of a local control zone and global control zone simultaneously, as required.
      3) Preset Scenes that can activate a specific combination of light levels across multiple local and global channels, as required.
      4) Profile Scenes that can modify the sequence of operation for the devices in the area (group) in response to a button press. This capability is defined as supporting “Local Profiles” and is used to dynamically optimize the occupant experience and lighting energy usage. Wall stations shall be able to manually start and stop Local Profiles, or the local profile shall be capable of ending after a specific duration of time between 5 minutes and 12 hours. Parameters that shall be configurable and assigned to a Local Profile shall include, but not be limited to, fixture light level, occupancy time delay, response to occupancy sensors (including enabling/disabling response), response to daylight sensors (including enabling/disabling response), and enabling/disabling of wall stations.
   b. 3-way / multi-way control: multiple wall stations shall be capable of controlling the same local and global control zones, so as to support “multi-way” switching, dimming, preset scene, and profile scene control.
4. Occupancy Sensing Capabilities
   a. Local and global control: Occupancy sensors shall be configurable to control a local and global zone simultaneously, as required.
   b. Multi-sensor control: multiple occupancy sensors shall be capable of controlling the same local and global control zones. This capability combines occupancy sensing coverage from multiple sensors without consuming multiple control zones.
   c. System shall support the following types of occupancy sensing sequence of operations:
      1) On/Off Occupancy Sensing
      2) Partial-On Occupancy Sensing
      3) Partial-Off Occupancy Sensing
      4) Vacancy Sensing (Manual-On / Automatic-Off)
   d. On/Off, Partial-On, and Partial-Off Occupancy Sensing modes shall function according to the following sequence of operation:
      1) Occupancy sensors shall automatically turn lights on to a designated level when occupancy is detected. To support fine tuning of Partial-On sequences the designated occupied light level shall support at least 100 dimming levels.
      2) Occupancy sensors shall automatically turn lights off or to a dimmed state (Partial-Off) when vacancy occurs or if sufficient daylight is detected. To support fine tuning of Partial-Off sequences the designated unoccupied dim

level shall support at least 100 dimming levels. To provide additional energy savings and an enhanced occupant experience, the system shall also be capable of dimming the lights when vacant and then turning the lights off completely after an additional amount of time.

3) Photocell readings, if enabled in the Occupancy Sensing control zone, shall be capable of automatically adjusting the light level during occupied or unoccupied conditions as necessary to further reduce energy usage.
4) At any time, the use of a wall station shall change the dimming level or turn lights off as selected by the occupant. The lights shall optionally remain in this manually-specified light level until the zone becomes vacant; upon vacancy the normal sequence of operation, as defined above, shall proceed.

e. Vacancy Sensing mode (also referred to as Manual-On / Automatic-Off) shall function according to the following sequence of operation:
1) The use of a wall station is required turn lights on. The system shall be capable of programming the zone to turn on to either to a designated light level or the previous user light level. Initially occupying the space without using a wall station shall not result in lights turning on.
2) Occupancy sensors shall automatically turn lights off or to a dimmed state (Partial-Off) when vacancy occurs or if sufficient daylight is detected. To support fine tuning of Partial-Off sequences the designated unoccupied dim level shall support at least 100 dimming levels. To provide additional energy savings and an enhanced occupant experience, the system shall also be capable of dimming the lights when vacant and then turning the lights off completely after an additional amount of time.
3) To minimize occupant impact in case the area or zone is still physically occupied following dimming or shutoff of the lights due to detection of vacancy, the system shall support an "automatic grace period" immediately following detection of vacancy, during which time any detected occupancy shall result in the lights reverting to the previous level. After the grace period has expired, the use of a wall station is required to turn lights on.
4) Photocell readings, if enabled in the Occupancy Sensing control zone, shall be capable of automatically adjusting the light level during occupied or unoccupied conditions as necessary to further reduce energy usage.
5) At any time, the use of a wall station shall change the dimming level or turn lights off as selected by the occupant. The lights shall optionally remain in this manually-specified light level until the zone becomes vacant; upon vacancy the normal sequence of operation, as defined above, shall proceed.

f. To accommodate different types of environments, occupancy time delays before dimming or shutting off lights shall be specifiable for control zones between 15 seconds to 2 hours.

5. Schedule and Global Profile Capabilities
a. The system shall be capable of automatically modifying the sequence of operation for selected devices in response to any of the following: a time-of-day schedule, contact closure input state, manually triggered wall station input, RS-232/RS-485 command, and BACnet input command. This capability is defined as supporting "Global Profiles" and is used to dynamically optimize the occupant experience and lighting energy usage.
b. Global profiles may be scheduled with the following capabilities:
1) Global Profiles shall be stored within and executed from the system controller (via internal timeclock) such that a dedicated software host or server is not required to be online to support automatic scheduling and/or operation of Global Profiles.

2) Global Profile time of day schedules shall be capable of being given the following recurrence settings: daily, specific days of week, every "n" number of days, weekly, monthly, and yearly. Lighting control profile schedules shall support definition of start date, end date, end after "n" recurrences, or never ending. Daylight savings time adjustments shall be capable of being performed automatically, if desired.
3) Global Profile Holiday Schedules should follow recurrent settings for specific US holiday dates regardless if they always occur on a specific date or are determined by the day/week of the month.
4) Global Profiles shall be capable of being scheduled to run according to timed offsets relative to sunrise or sunset. Sunrise/sunset times shall be automatically derived from location information using an astronomical clock.
5) System shall support blink warning and timed extension capabilities. At the end of a scheduled period, the system shall be capable of providing a visible "blink warning" 5 minutes prior to the end of the schedule. Wall stations may be programmed to provide timed overrides that turn the lights on for an additional period of time. Timed override duration shall be programmable for each individual device, zone of devices, or customized group of devices, ranging from 5 minutes to 12 hours.
6) Software management interface shall be capable of displaying a graphic calendar view of profile schedules for each control zone.

c. System Global Profiles shall have the following additional capabilities:
1) Global Profiles shall be capable of being manually activated directly from the system controller, specially programmed input devices, scene capable wall stations, and the software management interface.
2) Global Profiles shall be selectable to apply to a single device, zone of devices, or customized group of devices.
3) Parameters that shall be configurable and assigned to a Global Profile shall include, but not be limited to, fixture light level, occupancy time delay, response to occupancy sensors (including enabling/disabling response), response to daylight sensors (including enabling/disabling response), and enabling/disabling of wall stations.

d. A backup of Local and Global Profiles shall be stored on the software's host server such that the Profile backup can be applied to a replacement system controller or wall station.

6. System shall support automated demand response capabilities with automatic reduction of light level to at least three levels of demand response.

2.4 SYSTEM SOFTWARE INTERFACES

A. Management Interface
1. System shall provide a web-based management interface that provides remote system control, live status monitoring, and configuration capabilities of lighting control settings and schedules.
2. Management interface must be compatible with industry-standard web browser clients, including, but not limited to, Microsoft Internet Explorer®, Apple Safari®, Google Chrome®, Mozilla Firefox®.
3. Management interface shall require all users to login with a User Name and Password, and shall support creation of at least 100 unique user accounts.
4. Management interface shall support at least three permission levels for users: read-only, read & change settings, and full administrative system access.
5. Management interface shall be capable of restricting access for user accounts to specific devices within the system.

6. All system devices shall be capable of being given user-defined names.
7. The following device identification information shall be displayed in the Management interface: model number, model description, serial number, manufacturing date code, custom label(s), and parent network device.
8. Management interface shall be able to read the live status of a networked luminaire or intelligent control device and shall be capable of displaying luminaire on/off status, dim level, power measurement, device temperature, PIR occupancy sensor status, microphonic occupancy sensor status, remaining occupancy time delay, photocell reading, and active Scenes or Profiles.
9. Management interface shall be able to read the current active settings of a networked luminaire or intelligent control device and shall be capable of displaying dimming trim levels, occupancy sensor and photocell enable/disable, occupancy sensor time delay and light level settings, occupancy sensor response (normal or vacancy), and photocell setpoints and transition time delays.
10. Management interface shall be able to change the current active settings and default settings for an individual networked luminaire or intelligent control device.
11. Management interface shall be capable of applying settings changes for a zone of devices or a group of selected devices using a single "save" action that does not require the user to save settings changes for each individual device.
12. A printable network inventory report shall be available via the management interface.
13. A printable report detailing all system profiles shall be available via the management interface.
14. All sensitive information stored by the software shall be encrypted.
15. All system software updates must be available for automatic download and installation via the internet.

B. Historical Database and Analytics Interface
1. System shall provide a historical database that stores device operational history and calculates energy usage for all networked luminaires and intelligent control devices.
2. System shall be capable of reporting lighting system events and performance data back to the historical database for display and analysis.
3. Historical database shall be capable of recording historical data for up to 20,000 networked devices for a period of at least 1 calendar year.
4. An "Energy Scorecard" shall be displayed that shows calculated energy savings in dollars, kWh, or CO2.
5. Software shall calculate the allocation of energy savings to different control measures (occupancy sensors, photocells, manual switching, etc.).
6. Energy savings data shall be calculated for the system as a whole or for individual zones.
7. A time scaled graph showing all relay transitions shall be presented.
8. A time scaled graph showing a zones occupancy time delay shall be presented
9. A time scaled graph showing the total light level shall be presented.
10. User shall be able to customize the baseline run-time hours for a space.
11. User shall be able to customize up to four time-of-day billing rates and schedules.
12. Historical data shall be exportable from the Historical Database via a "CSV" type of file format.

C. Visualization and Programming Interfaces
1. System shall provide a web-based visualization interface that displays graphical floorplan.
2. Graphical floorplan shall offer the following types of system visualization:
    a. Full Device Option - A master graphic of the entire building, by floor, showing each control device installed in the project with zones outlined. This shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
        1) Controls embedded light fixtures

2) Controls devices not embedded in light fixtures
3) Daylight Sensors
4) Occupancy Sensors
5) Wall Switches and Dimmers
6) Scene Controllers
7) Networked Relays
8) Bridges
9) System Controllers
10) Panels
11) Zone outlines

b. Zone Only Option - A master graphic of the entire building, by floor, showing only control zones outlined.
c. Allow for pan and zoom commands so smaller areas can be displayed on a larger scale simply by panning and zooming each floor's master graphic.
d. A mouse click on any control device shall display the following information (as applicable):
1) The device catalog number.
2) The device name and custom label.
3) Device diagnostic information.
4) Information about the device status or current configuration is available with an additional mouse click.

D. Personal Control Applications
1. Software interface shall support personal control software applications that provide user-specific control of individual luminaires/control devices, control zones, global scene presets, and scene selector virtual button presses.
2. The system administrator shall be capable of defining personal control permissions for each user account.
3. Software interface shall provide a Microsoft Windows® operating system taskbar application for personal lighting control.
4. Software interface shall provide an Apple iOS ® operating system application (supported by mobile phones and mobile tablet devices) for personal lighting control.

2.5 SYSTEM BACKBONE AND SYSTEM INTEGRATION EQUIPMENT

A. System Controller
1. System Controller shall be multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, and power supplies.
2. System Controller shall have 32-bit microprocessor operating at a minimum of 1 GHz.
3. System Controller shall have minimum of 512MB memory, with a minimum of 4GB non-volatile flash, to support its own operating system and databases.
4. System Controller shall perform the following functions:
a. Time-based control of downstream wired and wireless network devices.
b. Facilitation of global network switch communication between different system controllers.
c. Linking into an Ethernet network.
d. Integration with Building Management Systems (BMS) and Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) equipment.
e. Connection to various software interfaces, including management interface, historical database and analytics interface, visualization interface, and personal control applications.

5. System Controller shall have an integral web server to support configuration, diagnostics and hosting of software interfaces.
6. Device shall have option for a graphical touch screen to support configuration and diagnostics.
7. Device shall have three RJ-45 networked lighting control ports for connection to any of the following:
    a. The graphical touch screen
    b. Wired communication bridges
    c. Direct connection to networked wired luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices (up to 128 total devices per port)
8. Device shall be capable of communicating with wireless network bridges and software interfaces via LAN connection.
9. Device shall automatically detect all networked devices connected to it, including those connected to wired and wireless communication bridges.
10. Device shall have a standard and astronomical internal time clock.
11. Device shall have 2 switched RJ-45 10/100 BaseT Ethernet ports for local area network (LAN) connection.
    a. Ethernet connection shall support daisy chain wiring to other lighting control system LAN devices, such as other system controllers and wireless networked communication bridges.
    b. Ethernet connection shall support IPv4 and shall be capable of using a dedicated static or DHCP assigned IP address.
12. Device shall have 2 x USB 2.0 Expansion ports for 802.11 Wi-Fi Adapter enabling wireless connectivity including:
    a. Hot Spot
    b. Access Point
    c. Client
13. Each System Controller shall be capable of managing and operating at least 750 networked devices (wired or wireless).
    a. Multiple System Controllers may be networked together via LAN connection to scale the system up to 20,000 networked devices.
14. System Controller shall support BACnet/IP and BACnet MS/TP protocols to directly interface with BMS and HVAC equipment without the need for additional protocol translation gateways.
    a. BACnet MS/TP shall support 9600 to 115200 baud rate.
    b. System Controller shall be BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL listed) using Device Profile BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) with outlined enhanced features.
15. System controller shall contain a “FIPS 140-2 Level 1 Inside” cryptographic module.
16. System controller shall be available within a NEMA 1 enclosure with Class 1 and Class 2 separation
    a. Enclosure shall support power input power of 120-277VAC, or optional 347VAC

2.6 WIRED NETWORKED DEVICES

A. Wired Networked Wall Switches, Dimmers, Scene Controllers
1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
3. All switches shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
4. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile and LED user feedback.
5. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall be made available with custom button labeling.
6. Wall switches & dimmers shall support the following device options:

a. Number of control zones: 1, 2 or 4
b. Control Types Supported:
    1) On/Off
    2) On/Off/Dimming
    3) On/Off/Dimming/Correlated Color Temperature Control for specific luminaire types
c. Colors: Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray, Black, Red as required by architect

7. Scene controllers shall support the following device options:
    a. Number of scenes: 1, 2 or 4
    b. Control Types Supported:
        1) On/Off
        2) On/Off/Dimming
        3) Preset Level Scene Type
        4) On/Off/Dimming/Preset Level for Correlated Color Temperature
        5) Reprogramming of other devices within daisy-chained zone so as to implement user selected lighting scene. This shall support manual start/stop from the scene controller, or optionally programmed to automatically end after a user selectable duration between 5 minutes and 12 hours.
        6) Selecting a lighting profile to be run by the system's upstream controller so as to implement a selected lighting profile across multiple zones. This shall support manual start/stop from the scene controller, or optionally programmed to automatically end after a user selectable duration between 5 minutes and 12 hours.
    c. Colors: Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray, Black, Red as required by architect

B. Wired Networked Graphic Wall Stations
1. Device shall surface mount to single-gang switch box.
2. Device shall have a 3.5" full color touch screen.
3. Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply.
4. Device shall have a micro-USB style connector for local computer connectivity.
5. Communication shall be over standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
6. Device shall enable user supplied screen saver image to be uploaded within one of the following formats: jpg, png, gif, bmp, tif.
7. Device shall enable configuration of all switches, dimmers, and lighting preset scenes via password protected setup screens.
8. Graphic wall stations shall support the following device options:
    a. Number of control zones: Up to 16
    b. Number of scenes: Up to 16
    c. Profile type scene duration: User configurable from 5 minutes to 12 hours
    d. Colors: Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray, Black as required by architect

C. Wired Networked Auxiliary Input / Output (I/O) Devices
1. Devices shall be plenum rated and be inline wired, screw mountable, or have an extended chase nipple for mounting to a ½" knockout.
2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
3. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices shall be specified as an input or output device with the following options:
    a. Contact closure or Pull High input
        1) Input shall be programmable to support maintained or momentary inputs that can activate local or global scenes and profiles, activate lights at a preconfigured level, ramp light level up or down, or toggle lights on/off.

b. 0-10V analog input
    1) Input shall be programmable to function as a daylight sensor.
c. RS-232/RS-485 digital input
    1) Input supports activation of up to 4 local or global scenes and profiles, and on/off/dimming control of up to 16 local control zones.
d. 0-10V dimming control output, capable of sinking up to 20mA of current
    1) Output shall be programmable to support all standard sequence of operations supported by system.

D. Wired Networked Occupancy and Photosensors
1. Occupancy sensors shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.
2. Sensors shall utilize passive infrared (PIR) technology, which detects occupant motion, to initially turn lights on from an off state, thus preventing false on conditions. Ultrasonic or Microwave based sensing technologies shall not be accepted.
3. For applications where a second method of sensing is necessary to adequately detect maintained occupancy (such as in rooms with obstructions), a sensor with an additional "dual" technology shall be used.
4. Dual technology sensors shall have one of its two technologies not require motion to detect occupancy. Acceptable dual technology includes PIR/Microphonics (also known as Passive Dual Technology or PDT) which both looks for occupant motion and listens for sounds indicating occupants. Sensors where both technologies detect motion (PIR/Ultrasonic) shall not be acceptable.
5. All sensing technologies shall be acoustically passive, meaning they do not transmit sounds waves of any frequency (for example in the Ultrasonic range), as these technologies have the potential for interference with other electronic devices within the space (such as electronic white board readers). Acceptable detection technologies include Passive Infrared (PIR), and/or Microphonics technology. Ultrasonic or Microwave based sensing technologies shall not be accepted.
6. System shall have ceiling, fixture, recessed & corner mounted sensors available, with multiple lens options available customized for specific applications.
7. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
8. All sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
9. Sensor programming parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
10. Ceiling mount occupancy sensors shall be available with zero or one integrated dry contact switching relays, capable of switching 1 amp at 24 VAC/VDC (resistive only).
11. Sensors shall be available with one or two occupancy "poles", each of which provides a programmable time delay.
12. Sensors shall have optional features for photosensor/daylight override, automatic dimming control, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
13. Photosensor shall provide for an on/off set-point, and a dead band to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Delay shall be incorporated into the photocell to prevent rapid response to passing clouds.
14. Photosensor and dimming sensor's set-point and dead band shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor's microprocessor by initiating an "Automatic Set-point Programming" procedure. Min and max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
15. Dead band setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., furniture layouts, lamp depreciation, or lamp outages).

16. A dual zone option shall be available for On/Off Photocell, Automatic Dimming Control Photocell, or Combination units. The secondary daylight zone shall be capable of being controlled as an "offset" from the primary zone.

E. Wired Networked Wall Switch Sensors
   1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
   2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
   3. All wall switch sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
   4. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile user feedback.
   5. Wall switches sensors shall support the following device options:
      a. User Input Control Types Supported: On/Off or On/Off/Dimming
      b. Occupancy Sensing Technology: PIR only or Dual Tech acoustic
      c. Daylight Sensing Option: Inhibit Photosensor
      d. Colors: Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray as required by architect

F. Wired Networked Power Packs and Secondary Packs
   1. Power Packs shall incorporate one optional Class 1 relay, optional 0-10 VDC dimming output, and contribute low voltage Class 2 power to the rest of the system.
   2. Power Packs shall accept 120 or 277 VAC (or optionally 347 VAC) and carry a plenum rating.
   3. Secondary Packs shall incorporate the relay and 0-10 VDC or line voltage dimming output, but shall not be required to contribute system power.
   4. Power Supplies shall provide system power only, but are not required to switch line voltage circuit.
   5. Auxiliary Relay Packs shall switch low voltage circuits only, capable of switching 1 amp at 40 VAC/VDC (resistive only).
   6. Communication shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors. Secondary packs shall receive low voltage power via standard low voltage network cable.
   7. Power Pack programming parameters shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
   8. Power Pack shall securely mount through a threaded ½ inch chase nipple or be capable of being secured within a luminaire ballast/driver channel. Plastic clips into junction box shall not be accepted. All Class 1 wiring shall pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads. Note: UL Listing under Energy Management or Industrial Control Equipment automatically meets this requirement, whereas Appliance Control Listing does not meet this safety requirement.
   9. When required by local code, Power Pack must install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All Class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.
   10. Power/Secondary Packs shall be available with the following options:
   11. Power Pack capable of full 16-Amp switching of all normal power lighting load types, with optional 0-10V dimming output capable of up to 100mA of sink current.
   12. Secondary Pack with UL924 listing for switching of full 16-Amp Emergency Power circuits, with optional 0-10V dimming output capable of up to 100mA of sink current.
   13. Power and Secondary Packs capable of full 20-Amp switching of general purpose receptacle (plug-load) control.
   14. Secondary Pack capable of full 16-Amp switching of all normal power lighting load types.
   15. Secondary Pack capable of 5-Amps switching and dimming 120 VAC incandescent lighting loads or 120/277 VAC line voltage dimmable fluorescent ballasts (2-wire and 3-wire versions).

16. Secondary Pack capable of 5-Amps switching and dimming of 120/277 VAC magnetic low voltage transformers.
17. Secondary Pack capable of 4-Amps switching and dimming of 120 VAC electronic low voltage transformers.
18. Secondary Pack capable of louver/damper motor control for skylights.
19. Secondary Pack capable of providing a pulse on/pulse off signal for purposes of controlling shade systems via relay inputs.
20. Secondary Pack capable of switching 1 amp at 40 VAC/VDC (resistive only) with the intent to provide relay signal to auxiliary system (e.g. BMS).
21. Power Supply capable of providing auxiliary bus power (no switched or dimmed load).

G. Wired Networked Relay and Dimming Panel
1. Relay and dimming panel shall be available with 4, 8, 12 or 16 individual relays per panel, with an equal number of individual 0-10V dimming outputs.
2. Optional Field Configurable Relays (FCR) used shall have the following required properties:
3. Configurable in the field to operate with single-, double-, or triple-pole relay groupings.
4. Configurable in the field to operate with normally closed or normally open behavior.
5. Provides visual status of current state and manual override control of each relay.
6. Listed for the following minimum ratings:
7. 40A @ 120-480VAC Ballast
8. 16A @ 120-277VAC Electronic
9. 20A @ 120-277VAC Tungsten
10. 20A @ 48VDC Resistive
11. 2HP @ 120VAC
12. 3HP @ 240-277VAC
13. 65kA SCCR @ 480VAC
14. 0-10 dimming outputs shall support a minimum of 100mA sink current per output.
15. Relay and dimming outputs shall be individually programmable to support all standard sequence of operations as defined in this specification.
16. Panel shall be UL924 listed for control of emergency lighting circuits.
17. Panel shall power itself from an integrated 120-277 VAC or optional 347VAC supply.
18. Panel shall provide a configurable low-voltage sensor input with the following properties:
19. Configurable to support any of the following input types:
20. Indoor Photocell
21. Outdoor Photocell
22. Occupancy Sensor
23. Contact Closure
24. Low voltage sensor input shall provide +24VDC power for the sensor so that additional auxiliary power supplies are not required.
25. Sensor input supports all standard sequence of operations as defined in this specification.
26. Panel shall provide a contact closure input that acts as a panel override to activate the normally configured state of all relays (i.e., normally open or normally closed) in the panel. This input is intended to provide an interface to alarm systems, fire panels, or BMS system to override the panel.
27. Panel shall supply current limited low voltage power to other networked devices connected via low voltage network cable.
28. Panel shall be available with NEMA 1 rated enclosure with the following properties:
29. Surface-mounted or flush-mounted enclosure back box
30. Screw-fastened cover or hinged cover with keyed lock
31. Panel shall be rated from 0-50C.

H. Wired Networked Communication Bridge
1. Device shall surface mount to a standard 4” x 4” square junction box.

2. Device shall have 8 RJ-45 ports for connection to lighting control zones (up to 127 devices per port), additional network bridges, and System Controller.
3. Device shall be capable of aggregating communication from multiple lighting control zones for purposes of minimizing backbone wiring requirements back to System Controller.
4. Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply, or powered via low voltage network connections from powered lighting control devices (e.g. power packs).
5. Wired Bridge shall be capable of redistributing power from its local supply and connected lighting control zones with excess power to lighting control zones with insufficient local power. This architecture also enables loss of power to a particular area to be less impactful on network lighting control system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Installation Procedures and Verification
   1. Review all required installation and pre-startup procedures with the manufacturer's representative through pre-construction meetings.
   2. Install and connect the networked lighting control system components according to the manufacturer's installation instructions, wiring diagrams, the project submittals and plans specifications.

B. Coordination with Owner's IT Network Infrastructure
   1. Coordinate with the owner's representative to secure all required network connections to the owner's IT network infrastructure.
      a. Provide to the owner's representative all network infrastructure requirements of the networked lighting control system.
      b. Provide to the manufacturer's representative all necessary contacts pertaining to the owner's IT infrastructure, to ensure that the system is properly connected and started up.

C. Documentation and Deliverables
   1. The installing contractor shall be responsible for documenting installed location of all networked devices, including networked luminaires. This includes responsibility to provide as-built plan drawing showing device address barcodes corresponding to locations of installed equipment.
   2. The installing contractor is also responsible for the following additional documentation to the manufacturer's representative if visualization / graphical floorplan software is provided as part of bid package:
      a. As-Built floor plan drawings showing daisy-chain wired network control zones outlined, in addition to device address locations required above. All documentation shall remain legible when reproducing\scanning drawing files for electronic submission.
      b. As-Built electrical lighting drawings (reflected ceiling plan) in PDF and CAD format. Architectural floor plans shall be based on as-built conditions.
         1) CAD files shall have layers already turned on/off as desired to be shown in the graphical floorplan background images. The following CAD elements are recommended to be hidden to produce an ideal background graphical image:
            Titleblock
            Text- Inclusive of room names and numbers, fixture tags and drawings notes
            Fixture wiring and homeruns

Control devices
Hatching or poché of light fixtures or architectural elements

2) CAD files shall be of AutoCAD 2013 or earlier. Revit file overall floor plan views shall be exported to AutoCAD 2013.

3.2 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. Upon completion of installation by the installer, including completion of all required verification and documentation required by the manufacturer, the system shall be started up and programmed by an authorized representative of the manufacturer.
   1. Low voltage network cable testing shall be performed prior to system startup.

B. System start-up and programming shall include:
   1. Verifying operational communication to all system devices.
   2. Programming the network devices into functional control zones to meet the required sequence of operation.
   3. Programming and verifying all sequence of operations.
   4. Customization of owner's software interfaces and applications.

C. Initial start-up and programming is to occur on-site. Additional programming may occur on-site or as necessary.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
   1. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
   1. Test each bus controller using a portable PC.
   2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

C. Field Test Reports:
   1. Printed list of all points created from actual queries of all addressed control points to include LED drivers, manual controls, and sensors.
   2. Event log verifying the performance of all devices generating event messages to include occupancy sensors, control buttons, alarm messages, and any other change of value messages.
   3. Trend data for all daylight zones covering a period of not less than one week and demonstrating performance consistent with the submitted computer models for those spaces.

D. Lighting controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies bus controllers included and describes query results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

A. System Documentation

1. Submit software database file with desired device labels and notes completed. Changes to this file will not be made by the factory.

B. Owner Training
1. Provisions for onsite training for owner and designated attendees to be included in submittal package.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 22 00

LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:
   1. Distribution transformers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Source quality-control test reports.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate installation of wall-mounting and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Company.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; Schneider Electric.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.

B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.

C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
2. Coil Material: Aluminum.

2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.

B. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Cores: One leg per phase.

D. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.

E. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 3R.
1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.

F. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
1. Finish Color: ANSI 49 gray.

G. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: Manufacturer’s Standard

H. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.

I. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 150 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

J. Energy Efficiency for Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
1. Complying with EPAct 2005, efficiency levels.
2. Tested according to NEMA TP 2.

K. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.
1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.

L. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
3. Shield Effectiveness:
    a. Capacitance between Primary and Secondary Windings: Not to exceed 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
    b. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 120 dBA at 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minimum of minus 65 dBA at 1.5 to 100 kHz.
    c. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 52 dBA at 1.5 to 10 kHz.

M. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.

N. Sound-Level Requirements: NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

O. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Maximum sound levels, when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91, as follows:
1. 30 to 50 kVA: 45db
2. 51 to 150 kVA: 50db
3. 151 to 300 kVA: 55db
4. 301 to 500 kVA: 60db
5. 501 to 750 kVA: 62db
6. 751 to 1000 kVA: 64db

2.4 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution or buck-boost transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.

B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.

D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
1. Brace wall-mounting transformers as specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems.

B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes applicable to Project, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

B. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

C. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

B. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.

C. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report, recording output voltages and tap settings.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 24 13

SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Transient voltage suppression devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.
7. Identification.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of switchboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.
1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
10. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.

11. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

E. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
3. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

D. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Comply with NEMA PB 2.

G. Comply with NFPA 70.

H. Comply with UL 891.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.

B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NEMA PB 2.1.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

B. Environmental Limitations:
1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
   b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, usual service conditions, as follows:
1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than one of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

C. Nominal System Voltage: as indicated on the drawings.

D. Main-Bus Continuous: as indicated on the drawings.

E. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

F. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.

G. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

H. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.

I. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.

J. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

K. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

L. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.
1. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: 98 percent conductivity
2. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
3. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch-98 percent conductivity, equipped with compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.
4. Main Phase Buses and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
5. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
6. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.

M. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

2.2 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
   a. Instantaneous trip.
   b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
   c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
   d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
   a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
   b. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.

c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
h. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 100 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
3. Standard-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
a. Instantaneous trip.
b. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
5. Remote trip indication and control.
6. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.

2.3 INSTRUMENTATION

A. Instrument Transformers: IEEE C57.13, NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
1. Potential Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 120 V, 60 Hz, tapped secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
2. Current Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound type; double secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.

B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:
a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 2 percent.

e. Megavars: Plus or minus 2 percent.
f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.

2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

C. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.
1. Meters: 4-inch diameter or 6 inches square, flush or semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.
2. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.

D. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.
1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.

E. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:
1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
4. Potential indicating lamps.
5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
6. Four-dial clock register.
7. Integral demand indicator.
8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
11. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
12. Appropriate multiplier tag.

2.4 CONTROL POWER

A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.

B. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.

C. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NEMA PB 2.1.

B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 2.1.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section " Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.

D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.

G. Install overcurrent protective devices, transient voltage suppression devices, and instrumentation.
1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Division 26 Section "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
   1. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
   2. Test continuity of each circuit.

D. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
   3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
      c. Instruments and Equipment:
         1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
   4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

3.9 SHORT CIRCUIT, PROTECTION COORDINATION AND ARC-FLASH STUDY

A. Refer to specification section 26 05 73 for requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 24 16

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Transient voltage suppression panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

D. RMS: Root mean square.

E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
c. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
d. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.
e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" Include the following:
1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports including the following:
1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of panelboards and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.

2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.

B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Keys: Three spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Panelboards, Overcurrent Protective Devices, Controllers, Contactors, and Accessories:
   a. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
   b. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Protection Div.
   c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
   d. Square D.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets. NEMA PB 1, Type 1.
1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
   a. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
   b. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
   c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
   d. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.
2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
3. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
4. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
5. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.
6. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
7. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted in metal frame, inside panelboard door.

C. Phase and Ground Buses:

1. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.
2. Isolated Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from box.
3. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
4. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material.
1. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
2. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Compression type.
3. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

E. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.

F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

2.3 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

A. UL label indicating series-connected rating with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices. Include size and type of upstream device allowable, branch devices allowable, and UL series-connected short-circuit rating.

B. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.4 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Omit for fused-switch panelboards.

B. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Circuit breaker or Fused switch, see plans.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices:
1. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
2. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
3. Fused switches.

2.5 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

B. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.6 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.
   1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
   2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
   3. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers shall have RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; and with the following field-adjustable settings:
      a. Instantaneous trip.
      b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
   4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
   5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5-mA trip sensitivity for personnel receptacles, kitchen, EWC, etc; 30-mA trip sensitivity for equipment connections like heat tape, drain line heaters, etc.

B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
   1. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
   2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
   3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
   4. Communication Capability: Universal-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
   5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
   6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
   7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
   8. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
   9. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory-assembled to operate as a single unit.

2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Furnish accessory set including tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Mount top of trim 74 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish.

E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers.
1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

G. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.

1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

D. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scanning of each panelboard. Remove panel fronts so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies panelboards checked and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 CLEANING

A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 27 26

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Twist-locking receptacles.
3. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
4. Wall-box motion sensors.
5. Isolated-ground receptacles.
6. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
7. Solid-state fan speed controls.
8. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
9. Pendant cord-connector devices.
10. Cord and plug sets.
11. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. SPD: Transient voltage surge suppressor, Surge Protection Device.

F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
   1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
   2. Receptacles shall be tamper resistant per NEC requirements. Catalog numbers listed below are minimum requirements and shall be provided as the tamper resistant version.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
   1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
   2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
   3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
   4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
      b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
      c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
      d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).

B. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; CR 5253IG.
      b. Leviton; 5362-IG.
      c. Pass & Seymour; IG6300.
   2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

C. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; TR8300.
b. Hubbell; HBL8300SG.
c. Leviton; 8300-SGG.
d. Pass & Seymour; 63H.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. GFCI receptacles shall be self-testing type.

2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Cooper; L520R.
b. Hubbell; HBL2310.
c. Leviton; 2310.
d. Pass & Seymour; L520-R.

B. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Hubbell; IG2310.
b. Leviton; 2310-IG.
2. Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.5 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.
1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.6 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.7 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
   b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
   c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
   d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).

C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
   b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
   c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
   d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.
2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

D. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Cooper; 2221L.
   b. Hubbell; HBL1221L.
   c. Leviton; 1221-2L.
   d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-L.
2. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Cooper; 1995.
   b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
   c. Leviton; 1257.
   d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.

F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Cooper; 1995L.
   b. Hubbell; HBL1557L.
   c. Leviton; 1257L.
   d. Pass & Seymour; 1251L.

2.8 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.

B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.

C. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.9 FAN SPEED CONTROLS

A. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.
1. Continuously adjustable slider,
2. Three-speed adjustable slider, 1.5 A.

2.10 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: See the Plans.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: See the plans.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant thermoplastic with lockable cover.

2.11 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.

B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.

C. Service Plate: See the Plans.

D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: See the Plans.

2.12 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories.
3. Square D/ Schneider Electric.
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
5. Wiremold Company (The).

B. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.
1. Service Outlet Assembly: Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks.
2. Size: Selected to fit nominal 4-inch cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.

3. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
4. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 4-inch cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
5. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 5e voice and data communication cables.

2.13 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Wiremold Company (The).
3. Panduit
4. AMP

B. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

C. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

D. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

2.14 FINISHES

A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: See the Plans., unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
3. TVSS Devices: Blue.
4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: As specified above, with orange triangle on face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:
1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.

3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
   a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
   b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
   c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:
1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 13

FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V and less for use in switches panelboards switchboards controllers and motor-control centers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
   1. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
   2. Let-through current curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
   3. Time-current curves, coordination charts and tables, and related data.
   4. Fuse size for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

B. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
   1. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
   2. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
   1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
      a. Let-through current curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
      b. Time-current curves, coordination charts and tables, and related data.
      c. Ambient temperature adjustment information.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses from a single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Fuses: Quantity equal to 5 percent of each fuse type and size, but no fewer than 3 of each type and size.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Cooper Bussman, Inc.
   2. Eagle Electric Mfg. Co., Inc.; Cooper Industries, Inc.
   3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
   4. Tracor, Inc.; Littelfuse, Inc. Subsidiary.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuse; class and current rating indicated; voltage rating consistent with circuit voltage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

B. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Service Entrance: Class L, time delay J, fast acting J, time delay T, fast acting.

B. Feeders: Class L, time delay J, time delay RK5, time delay.

C. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.

D. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 28 16

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following individually mounted, enclosed switches and circuit breakers:
1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers.
4. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GD: General duty – NOTE: General Duty is NOT ALLOWED

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. HD: Heavy duty.

D. RMS: Root mean square.

E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current rating.
4. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.
5. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" Include the following:
1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Field quality-control test reports including the following:
1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

E. Manufacturer's field service report.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of circuit breaker.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with other construction, including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Spare Indicating Lights: Six of each type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FUSIBLE AND NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:
1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D/Group Schneider.

B. Fusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Nonfusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded, and bonded; and labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Auxiliary set of contacts arranged to open before switch blades open.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:
1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. Moeller Electric Corporation.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D/Group Schneider.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 1, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip-Unit Circuit Breakers: RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; with the following field-adjustable settings:
   a. Instantaneous trip.
   b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
   c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
   d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 30-mA trip sensitivity.

C. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Mechanical style with compression lug kits suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.

5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
7. Auxiliary Switch: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
8. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. NEMA AB 1 and NEMA KS 1 to meet environmental conditions of installed location.
1. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
2. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
4. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Verify structural requirements with structural engineer.

B. Concrete base is specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

B. Mount individual wall-mounting switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor floor-mounting switches to concrete base.

C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Enclosure Nameplates: Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Prepare for acceptance testing as follows:
1. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
2. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
3. Verify rating of installed fuses.
4. Inspect proper installation of type, size, quantity, and arrangement of mounting or anchorage devices complying with manufacturer's certification.

C. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Test mounting and anchorage devices according to requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
4. Infrared Scanning:
    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Open or remove doors or panels so connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-Up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each unit 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments, Equipment and Reports:
        1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
        2) Prepare a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers included and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.7 CLEANING

A. On completion of installation, vacuum dirt and debris from interiors; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

B. Inspect exposed surfaces and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 32 13

ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for standby power supply with the following features:

1. Diesel engine.
2. Unit-mounted cooling system.
3. Unit-mounted control and monitoring.
4. Performance requirements for sensitive loads.
5. Fuel system.
6. Outdoor enclosure.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine-generator set and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For engine-generator set, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails identify center of gravity and total weight including supplied enclosure, external silencer, **subbase-mounted UL 142 listed full fuel tank,** and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine-generator set and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source quality-control reports, including, but not limited to the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.

3. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
4. Report of sound generation.
5. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
6. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
3. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
4. Kohler

B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Engine-generator set housing, engine-generator set, batteries, battery racks, silencers, and sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156. Testing shall be performed with all fluids at worst case normal levels.
3. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B15.1.

C. NFPA Compliance:

1. Comply with NFPA 37.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.
3. Comply with NFPA 99.
4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.

E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 2 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.

F. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

G. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 40 deg C.
2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

2.3 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

C. EPSS Class: Engine-generator set shall be classified as a Class 2 in accordance with NFPA 110.

D. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.

E. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

F. Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 3 requirements.

G. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.

H. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
2. Output Connections: Three-phase, four wire.
3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

I. Generator-Set Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

2.4 ENGINE

A. Fuel: Diesel.

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.

E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.

F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.

G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

H. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
4. Battery: Nicad, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
5. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
6. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type designed for Nicad batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236.

2.5 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms.

B. Provide minimum run time control set for 30 minutes with override only by operation of an emergency-stop switch.

C. Comply with UL 508A.

D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the

generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery.

E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel. Panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery.

1. Wall-Mounting Cabinet Construction: Rigid, self-supporting steel unit complying with NEMA ICS 6. Power bus shall be copper. Bus, bus supports, control wiring, and temperature rise shall comply with UL 891.

F. Indicating Devices: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:

1. AC voltmeter.
2. AC ammeter.
3. AC frequency meter.
4. EPS supplying load indicator.
5. Ammeter and voltmeter phase-selector switches.
6. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
7. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
8. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
9. Running-time meter.
10. Current and Potential Transformers: Instrument accuracy class.

G. Protective Devices and Controls in Local Control Panel: Shutdown devices and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:

1. Start-stop switch.
2. Over-crank shutdown device.
3. Overspeed shutdown device.
4. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
5. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
6. Low lube oil pressure shutdown device.
7. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
8. Over-crank alarm.
9. Overspeed alarm.
10. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
11. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
12. Coolant low-level alarm.
13. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
14. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
15. Lamp test.
16. Contacts for local common alarm.
17. Coolant high-temperature pre-alarm.
18. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
19. Run-Off-Auto switch.
20. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
21. Low cranking voltage alarm.
22. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
23. Battery low-voltage alarm.
24. Battery high-voltage alarm.
25. Generator overcurrent protective device not closed alarm.

H. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

C. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.

1. Indicate ground fault with other generator-set alarm indications.
2. Trip generator protective device on ground fault.

2.7 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide six lead alternator.

E. Range: Provide extended range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

G. Enclosure: Drip-proof.

H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.

1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.

J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.8 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

A. Description: Walk in, vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

B. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
3. Ventilation: Provide temperature-controlled exhaust fan interlocked to prevent operation when engine is running.

C. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof fixtures within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.

1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.

D. Convenience Outlets: Factory wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

2.9 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install packaged engine generators on existing cast-in-place concrete equipment base.
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

C. Install packaged engine-generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

D. Install engine-generator in a walk-in enclosure Secure enclosure to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases.

E. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.
1. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches clearance from combustibles.

F. Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet full size of drain connection with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe with welded joints.

G. Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.

H. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine-generator set and heat exchanger with flexible connectors.

B. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

C. Ground equipment according to NEC.

D. Connect wiring according to NEC. Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the generator set from a stationary element.

E. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components according to owner requirements.

B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in the first two subparagraphs as specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1) Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
4) Verify the unit is clean.

b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests

1) Perform insulation-resistance tests in accordance with IEEE 43.

a) Machines larger than 200 horsepower. Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
b) Machines 200 horsepower or less. Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.

2) Test protective relay devices.
3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
5) Conduct performance test in accordance with NFPA 110.
6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.

2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.

b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg. Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.

C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.

J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 36 00

TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
   1. Automatic transfer switches.
   2. Remote annunciation systems.
   3. Remote annunciation and control systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 21 Section "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" for automatic transfer switches for fire pumps.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
   1. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
   1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
   2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than eight hours from time of notification.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic transfer switches, remote annunciators and remote annunciator and control panels through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with NFPA 110.

G. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:
1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Contactor Transfer Switches:
   a. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
   b. Emerson; ASCO Power Technologies, LP.
   c. Kohler Power Systems; Generator Division.
   d. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
   e. Generac Power Systems, Inc.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.

C. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

D. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.

E. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a non-fused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.

F. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.

G. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.

I. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote devices.

J. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable tape markers are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.

K. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

B. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

D. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

F. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

G. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with NEMA AB 1, UL 489, and UL 869A.

H. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay: Controls designate starters so they disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters is through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Time delay for reconnecting individual motor loads is adjustable between 1 and 60 seconds, and settings are as indicated. Relay contacts handling motor-control circuit inrush and seal currents are rated for actual currents to be encountered.

I. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator has a programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Pause is adjustable from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum and factory set for 0.5 second, unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Pause is disabled unless both sources are live.

J. Automatic Transfer-Switch Features:
1. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
2. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes to automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
    a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset

intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:

a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
c. Integral battery operation of time switches when normal control power is not available.

2.4 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR SYSTEM

A. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches. Annunciation shall include the following:
1. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
2. Switch position.
3. Switch in test mode.
4. Failure of communication link.

B. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
1. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
2. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
3. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.

1. Concrete Bases: 4 inches high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 4 inches in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

C. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated. Provide a 1’ conduit from annunciator to generator panel unless otherwise noted on plans.

D. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

E. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Provide a 2” conduit from ATS to generator unless otherwise noted on plans.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in testing.
   2. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
      a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
      b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
      c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
      d. Perform manual transfer operation.
   5. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
      a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
      b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
      c. Verify time-delay settings.
      d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
      e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
      f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
      g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
   6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.

D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

F. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 36 13.16

3-WAY-MANUAL-TRANSFER-SWITCH-PERFORMANCE

PART 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 SCOPE

A. Contractor shall furnish, deliver, install and test the 3-way manual transfer switches as specified herein and in accordance with the drawings.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. 3-way manual transfer assembly switch shall be UL listed and labeled under the UL 1008 standard.

B. 3-way manual transfer switch shall be special seismic certified by OSHPD exclusively on the basis of approved shake table testing, and also certified to IBC 2015. Minimum IBC 2015 design parameters shall be as follows: Ip = 1.5, SDS = 2.0g, z/h = 1.0

C. 3-way manual transfer switch manufacturer shall provide a complete factory assembled, wired and tested 3-way manual transfer switch.

D. 3-way manual transfer switch shall be factory Hi-pot tested for a period of not less than 60 seconds.

E. 3-way manual transfer switch installation shall meet all applicable NEC standards.
   1. 2017 NEC 700.3 (F) compliant when used in conjunction with an ATS and appropriate auxiliary equipment.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor shall submit manufacturer's drawings and data of 3-way manual transfer switches for Engineer's approval prior to start of fabrication. Drawings and data shall include, as a minimum, dimensioned general arrangement drawings and wiring diagrams, UL listing information including UL file or control number, short circuit rating or withstand rating, component data, mounting provisions, conduit entry locations and installation instructions.

B. Upon installation of 3-way manual transfer switches Contractor shall submit manufacturer's Operating & Maintenance Manual which shall include as a minimum:
   1. Certified as-built General Arrangement drawings and Wiring Diagram.
   2. Materials / Component List including part numbers.
   3. Maintenance and service requirements.

4. Certificate of Compliance and hi-pot test data.

1.4 WARRANTY

A. 3-way manual transfer switches shall be covered by manufacturer's warranty for a minimum period of (1) one year after shipment from manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All equipment shall be new.

B. 3-way manual transfer switch manufacturer must have produced and sold UL 1008 Listed manual transfer switches as a standard product for minimum of (3) years.

C. 3-way manual transfer switches shall be molded case circuit breaker type; knife switch or fused switches are not acceptable.

D. Contractor shall be responsible for the equipment until it has been installed and is finally inspected, tested and accepted in accordance with the requirements of this Specification.

E. 3- way manual transfer switches shall be TripleSwitch as manufactured by ESL Power Systems, Inc. or equal as approved by the Engineer.

2.2 3-WAY MANUAL TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. 3-way manual transfer switch shall consist of (2) mechanically-interlocked molded case circuit breakers, and (1) independent load bank breaker with a shunt trip (shunt trip voltage to be per the drawings), male cam-style inlet connectors, female cam-style outlet connectors, power distribution blocks and grounding terminals, all housed within a padlockable enclosure.

B. 3-way manual transfer switch enclosure shall be Type 3R, constructed of continuous seam-welded, powder coated galvanneal steel. The main access shall be through an interlocked, hinged door that extends the full height of the enclosure. Access for both portable generator cables with female cam-style plugs and for load bank cables with male cam-style plugs shall be via a) drawn flange cable entry openings in the bottom of enclosure for wall mount units, or b) hinged lower door for pad mount units. A hinged flap door shall be provided to cover the cable openings when cables are not connected; the hinged flap door shall allow cable entry only after the main access door has been opened. Enclosure shall be powder coated after fabrication; color shall be wrinkle gray RAL 7035.

C. Cam-style male connectors (inlets) and cam-style female connectors (outlets) shall be UL Listed single-pole separable type and rated 400 amps at 600VAC. All cam-style connectors shall be color coded. Cam-style connectors shall be provided for each phase and for ground, and shall also be provided for neutral. Each of the phase cam-style connectors and the neutral cam-style connectors within the enclosure shall be factory-wired to a molded case circuit breaker. The ground cam-style male connectors shall be bonded to the enclosure, and a ground lug shall be provided for connection of the facility ground conductor. None of the cam-style connectors shall be accessible unless all (3) molded case circuit breakers are in the "OFF" position and the main access door is open.

D. A power distribution block shall be provided for load-side field wiring. The power distribution block shall be factory wired to the molded case circuit breakers.

E. Molded case circuit breakers shall be UL Listed 3-pole and the short circuit interrupt rating shall be a minimum of 35kAIC at 480VAC (wall mount units) or 50kAIC at 480VAC (pad mount units). Trip rating of the molded case circuit breakers shall be as shown on the drawings. One molded case circuit breaker shall control the connection between the permanent generator and the automatic transfer switch. A second circuit breaker shall control the connection between the permanent generator and the load bank female cam-style connectors. A third circuit breaker shall control the connection between the portable generator (via male cam-style connectors) and the automatic transfer switch. All (3) molded case circuit breakers shall include UL Listed door-mounted operating mechanisms, preventing the opening of the main access door unless all (3) breakers are in the "OFF" position. All (3) molded case circuit breakers shall be mounted behind a deadfront panel. The load-side of the molded case circuit breakers shall not be energizable unless the main access door is closed and one of the molded case circuit breakers is in the "ON" position. The (2) molded case circuit breakers controlling the connections between the permanent generator and the automatic transfer switch**,** and the connection between the portable generator and automatic transfer switch shall be safety interlocked by mechanical means to ensure that only one of these breakers can be closed at any given time.

F. An auxiliary contact shall be provided in the circuit breaker controlling the connection from the Permanent Generator to the ATS and shall be factory wired to terminal blocks within the enclosure. The auxiliary contact is provided in compliance with NEC 2017 700.3 (F)(5) which requires a means to activate an annunciator circuit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Prior to installation of 3-way manual transfer switches, Contractor shall examine the areas and conditions under which the 3-way manual transfer switch is to be installed and notify the Engineer in writing if unsatisfactory conditions exist.

B. 3-way manual transfer switch shall be installed as shown on the drawings and per the manufacturer's written instructions. In addition, the installation shall meet the requirements of local codes, the National Electrical Code and National Electrical Contractors Association's "Standard of Installation".

C. Conduit entry into the 3-way manual transfer switch shall be by Contractor; Contractor shall furnish and install listed watertight conduit hubs, as manufactured by MYERS or T&B, for each conduit entry on the 3-way manual transfer switch. The incoming hub size shall match the conduit size for feeders and ground as shown on the drawings. The outgoing hub size shall match the conduit size for loads and ground as shown on the drawings. Hubs shall be properly installed and tightened to maintain Type 3R integrity of the 3-way manual transfer switch enclosure.

D. Contractor shall terminate feeder conductors, load conductors and ground per the manufacturer's instructions. All field wiring terminations shall be torqued as required per the instructions on the 3-way manual transfer switch's power distribution blocks, circuit breakers & ground lugs.

3.2 FIELD TESTING

A. Prior to energizing 3-way manual transfer switch, the Contractor shall perform the following checks and tests as a minimum:
   1. Verify mounting and connections are complete and secure.
   2. Verify internal components and wiring are secure.
   3. Perform continuity check of all circuits.
   4. Perform 1,000 VDC megger test on feeder, load and ground cables.
   5. Verify deadfront is secure.
   6. With the 3-way manual transfer switch deadfront in place and the main access door closed and properly latched, actuate all (3) Operator Mechanisms; verify:
      A). With the breaker controlling the connection between the permanent generator and the automatic transfer switch (ATS) in the "ON" position, the breaker controlling the connection between permanent generator and the load bank can be turned to the "ON" and "OFF" position and the breaker controlling the connection between the portable generator and the automatic transfer switch cannot be turned "ON"
      B) With the breaker controlling the connection between the permanent generator and the automatic transfer switch (ATS) in the "OFF" position, the other (2) breakers controlling the connection between the permanent generator and load bank can be turned "ON" or "OFF", and

the breaker controlling the connection between the portable generator and the automatic transfer switch can be turned “ON” and “OFF”

C) With the breaker controlling the connection between the portable generator and the automatic transfer switch (ATS) in the “ON” position, the breaker controlling the connection between the permanent generator and the automatic transfer switch (ATS) cannot be turned “ON” and the breaker controlling the connection between the permanent generator and load bank can be turned “ON” and “OFF”.

7. Confirm operation of the 3-way manual transfer switch ground receptacle by attaching a plug to the 3-way manual transfer switch ground receptacle and then verify that the plug is grounded to the facility ground.
8. Once normal power has been applied, confirm operation of 3-way manual transfer switch by following directions on main access door.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 43 13

TRANSIENT-VOLTAGE SUPPRESSION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS (SPD)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes SPDs for low-voltage power, control, and communication equipment.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for devices with integral SPDs.
2. Division 26 Section "Switchboards" for factory-installed SPDs.
3. Division 26 Section "Panelboards" for factory-installed SPDs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.

B. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.

C. SPD: Transient voltage surge suppressor (known now as SPD.)

D. SPD: Surge Protection Device

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Product Certificates: For transient voltage suppression devices, signed by product manufacturer certifying compliance with the following standards:
1. UL 1283.
2. UL 1449 3rd edition.

C. Qualification Data:
1. Per the requirements of NEC Article 285.6, provide test data demonstrating that the SPD is capable of surviving the published and specified short circuit current capability (AIC rating) without the use of external fusing.
2. Provide a COMPLETE set of test and ratings data per the recommendations of NEMA LS1 – 1992.

D. Field quality-control test reports, including the following:
1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Failed test results and corrective action taken to achieve requirements.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transient voltage suppression devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain suppression devices and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, dimensional requirements, and electrical performance of suppressors and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with IEEE C62.41, "IEEE Guide for Surge Voltages in Low Voltage AC Power Circuits," and test devices according to IEEE C62.45, "IEEE Guide on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits."

E. Comply with NEMA LS 1, "Low Voltage Surge Protection Devices."

F. Comply with UL 1283, "Electromagnetic Interference Filters," and UL 1449, "Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Service Conditions: Rate surge protection devices for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: Not less than 115 percent of nominal system operating voltage.
2. Operating Temperature: 30 to 120 deg F.
3. Humidity: 0 to 85 percent, noncondensing.
4. Altitude: Less than 20,000 feet above sea level.

B. Placing into Service: Do not energize or connect service entrance equipment, panelboard, control terminals, data terminals, to their sources until the surge protective devices are installed and connected.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate location of field-mounted surge suppressors to allow adequate clearances for maintenance.

B. Coordinate surge protection devices with Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

1.8 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Cord-Connected, Plug-in Surge Suppressors: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electronic equipment connected to circuits protected by surge suppressors.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Replaceable Protection Modules: One of each size and type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Liebert Corporation; a division of Emerson.
   2. Advanced Protection Technologies, Inc.
   3. Current Technology, Inc.
   4. Cutler-Hammer, Inc.; Eaton Corporation.
   5. Intermatic, Inc.
   6. LEA International.
   7. Square D; Schneider Electric.
   8. APT: Advanced Protection Technologies

B. Manufacturers of Category A and Telephone/Data Line Suppressors:
   1. EDCO
   2. NTE Electronics, Inc.
   3. Telebyte Technology, Inc.

2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSORS

A. Surge Protection Device Description: Non-modular type from the following list of approved manufacturers and products provided the product meets all requirements of these Specifications. The SPD will be provided with the following features and accessories:
   1. 1. Repetitive Rating: SPD shall be capable of surviving at least 10,000 ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 impulses (10kA) without failure or less than 10% degradation of original performance characteristics.
   2. Fusing system to provide 200kAIC short circuit rating.
   3. The IEEE Emerald Book (IEEE Std. 1100 – 2005). Paragraph 9L1.3.1 states the following, “Component level fusing in a SPD can provide a fail-safe system preventing catastrophic failure or complete loss of protection.” Each of the manufacturers listed in this specification will provide independent fusing for each MOV in accordance with paragraph 3. below.
   4. Individually fused MOVs to provide system redundancy
   5. IEEE Emerald Book (IEEE Std. 1100 – 2005). Paragraph 8.4.2.5 states the following, “…Surge protective device considerations: “…It is recommended practice that all SPDs have a means to disconnect them from service. Locating the SPD external to the switchboard or panelboard allows a disconnecting means to be located inside the switchboard or panelboard and does not require access to the switchboard or panelboard interior when servicing the SPD.” Eliminate paragraph 4. below when the recommended breaker is provided in the distribution equipment.
   6. Integral disconnect (only when a breaker is NOT provided in distribution equipment)
   7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
   8. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
   9. One set of dry contacts rated at 5A and 250V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
   10. NEMA 12 Enclosure.

B. Surge Protection Device Description: Modular type from the following list of approved manufacturers and products provided the product meets all requirements of these Specifications:
   1. Liebert Corporation – Interceptor II Series
   2. Current Technology, Inc. – SEL Series
   3. Cutler-Hammer – CPS Series

The modular SPD will be provided with the following features and accessories:

1. Repetitive Rating: SPD shall be capable of surviving at least 15,000 ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 impulses (10kA) without failure or less than 10% degradation of original performance characteristics.
2. Fusing system to provide 200kAIC short circuit rating.
3. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
5. Individually fused MOVs to provide system redundancy.
6. Built-in push-to-test feature that tests the integrity of each fuse/MOV pair. Manufacturers who accomplish by use of an external surge generator will provide the device with their quotation.
7. Redundant replaceable modules
8. Arrangement with copper bus bars and for bolted connection to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
9. Arrangement with wire connection to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
10. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
11. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
12. One set of dry contacts rated at 5A and 250V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
13. Surge event operations counter.
14. NEMA 4 Enclosure

C. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 200kA per mode. Manufacturer will provide a higher maximum surge current rating if necessary to meet the repetitive requirements listed above.Connection Means:

D. Connection Means: Permanently wired.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with voltages of 480Y/277, 208Y/120, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V for 208Y/120 and 700V for 480Y/277V.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V for 208Y/120 and 700V for 480Y/277V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V for 208Y/120 and 700V for 480Y/277V.

F. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

G. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

H. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for voltages of 240, 480, or 600, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Line: 2000V for 480V, 1000V for 240V, 2500V for 600V.
2. Line to Ground: 2000V for 480V, 1000V for 240V, 2500V for 600V,
3. 2.3 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

I. Surge Protection Device Description: Non-modular, sine-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
3. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.

J. Surge Protection Device Description: Modular design with field-replaceable modules, sign-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
1. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
2. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.

3. Integral disconnect switch.
4. Redundant suppression circuits.
5. Redundant replaceable modules.
6. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
8. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
9. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V, ac, for remote monitoring of protection status. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
10. Surge-event operations counter.

K. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 100kA per mode.

L. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with voltages of 208Y/120, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V for 208Y/120.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V for 208Y/120.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V for 208Y/120.

M. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

N. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

O. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for voltages of 240, 480, or 600, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Line: 1000 V for 240 V.
2. Line to Ground: 800 V for 240 V.

2.3 SUPPRESSORS FOR BRANCH PANELS

A. Surge Protection Device Description: Sine-wave-tracking type, panel-mounted design with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
3. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
4. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
5. Fusing system to provide 200kAIC short circuit rating.
6. Repetitive Rating: SPD shall be capable of surviving at least 6,000 ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 impulses (10kA) without failure or less than 10% degradation of original performance characteristics.
7. NEMA 4X Enclosure
8.

B. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Ratings; 130 kA per phase, 65kA per mode. Manufacturer will provide a higher maximum surge current rating if necessary to meet the repetitive requirements listed above.

C. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with voltages of 480Y/277 208Y/120, 600Y/347, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 800 for 480Y/277, 400V for 208Y/120, 1200V for 600Y/347.
2. Line to Ground: 800V for 480Y/277, 400V for 208Y/120, 1200V for 600Y/347.
3. Neutral to Ground: 800V for 480Y/277, 400V for 208Y/120, 1200V for 600Y/347.

D. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

F. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for voltages of 240, 480, or 600, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Line: Line to Line: 2000V for 480V, 1000V for 240V, 2500V for 600V.
2. Line to Ground: 2000V for 480V,1000V for 240V, 2500V for 600V.

2.4 PLUG-IN SURGE SUPPRESSORS

A. Description: Non-modular, plug-in suppressors with at least four 15-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 15-15R receptacles, suitable to plug into a NEMA WD 6, Configuration 15-15R receptacle; with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
3. Circuit breaker and thermal fusing. When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
4. Circuit breaker and thermal fusing. Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
5. Close-coupled direct plug-in.
6. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in the on position.
7. One RJ11/12C telephone line protector, suitable for modem connection. Maximum clamping voltage 220 peak on pins No. 3 and No. 4.

B. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 26 kA per phase.

C. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 475 V.
2. Line to Ground: 475 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 475 V.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. NEMA 250, with type matching the enclosure of panel or device being protected.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. Install devices at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground.

B. Install devices for panelboard and auxiliary panels with conductors or buses between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Locate the externally mounted SPD as close as possible to the panelboard neutral lug. Locate the recommended breaker as close as possible to the SPD location. The panelboard manufacturer will supply the breaker. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.

C. Provide a 60A, multi-pole circuit breaker in the service entrance equipment and a 30A, multi- pole circuit breaker in branch panel equipment to serve as a dedicated disconnect for suppressor, unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 PLACING SYSTEM INTO SERVICE

A. Do not energize or connect panelboards to their sources until surge protection devices are installed and connected.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
   1. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. Testing: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

C. Testing: Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. After installing surge protection devices, but before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   2. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, "Surge Arresters, Low-Voltage Surge Protection Devices" Section. Certify compliance with test parameters.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transient voltage suppression devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for maintaining suppressors.

C. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."

D. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."

E. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advanced notice.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 26 51 16

LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Luminaire supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 09 23"Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating

E. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, arranged by designation.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled luminaires, from manufacturer.

D. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.

1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

2.2 LED LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4.

E. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.

F. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours.

G. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

H. Internal driver.

I. Nominal Operating Voltage: See Light Fixture Schedule on Plans.

1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 LED EXTERIOR LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.

E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.6.

F. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.

G. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.

H. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

I. Nominal Operating Voltage: See Light Fixture Schedule on plans.

J. In-line Fusing: Separate in-line fuse for each luminaire.

K. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use.

L. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.

M. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

N. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

O. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Acrylic: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish shall match luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gauge.

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and luminaire shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.

C. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install lamps in each luminaire.

E. Supports: Sized and rated for luminaire weight.

F. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaire Supports:

1. Install ceiling support system rods or wire for each luminaire. Locate not more than 6 inches from luminaire corners.
2. Support Clips: Fasten to luminaires and to ceiling grid members at or near each luminaire corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
3. Luminaires of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support luminaires independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on luminaire. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the luminaire weight at a safety factor of 3.

G. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

H. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

I. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

J. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

K. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 55 61.10

AUDITORIUM THEATRICAL LIGHTING SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Related Documents are the Terms and Conditions of the General Contract, the Theatrical Drawings, the AV Drawings, the Architectural Drawings, the Electrical Drawings, and Sections of the General Contract relating to finishes.

B. System, components and installation are to conform to all local building code requirements.

C. Work of this Section shall be coordinated with work of the general building contract. It is the intent of this Section to provide Theatrical Lighting Systems that are complete in every respect in accordance with commonly accepted industry standards, as set forth in this Section, and is to be coordinated with related work in other Sections and by other contractors.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Requirements for a Theatrical Systems Integrator.
   2. Theatrical Systems Integrator to provide the Work required in the following Sections:
      a. Section 11 61 43 - Stage Curtains.
      b. Section 26 55 61.10 - Auditorium Theatrical Lighting Systems.
   3. Low voltage control cable related to the Theatrical Lighting System.
   4. Motorized Front-of-House Lighting Hoist.

B. Any additional materials, equipment, or services needed to complete the Work of providing the fully functioning theatrical lighting system, even if not specifically indicated in these specifications or on the related Drawings, shall be provided by the Theatrical Systems Integrator without claim for additional payment.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide all items, articles, materials, and operations listed, mentioned, scheduled, or reasonably inferred from the Contract Documents, including tools, scaffolding, labor, supervision, and incidentals necessary and required for the satisfactory completion of the work.

B. Verify all field conditions and dimensions in the Drawings before commencing the work. Verify all measurements at the building site that may be required for correct installation. Notify Architect of discrepancies and/or questions before commencing any work. Discrepancies and/or omissions in the Contract Documents shall in no way be construed as authority to deviate from the intent of this Section.

C. The work includes all drilling, fitting, and operations of similar character required for securing and setting the materials in place, and all cutting, and fitting required in connection with the securing of the rigging materials and equipment to the adjoining work.

D. The system shall be designed for the control of architectural and theatrical lighting and shall consist of factory pre-wired dimming and processing rack enclosures containing dimmers, power supplies, breakers, terminals and/or control electronics.

E. The dimming equipment provider shall provide supervision and assistance to the Division 26 installing Electrical Contractor.

F. System shall work in conjunction with the specified low-voltage control stations.

G. Deficiencies in the work shall be rectified upon order from the Architect. Equipment found not meeting the contract requirements shall be immediately removed from the job site and equipment meeting the requirements shall be immediately substituted at no additional cost.

1.4 WORK EXCLUDED FROM THIS SECTION

A. All building wire, conduit, switchgear, and high voltage (>70V) termination related to the Theatrical Lighting System to be provided and installed by the Division 26 Electrical Contractor.

B. All low voltage (<70V) lighting control wire to be furnished by Theatrical Lighting System Integrator and installed by the Division 26 Electrical Contractor.

C. Provision of any additional structural elements required for mounting the Motorized Front-of-House Hoist.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures: Submittal procedures.

B. Provide 4 copies of the complete submittal package.

C. Product Data: Include types, styles, materials, operating instruction, and maintenance recommendations.

D. Shop Drawings: Submit for action. Show fabrication and installation of the Work. Include the following.
   1. Submittal shall consist of shop drawings, cut sheets, and maintenance manuals for the supplied equipment.
   2. Layout of stage electrics and front-of-house hoist system and support to structure. Include theatrical lighting layout and hanging plan and section. Coordinate all layouts with stage curtains and dead hung battens.
   3. Coordinate lighting fixtures specifications for barrel length and beam spread to provide appropriate stage lighting flexibility and coverage commensurate with acceptable stage lighting practice.
   4. Clearly indicate extent of required operating clearances and show all mechanical and electrical components in the stage and auditorium that impact theatrical equipment.
   5. Provide all drawings in printed form on sheets no smaller than 11 x 17 inches and on readable digital media in PDF format.
   6. Delegated Design Data: Indicate stage curtain system structural attachments, including analysis data signed and sealed by Professional Engineer responsible for the design.

E. Plans and Layout Drawings: Submit for approval by Architect before installation. Drawings are to include all components, rigging, and locations for the Work.
   1. Masking Plan and Lighting Fixture Layout: Drawings, prepared by the Theatrical Systems Integrator (TSI), indicating the installation of the Work indicated in the following specification Sections:
      a. Section 11 61 43 - Stage Curtains.
      b. Section 26 55 61.10 - Auditorium Theatrical Lighting Systems.

F. Qualification Data: Submit data for companies and persons indicated in QUALITY ASSURANCE article demonstrating their capabilities and experience. Include indicated qualifications requirements and a list of at least ten (10) completed projects with names and addresses of projects, architects/designers, and owners.

G. Closeout Submittals: Submit four (4) sets of operation and maintenance manuals bound in three ring binders.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Delegated Designer Qualifications: Perform design of track and support systems under direct supervision of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

B. Theatrical Systems Integrator (TSI): Company specializing in providing theatrical systems and the Work indicated in the Contract Documents.
   1. Work requirements include the Drawings and the following Specification Sections:
      a. Section 26 55 61.10 - Auditorium Theatrical Lighting Systems.
      b. Section 11 61 43 - Stage Curtains.
   2. TSI Qualifications: Company specializing in designing, coordinating, integrating, installing, and commissioning theatrical systems and complying with the following requirements:
      a. Minimum ten (10) years documented experience providing similar scope work.
         1) Bidders must provide, as part of their bid package, a list of three (3) projects completed within the last two (2) years of similar scope and located in North and/or South Carolina. Bidders not providing such list shall be considered nonresponsive.
      b. Financial status sufficient to execute and complete the Work.
      c. TSI employed staff trained and experienced in providing the Work including installation, training, and maintenance.
         1) Project Manager: TSI is to provide an on-site Project Manager to be on site during installation and training activities. Project Manager is to provide supervision of the Work and is to provide coordination information to other contractors providing related and interfacing work.
      d. Approved Theatrical Systems Integrator companies are listed below. All other interested theatrical systems integrator companies must submit and receive prior approval seven (10) days before the advertised bid date:
         1) Barbizon Charlotte, 1016 McClelland Court, Charlotte, NC 28206
            Contact: Jeff Montgomerie, (704) 372-2122.
         2) Imagine Design and Productions, Inc., 6901 Downwind Road, Greensboro, NC 27409
            Contact: Mark Stollery, (336) 299-2962.
         3) Productions Unlimited, 175 Old Airport Road, Roebuck, SC 29376
            Contact: Brian Phillips, (864) 675-6146.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with all applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances, and regulations of Federal, State and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction. Obtain necessary approvals from all such authorities.

D. The dimming equipment provider shall provide supervision and assistance to the Division 26 installing Electrical Contractor.

E. The dimming equipment manufacturer shall be one who has been continuously engaged in the manufacture of lighting control equipment for a minimum of ten (10) years. All dimmer and cabinet fabrication must take place in a U.S. manufacturing plant.

F. All equipment, where applicable standards have been established, shall be built to the standards of Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., the National Electric Code, and the United States Institute for Theatre Technology. Approved equipment shall be so labeled on delivery to the job site.

G. The dimming and control system shall be manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., 3030 Laura Lane, Middleton, Wisconsin. No substitutions allowed.

H. The theatrical lighting cables and accessories shall be manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., by SSRC, Duncan, South Carolina and by Lex Products, Sun Valley, CA. No substitutions allowed.

I. The theatrical distribution equipment shall be manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc. and by SSRC, Duncan, South Carolina. No substitutions allowed.

J. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain materials from a single manufacturer for each different product required.

K. Alternative manufacturers must submit a full pre-approval package ten (10) days prior to the bid date. Acceptance or refusal of alternate manufacturers is the responsibility of the Architect and Architect's consultant.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. General: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packaging with label indicating pertinent information identifying the item. Store materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions in a protected dry location off ground. Do not open packaging nor remove labels until time of installation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS OR SITE CONDITIONS

A. Existing Conditions: Field measure at location of the Work prior to preparation of the shop drawings. Include measurements of adjacent construction to which the Work must fit. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to fabricated dimensions of the Work. Allow for trimming and fitting.
   1. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabrication of products without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Section 01 77 00 - Closeout Procedures: Product warranties.

B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer warranty for products under normal use and service to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for the Warranty Period indicated.
   1. Warranty shall cover repair or replacement of such parts determined defective upon inspection.
   2. Warranty does not cover any product or part of a product subject to accident, negligence, alteration, abuse, or misuse.
   3. Warranty does not cover any accessories or parts not supplied by the manufacturer.
   4. Warranty does not cover any labor expended or materials used to repair any equipment without manufacturer's prior written authorization.
   5. Warranty Period:
      a. Two (2) years beginning on the project Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RACK ENCLOSURES

A. The control enclosure shall be the Unison DRd Series Rack Enclosure as manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc.

B. The Rack Enclosure shall be a surface mounted, deadfront switchboard, constructed of 18-guage formed steel panels with a hinged, lockable full-height door containing an integral electrostatic air filter. Control Enclosures shall be sized to accept one Control Processor, options and accessories.

C. All rack components shall be properly treated and finished.
   1. Exterior surfaces shall be finished in fine textured, scratch-resistant, epoxy paint.

D. The fully digital rack enclosure shall be available with six or twelve dimmer module spaces, one processor and a single station power supply.

E. A single low-noise fan shall be located at the top of each rack. The fan shall draw all intake air through the integral electrostatic air filter, over the surfaces of the module housing and out the top of the rack.

F. Control Enclosures shall be available in 100, 120, 230, 240, and 277 volt configurations.

G. Rack enclosures shall be completely pre-wired by the manufacturer. The Theatrical Systems Integrator (TSI) shall provide input feed, load, and control wiring.

H. All control wire connections shall be terminated via connectors provided by factory.

I. External Processing enclosures shall be designed to support the wire terminations for AC (single phase), Echelon link power, 24Vdc, configurable DMX512A (In or Out), DMX512A Output, RS232 Serial In/Out, Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) Category 5/5e, 4x Contact Closure In, and 4x Contact Closure Out.

2.2 CONTROL PROCESSOR MODULE

A. The Architectural Control Processor shall be the Unison Paradigm P-ACP Series Control Processor as manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., or equal.

B. The Architectural Control Processor (ACP) assembly shall be designed for use in DRd Series Dimming Enclosures and ERn Series Control Enclosures.

C. The processor shall utilize microprocessor based, solid state technology to provide multi-scene lighting and building control.
   1. ACP shall support functions such as station programming, macro sequencing, electronic lockout, room combine and astronomical time clock events. ACP station processor shall allow configuration of the control system via the menus. See software section for additional system details.
   2. When used in a dimming enclosure, the ACP shall allow access to dimming control menus including the status screen, dimming configuration screen, backup menu, test menu and configuration menu.

D. One ACP shall be rated to drive 1024 channels of control, 1024 zones, 64 rooms, 512 presets, 62 button or button/fader stations and 6 Touchscreen Stations.

E. ACP module electronics shall be convection cooled.

F. The ACP shall provide front-panel RJ45 jack, Secure Digital (SD) card slot, and Universal Serial Bus (USB) Port for configuration and data exchange.

G. Architectural Lighting System configuration and program information shall be stored in flash memory, which does not require battery backup.

H. The ACP shall be contained in a plug-in assembly and require no discrete wiring connections; all wiring shall be terminated into Dimming or Control Enclosure.
   1. The ACP shall support the following communications:
      a. Echelon LinkPower.
      b. 10/100BaseTX, auto MDI/MDIX, 802.3af compliant Ethernet networking with TCP/IP, ESTA BSR E1.17 Advanced Control Networks (ACN) and ESTA BSR E1.31 (sACN) Protocols.
      c. EIA-232 serial protocol.
      d. ESTA DMX512A, configurable as input or output ports.
      e. Dry contact closure inputs.
      f. Dry contact closure outputs; rated for 1A at 30V DC.

2.3 LIGHTING CONSOLE AND ACCESSORIES

A. General:
   1. The lighting control console shall be a microprocessor-based system specifically designed to provide complete control of stage, studio, and entertainment lighting systems. The console shall be the ColorSource 40, manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., or equal.
   2. The system shall provide control of 512 DMX512A addresses on a maximum of forty (40) or eighty (80) control channels. Any or all the DMX512A outputs may be controlled by a channel.
   3. A maximum of 999 cues may be contained in non-volatile electronic memory.
   4. Twenty (20) or forty (40) faders shall provide access to individual intensity channels, intensity for devices as well as playbacks.
   5. Four (4) configurable faders shall provide functionality for output of bump buttons, cue list control or crossfade control.
   6. The console shall have one (1) built-in 7 inch color multi-touch touchscreen. The touchscreen shall provide the primary interface for system configuration, programming show data and multi-parameter control.
   7. Six (6) softkey buttons shall be provided, five of which may be configured by the user.
   8. Console shall be equipped with an on-board help system, with on-board tutorial videos.
   9. Console shall not require the use of an external monitor for normal use.
   10. Console software upgrades shall be made by the user via USB drive. Changing internal components shall not be required.
   11. The console shall provide a USB port allowing show data to be saved for archival or transfer to other consoles or a personal computer.
   12. Systems that do not provide the above capabilities shall not be acceptable.
   13. Controls and Playback:
      a. Patching:
         1) The console shall provide patching facilities for dimmers and multi-parameter devices via a built-in library of fixture definitions. The fixture library shall be updated via software-based updates. It shall be possible to create custom fixture definitions using an offline application.
         2) The console shall support patching, address setting, and mode changes using Remote Device Management (RDM) on the local DMX/RDM port.
      b. Channel or Playback Faders:
         1) Twenty (20) or forty (40) proportional, fully overlapping faders shall be provided with 45mm potentiometers and bump buttons.
         2) The faders shall provide direct manual control of intensity for all channels. Channel levels can be changed at any time by using the individual channel faders or through the use of the touch screen interface.

a) Faders shall also control up to ten (10) pages of twenty (20) (or forty (40)) recordable memories or sequences. Memories shall record user-selected channel levels. Sequences shall record user-selected memories or channel levels.
(1) With color mixing systems, output of color from fixtures shall appear to be a combination of the active memories in a color space.

c. Programming Tools:
1) The console shall provide a 7 inch color multi-touch touchscreen with six (6) softkeys, as well as touch-based controls. The LCD shall provide system configuration, programming show data and multi-parameter control.
2) Touch-based tools shall include:
a) Forty (40) programmable color chips and color picker.
b) Touch-based parameter controls.
c) Virtual Level/Rate wheel.
d) Virtual keypad for level entry.
e) Customizable channel display using Stage Map. It shall be possible to rearrange the graphical representations for control channels to closely mimic the positions of fixtures in the venue.
f) Effects (intensity, color, shape, and parameter):
(1) It shall be possible to assign multiple effects to the same channel and parameters. The playback of those effects shall play levels back relative to the combination of the two effects.
3) Fixture selection shall be made via:
a) Auto fixture selection on fader moves.
b) Pressing the selection button under channel faders.
c) Touching the channel icon in the stage map display on the touch screen.
d) Fixture Tags for Quick Selects:
(1) Selection of multiple fixtures shall be possible through a special controls dock that groups channels together based on the channel tile positions within a pre-defined area in the topographical view for channels.
(2) Selection shall be possible by use of informational tags. Selecting a predefined tag selects all fixtures sharing that same tag. At least two tags may be assigned to any one channel.
(3) There shall be at least 27 Quick Select groupings.
4) Two independent channels shall be provided with on/off functionality. Independents shall be patched in a location separate from patch.

d. Playback Controls:
1) A cue list of up to 999 cues shall be provided. Cues may be made up of channel levels and parameter settings or contain a reference to a recorded memory. Cues shall be editable and shall be able to be individually deleted and inserted.
2) Playback Toy for filtered and timed execution of playbacks.
3) Multiple bump modes (Flash, Solo, SoloChange, Move/GO).
4) Full history rubberbanding for playbacks.

B. Interface Options:
1. The console shall provide connectors for the following:
a. 12V AC or DC input for external power supply.

b. DMX512-A/RDM output (one (1) 5-pin XLR connector).
c. USB connection (one (1) type A connector).

C. Physical:
1. All operator controls and console electronics shall be housed in a single desktop console.
2. Size and weight:
a. Twenty (20) fader console shall be equal to or less than 18.31 inch (465 mm) wide x 11 inch (279 mm) deep x 2.36 inch (60 mm) high (including controls), and 6.9 lbs. (3.13 kg.).
b. Forty (40) fader console shall be equal to or less than 26.31 inch (668mm) wide x 11 inch (279 mm) deep x 2.36 inch (60 mm) high (including controls) and 9.55 lbs. (4.33kg).
3. Twenty (20) fader console shall be able to be mounted into a 19 inch equipment rack with the use of additional mounting hardware.
4. Console power shall be 12V AC or DC via an external power unit. The power unit shall operate with 90-265V AC line voltage, 50 or 60Hz. Console is provided with a universal power supply.

2.4 DATA PLUG-IN STATIONS

A. General:
1. The Plug-in Stations shall consist of the appropriate connectors required for the functional intent of the system. Custom combinations and control connectors shall be available.
2. The following standard connectors shall be available:
a. 5-Pin male XLR connectors for DMX input.
b. RJ45 connectors for ETCNet connections - Twisted Pair.
3. Station faceplates shall be 0.80 inch aluminum, finished in fine texture, scratch-resistant black powder coat. Silk-screened graphics shall be white. The station panel shall mount into an industry standard back box appropriate for size and quantity of connectors. A terminal block shall be supplied for contractor terminations.

2.5 ARCHITECTURAL CONTROL BUTTON, BUTTON/FADER STATIONS

A. The Lighting Control Stations shall be the Unison Heritage UH Series Control Stations as manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., or equal.

B. Mechanical:
1. Unison Heritage Button and Button/Fader Stations shall operate using up to sixteen programmable faders and twelve programmable buttons.
2. All button/fader stations shall be available with white, cream, ivory, gray or black faceplates, fader knobs, and buttons.
a. Manufacturer's standard colors shall conform to the RAL CLASSIC Standard.
3. Stations shall have indicators lights at each button or fader.
a. Indicators shall be comprised of red, green, and blue LED's.
b. Indicator color and state (steady On, Blink, Off) shall be configured in software, and shall operate relative to the button or fader it is associated with.
4. All faceplates shall be designed for flush or surface mounting.
5. Station faceplates shall be constructed of ABS plastic and shall use no visible means of attachment.
6. Station faceplates shall be indelibly marked for each button or fader function.
7. The manufacturer shall supply back boxes for flush mounted half gang stations and for all surface mounted stations.

C. Functional:

1. The Unison Paradigm Control System shall be designed to allow control of lighting and associated systems via Button, Button/Fader, and Interface or Astronomical time clock controls. System shall allow the programming of presets, sequences, macros, and time clock events.
2. Station Button, Button/Fader, and Interface) control components shall be designed to operate standard default or custom system functions. Components shall operate default functions unless re-assigned via LightDesigner, the Windows-based configuration program.
3. Stations (Button and Button/Fader) shall allow programming of station and component electronic lockout levels via LightDesigner.

D. Electrical:
1. Unison control station wiring shall be an Echelon® Link power network.
   a. Link power shall utilize low-voltage Class II unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit).
   b. Touchscreen and Interface stations shall also require (2) #16 AWG stranded wires for 24Vdc operating power. 24Vdc wiring shall be topology free.
   c. Network wiring may be bus, loop, home run, star, or any combination of these.
   d. Network insulation displacement connectors shall be provided with all stations.

2.6 POWER DISTRIBUTION EQUIPMENT

A. Outlet and Pigtail Boxes:
1. Connectors shall be available as 20A, 50A and 100A grounded stage pin, 20A twist lock and 20A “U” ground (dual rated “T-slot”); other connectors shall be available as specified.
2. Outlet and pigtail boxes shall be supplied with appropriate brackets and hardware for mounting as shown on the Drawings.
3. A low voltage distribution system shall be available to incorporate DMX, Ethernet or other protocols as specified in the power distribution box.
4. Internal wiring shall be sized to circuit ampacity.
5. Circuits shall be labeled with 1.25 inch lettering.

2.7 THEATRICAL FIXTURES

A. Ellipsoidal: Color Mixing Light Emitting Diode Profile Fixture:
1. Basis of Design: ETC, Inc. - ColorSource Spot V and ColorSource Spot VXT as manufactured by ETC Inc.
   a. Brings together a five-color light engine with the build-quality and support of an ETC product. Uses a mix of red, green, blue, indigo and lime LED emitters. ETC optics, adapters, and accessories.
2. Standards Compliance:
   a. Listed: cETLus, UL 1598, UL 924, CSA C22.2 No. 250.0.
   b. Compliance: CE.
3. Model ColorSource Spot V with shutter barrel, black.
4. Source:
   a. LED Details: 60 Lumileds LUXEON Rebel and LUXEON C LEDs.
   b. Max Lumens: 9,300.
   c. Lumens per Watt: 47.2.
   d. L70 Rating: Greater than 54,000 hours.
5. Colors:
   a. Colors Used Spot: Red, green, blue, indigo, lime.
   b. Color temperature Range: Color mixing.
   c. Calibrated Array: Yes.

d. Red Shift: No.

6. Optical:
   a. Beam Angle Range: 5 to 90 degrees. Swappable lens tubes.
   b. Gate Size: 80 mm.
   c. Aperture Size: 6.25 to 14 inches depending on lend tube.
   d. Pattern Projection: Yes.
   e. Pattern Size: A or B.
   f. Camera Flicker Control/Hz Range: 5 kHz and 25 kHz.
7. Control:
   a. Input Method:
      1) DMX-512 via 5-pin XLR connector.
         a) Protocols: DMX512, RDM.
      2) City Theatrical Multiverse.
         a) Protocols: DMX512, RDM.
   b. NFC Configuration: Yes, via Set Light app.
   c. RDM Configuration: Yes.
   d. User Interface Type:
      1) ColorSource Spot V: 7-segment 3 button interface.
   e. Local Control: Yes. ColorSource Spot V only.
   f. Onboard Features:
      1) Onboard Presets: Yes, 12.
      2) Onboard Sequences: Yes, 5.
      3) Onboard Effects: No.
   g. Fixture-to-Fixture Control: Yes.
   h. 15-bit virtual dimming engine.
8. Electrical:
   a. Voltage: 100 to 240 VAC, 50 to 60 Hz.
   b. Input Method: PowerCON True1 TOP in and thru.
   c. Inrush First Half Cycle: 55 A at 120 V. 59 A at 240 V.
   d. Fixtures per Circuit:
      1) Eight. R20 module or similar.
9. Thermal:
   a. Operating Temperature: 32 to 104 degrees F.
   b. Fan: Yes, and controllable.
   c. Droop Compensation: Yes.
   d. BTUs/hour: 671.77.
10. Physical:
   a. IP Rating:
      1) ColorSource Spot V: IP-20.
      2) ColorSource Spot VXT: IP-65.
   b. Materials: Die-cast aluminum.
      1) Colors: Black, white, silver, or custom.
   c. Mounting Options: Yoke.
   d. Included Accessories: Hanging yoke, 39 inch power cable, soft-focus diffuser in an A-size gobo holder.

B. Color Mixing Light Emitting Diode Wash Fixture:
1. General:
   a. The fixture shall be a color-mixing LED fixture with DMX control of intensity as well as color changing. The fixture shall be a ColorSource Par or Colorsource Par Deep Blue as manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc. or approved equal.
   b. All LED fixtures shall be provided by a single manufacturer to ensure compatibility.

c. The fixture shall be UL 1573 listed for stage and studio use.
d. The fixture shall comply with USITT DMX-512 A.

2. Physical:
   a. The unit shall be black in color and contained in a rugged all-metal extruded and formed-metal housing, free of burrs and pits.
   b. Power supply, cooling and electronics shall be integral to each unit.
   c. Fixture housing shall provide two easy-access slots for secondary lenses and other accessories:
      1) Slots shall be equipped with locking retaining clip.
   d. The unit shall ship with:
      1) Theatrical style hanging yoke as standard.
      2) 5 ft power lead with Edison connector as standard.
   e. Available options shall include but not be limited to the following:
      1) Floor stand conversion Kit.
      2) Bare-end, Stage-Pin or Twist-lock type-equipped power leads.
      3) PowerCon to PowerCon cables for fixture power linking.
      4) Multiple secondary lens options to include multiple angles.
   f. Light output shall be via a round aperture:
      1) Aperture and accessory slots shall accommodate standard 7.5 inch accessories such as used in other similar-sized fixtures.
      2) Accessories available as options.

3. Environmental and Agency Compliance:
   a. The fixture shall operate in an ambient temperature range of 1°C (34°F) minimum, to 40°C (104°F) maximum ambient temperature. The fixture shall be rated for IP-20 dry location use.
   b. The fixture shall utilize advanced thermal management systems for long LED life.
   c. The fixture shall be ETL and cETL LISTED, and shall be so labeled when delivered to the job site. The fixture shall be ETL LISTED to UL1573.

4. Electrical:
   a. The fixture shall be equipped with 100V to 240V 50/60 Hz internal power supply.
   b. The fixture shall receive power via Neutrik® PowerCon™ input connector.
   c. The fixture requires power from non-dim source.
   d. Power/data supply outputs shall have current limiting protection.
   e. Power/data supply shall come with a housing that meets a minimum IP20 rating for dry location installation.

5. LED Emitters:
   a. The fixture shall contain 4 different LED colors to provide color characteristics as described in Section H below.
   b. All LEDs used in the fixture shall be high brightness and proven quality from established and reputable LED manufacturers.
      1) Fixture shall utilize Luxeon® Z™ LED emitters.
   c. Manufacturer of LED systems shall utilize an advanced production LED binning process to maintain color consistency.
   d. LED emitters should be rated for nominal 20,000 hour LED life.
   e. All LED fixtures (100% of each lot) shall undergo a minimum eight-hour burn-in test during manufacturing.
   f. LED system shall comply with all relevant patents.

6. Calibration:
   a. Fixture shall be calibrated at factory for achieve consistent color between fixtures built at different times and/or from different LED lots or bins.

1) Calibration data shall be stored in the fixture as a permanent part of on-board operating system.
2) All arrays, including replacement arrays shall be calibrated to the same standard to insure consistency.
3) Fixtures not offering LED calibration shall not be acceptable.

7. Color:
   a. The fixture shall utilize a minimum of 40 LED emitters.
      1) These emitters shall be made up of Red, Green, Blue and Lime for ColorSource.
      2) These emitters shall be made up of Red, Green, Indigo and Lime for ColorSource Deep Blue.
8. Dimming:
   a. The LED system shall use 15-bit nonlinear scaling techniques for high-resolution dimming.
   b. The dimming curve shall be optimized for smooth dimming over longer timed fades.
   c. The LED system shall be digitally driven using high-speed pulse width modulation (PWM).
   d. LED control shall be compatible with broadcast equipment.
      1) PWM control of LED levels shall be imperceptible to video cameras and related equipment.
   e. The LED system shall be digitally driven using high-speed pulse width modulation (PWM).
9. Control and User Interface:
   a. The fixture shall be USITT DMX 512A-compatible via "IN" and "THRU" 5-pin XLR connectors.
   b. The fixture shall be compatible with the ANSI RDM E1.20 standard.
      1) All fixture functions shall be accessible via RDM protocol for modification from suitably equipped control console.
      2) Temperature sensors within the luminaire shall be viewable in real time via RDM.
      3) Fixtures not offering RDM compatibility, feature set access or temperature monitoring via RDM shall not be compatible.
   c. The fixture shall be equipped with a 7-segment display for easy-to-read status and control.
   d. The fixture shall be equipped with a three-button user-interface.
   e. The fixture shall offer RGB control.
   f. The fixture shall operate in Regulated mode for droop compensation.
   g. The fixture shall offer stand-alone functionality eliminating the need for a console.
      1) Fixture shall ship with 12 preset colors accessible as a stand-alone feature.
      2) Fixture shall ship with 5 sequences accessible as a stand-alone feature.
      3) Each color and sequence can be modified by the end user via RDM.
      4) Fixtures can be linked together with standard DMX cables and controlled from designated master fixture.
      5) Fixtures in a stand-alone state shall restore to the settings present prior to power cycling, eliminating the need for reprogramming.
      6) Fixtures that do not provide regulated and protected operation modes are not acceptable.

C. Color Mixing Light Emitting Diode Linear Fixture:
   1. General:

a. The fixture shall be a color-mixing high-intensity LED illuminator with DMX control of intensity and color. The fixture shall be a ColorSource Linear 1, 2, or 4 as manufactured by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc. or approved equal.
b. All LED fixtures shall be provided by a single manufacturer to ensure compatibility.
c. The fixture shall be UL 1573 listed for stage and studio use.
d. The fixture shall comply with the USITT DMX-512 A standard.

2. Physical:
a. The fixture shall be contained in a rugged all-metal diecast and/or sheet metal housing, free of burrs and pits.
b. The housing shall have a rugged black powdercoat finish.
1) White or silver/gray powdercoat finishes shall be available as color options.
2) Other powdercoat color options shall be available on request.
c. Power supply, cooling and electronics shall be integral to each unit.
d. The ColorSource Linear shall be available in 3 lengths.
1) Linear 1 shall be 0.5 meters.
2) Linear 2 shall be 1 meter.
3) Linear 3 shall be 2 meters.
e. Fixture housing shall provide two easy-access slots for secondary lenses and other accessories.
1) Slots shall be equipped with locking cover on both ends of the fixture.
f. Each LED optic shall be spaced for optimal photometric performance.
1) The units shall allow for being placed end to end while maintaining optical spacing to prevent scalloping between fixtures.
g. The unit shall ship with:
1) 2 x Floor stand trunnions that can accommodate c-clamps for hanging.
2) 5 ft power lead with Edison connector as standard.
h. Available options shall include but not be limited to the following:
1) Bare-end, Stage-Pin or Twist-lock type-equipped power leads.
2) Original or Deep Blue LED array
i. Accessories available as options shall include but not be limited to the following:
1) Hanging yoke for the Linear 1.
2) Double hanging yoke for the Linear 1.
3) PowerCon to PowerCon cables for fixture power linking.
4) Multiple secondary lens options to include multiple angles in the following patterns:
a) Horizontal.
b) Vertical.
c) Round.
5) Barn doors.
6) Egg crate louvers.

3. Environmental and Agency Compliance:
a. The fixture shall be UL and cUL LISTED and/or CE rated and shall be so labeled when delivered to the job site.
b. The fixture shall be UL LISTED to the UL1573 standard for stage and studio use.
c. The fixture shall be rated for IP-20 dry location use.

4. Thermal:
a. The fixture shall be cooled with a variable speed fan.
b. The fixture shall utilize advanced thermal management systems to maintain LED life to an average of 70% intensity after 20,000 hours of use.

1) Thermal management shall include multiple temperature sensors within the housing to include:
   a) The LED array.
   b) The control board.

c. The fixture shall operate in an ambient temperature range of 0° C (32° F) minimum, to 40° C (104° F) maximum ambient temperature.

5. Electrical:
   a. The fixture shall be equipped with 100V to 240V 50/60 Hz internal power supply.
   b. The fixture shall support power in and thru operation.
      1) Power in shall be via Neutrik® PowerCon™ input connector.
      2) Power thru shall be via Neutrik ® PowerCon ™ output connector.
      3) Fixture power wiring and accessory power cables shall be rated to support linking of multiple fixtures up to the capacity of a 15A breaker.
   c. The fixture requires power from non-dim source.
   d. Power supply outputs shall have self-resetting current limiting protection.
   e. Power supply shall have power factor correction.
6. LED Emitters:
   a. The fixture shall contain 4 different LED colors to provide color characteristics as described in Section H below.
   b. All LEDs used in the fixture shall be high brightness and proven quality from established and reputable LED manufacturers.
      1) Fixture shall utilize Luxeon® Z™ LED emitters.
   c. Manufacturer of LED emitters shall utilize an advanced production LED binning process to maintain color consistency.
   d. LED emitters should be rated for nominal 20,000 hour LED life to 70% intensity.
   e. LED system shall comply with all relevant patents.
7. Calibration:
   a. Fixture shall be calibrated at factory to achieve consistent color between fixtures built at different times and/or from different LED lots or bins.
      1) Calibration data shall be stored in the fixture as a permanent part of on-board operating system.
      2) All arrays, including replacement arrays shall be calibrated to the same standard to insure consistency.
      3) Fixtures not offering LED calibration shall not be acceptable.
8. Color:
   a. The fixture shall utilize a minimum of 40 LED emitters.
      1) These emitters shall be made up of Red, Green, Blue and Lime.
         a) Deep Blue arrays use Indigo in place of Blue.
9. Dimming:
   a. The LED system shall use 15-bit nonlinear scaling techniques for high-resolution dimming.
   b. The dimming curve shall be optimized for smooth dimming over longer timed fades while responding quickly to bumps.
   c. The LED system shall be digitally driven using high-speed pulse width modulation (PWM).
   d. LED control shall be compatible with broadcast equipment in the following ways:
      1) PWM control of LED levels shall be imperceptible to video cameras and related equipment.
      2) PWM rates shall be adjustable by the user via RDM to avoid any visible interference to video cameras and related equipment.

10. Control and User Interface:
    a. The fixture shall be USITT DMX 512A-compatible via "IN" and "THRU" 5-pin XLR connectors.
    b. Each half meter in length shall be individually addressable and controllable.
    c. The fixture shall be compatible with the ANSI E1.20 RDM standard.
        1) All fixture functions shall be accessible via RDM protocol for modification from suitably equipped control console.
        2) Temperature sensors within the luminaire shall be viewable in real time via RDM.
        3) Fixtures not offering RDM compatibility, feature set access or temperature monitoring via RDM shall not be compatible.
    d. The fixture shall be equipped with a 7-segment display for easy-to-read status and control.
    e. The fixture shall be equipped with a three-button user-interface.
        1) 4 buttons on the Liner 2 and 4 to allow for Cell/Group control selection.
    f. The fixture shall offer RGB, IRGBS, Direct and Single Channel control.
    g. The fixture shall operate in Regulated mode for droop compensation.
    h. The fixture shall offer stand-alone functionality eliminating the need for a console.
        1) Fixture shall ship with 12 preset colors accessible as a stand-alone feature.
            a) Built in UI shall allow for setting level of these presets.
        2) Fixture shall ship with 5 Sequences accessible as a stand-alone feature.
        3) Each color and sequence can be modified by the end user.
        4) Fixtures can be linked together with standard DMX cables and controlled from designated master fixture.
            a) Up to 32 fixtures may be linked.
        5) Fixtures in a stand-alone state shall restore to the settings present prior to power cycling, eliminating the need for reprogramming.
        6) Fixtures without stand-alone operation features described above shall not be acceptable.

2.8 EQUIPMENT LIST

A. The Theatrical System Integrator (TSI) is to provide the following:

Qty	Item	Description
1	DRd-24	Installed Rack with 12 Modules / 24 Circuits
1	FLO	Fluorescent Option Board
1	P-ACP	Paradigm Architectural Control Processor
1	P-SPM	Paradigm Station Power Module
11	R20	2.4kw Dual 20A Relay Module (include one spare)
3	AFM	Air Flow Module (include one spare)
1		Wall Mount Opto Splitter
1	CS40	Color Source 40 Lighting Console
1		25 ft Console Cable
2	ECPB DMXIn	1-Gang Input Plate w/ (1) DMX In
1	ECPB DMXOut	1-Gang Output Plate w/ (1) DMX Out
3	UH10007	7-Button Station
1	UH30407	Paradigm 4 Fader 7 Button Station
1	Lot	Outlet Boxes as noted on Drawings
1	Lot	Control Cable

B. Theatrical Lighting Fixtures and Accessories:
1. The Theatrical System Integrator (TSI) is to provide the following:

Qty	Item	Description
18	CSSPOTVMVS	ColorSource Spot V with Multiverse, with shutter barrel, black
10	LT	EDLT Lens Tube as required by site conditions
12	CSPARDB	ColorSource PAR Deep Blue
10	Lens Sets	ETC Lenses (Provide Lenses as noted on plans)
9	CSLINEARDB	ColorSource LINEAR Deep Blue
9	Lens Sets	ETC Lenses (Provide Lenses as noted on plans)
32	DMX-5P-10	5-Pin DMX Extension Cables - 10 ft. each
5	DMX-5P-25	5-Pin DMX Extension Cables - 25 ft. each
5	DMX5P-TERM	5-Pin DMX Terminator
1	Lot	PowerCon Jumper Cables as required
1		Safety Cable for each fixture
8		Spare Safety Cables for fixtures
1		Lens for each PAR Deep Blue fixture
4		Spare Lenses for each PAR Deep Blue fixture

2.9 RIGGING MOTORIZED HOIST

A. General:
1. Hoists shall be purpose-designed and fabricated for overhead lifting of theatre lights, equipment, curtains and scenic elements, whether used on stage, in the auditorium or other places of public assembly where people shall move beneath the suspended or moving load. The systems shall incorporate mechanical, electrical and safety features that shall be inherent to this equipment; they shall provide an engineered, efficient device for overhead lifting. Hoists shall be FlyPipe by ETC, Inc., or approved equal.
2. Anodization as required under this Section shall be the manufacturer's standard finish and color except as noted.
3. All equipment items shall be new and conform to applicable provisions of Underwriters' Laboratories (UL 1340), American National Standards Institute (ANSI E1.6-1:2018, and C63.4:2014), and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA 70).
4. Where acceptable equipment items are specified by catalog number only, device shall meet all published manufacturer's specifications. Where quantities or sizes are not given, refer to Drawings. Where two or more products are listed, the Theatrical Systems Integrator may use either, at their discretion. Equipment shall not be substituted without specific written approval by the Architect under the substitution paragraphs of these specifications.
5. Provided wire rope shall be galvanized.
6. All materials used in this project shall be new, unused and of the latest design. Refurbished materials are not permitted.
7. Minimum Standards of Safety: Minimum design factor of 10 shall be required for all equipment and hardware used on this project. In addition, the following factors shall be used:
   a. Cables and Fittings: 10:1 Design Factor.
   b. Cable Bending Ratio: 25 times diameter.
   c. Maximum Fleet Angle: Zero (0) degrees.

B. Hoists
1. Hoist shall be self-climbing with a maximum supported travel of 50 ft.
   a. Hoists which are not self-climbing shall not be acceptable.

2. Each dual 1/8 inch wire rope lift line sets shall adhere to a design factor of 10:1 with an ultimate combined strength of 4,200 pounds.
3. Configured hoists components shall be capable of supporting a total live load of 500 pounds suspended from the batten as follows:
   a. General purpose FlyPipe Drive Section shall measure 26.25 inches high x 14 inches wide x 11 ft - 0.5 inch long and weigh 140 pounds.
   b. General purpose FlyPipe End Section shall measure 12 inches high x 5.5 inches wide x 7 ft - 1.5 inches long and weigh 40 pounds.
   c. General purpose FlyPipe Span Section shall measure 12 inches high x 5.5 inches wide x 10 ft long and weigh 60 pounds.
4. The FlyPipe self-climbing hoist shall consist of the following major components:
   a. Motor Section.
   b. Span Sections (if required).
   c. End Section.
   d. A set of TwinLines (dual 1/8 inch GAC lift lines) per section.
   e. One TwinLine Clamp per set of lift lines.
   f. Pipe batten (if required).
5. Integrated into the bottom of the FlyPipe sections will be an aluminum strut-compatible channel. The channel shall support point loads up to 250 pounds.
   a. Hoists which do not support direct connection of stage equipment or lighting fixtures shall not be acceptable.
6. The hoist shall be manufactured from UL Listed components and shall be UL Listed and tested as a complete system (not just UL listed parts).

C. Drive Section:
1. The Drive Section shall include a fully enclosed, powder coated sheet metal housing that shall prevent contact with moving and electrical parts and shall provide protection against dirt, dust, and debris.
2. The Drive Section shall contain the following elements: Gear motor, motor brake, limit switches, remote operating electronics, slack line detector, position sensor, cable drum assembly, and wire rope.
3. The hoist shall incorporate a built-in slack line sensor.
4. The hoist shall include the emergency contactor built into the hoist.
5. The following functions shall be available: Operating switches, address setting knobs, limit switch override buttons, indicators for power, status, and communication. Each of these functions shall be clearly labeled.

D. Gearmotor And Motor Brake:
1. The gear motor and motor brake shall be an integral unit from a single manufacturer. It shall operate on 208 Volt or 480 Volt 60 Hz 3-phase power.
2. The motor brake shall be integral to the gear motor and shall be capable of holding 125% of the motor full load torque.
3. The motor brake shall be electro-magnetically held open, and spring actuated to apply and hold braking force.

E. Over Speed Load Arrest Brake:
1. The over speed mechanism shall detect a runaway condition and trigger a load arresting device to stop the load.
2. Noise from the over speed brake shall not be audible at any time in the operational cycle of the hoist.
3. Normal hoist operation shall not be limited by heat or noise caused by the load brake.

F. Wire Rope Drum:
1. Each Drive, Span, and End Section shall contain one drum.

2. Each drum shall accommodate two, 1/8 inch diameter, 7 x 19 galvanized aircraft (utility) wire rope lift lines, up to 50 ft long in a compact manner on the cable drum. The drum design shall prevent wire rope from tangling or crossing over itself.

G. Limit Switch:
1. A limit switch assembly shall be mounted within the Drive Section for hard “normal” and “ultimate” end of travel limits. Hard end of travel limits shall be set/adjusted at the time of installation.
   a. Installation shall be aided by an indicator light visible on a panel of the Drive Section enclosure. Any system that indicates that the limit is set only by audible or tactile means only shall not be acceptable.

H. Position Sensor:
1. A position sensing system shall be built into the Drive Section to provide accurate position information. The system shall consist of an encoder sensor that provides accurate position information for each batten at power-up of the system, and continually throughout its normal operation. Hoisting systems that require re-homing shall not be acceptable.

I. Slack Line Detector:
1. The slack line detector shall be built into the Drive Section. When a slack line condition in excess of 24 inches develops in a lift line, the slack line detector shall remove power from the hoist. The hoist shall be allowed to move only in the upward direction to allow removal of the cause of the slack line fault.

J. Local User Interface:
1. User interface located on the Drive Section shall include:
   a. Hoist Up/Down Control.
   b. Limit Switch Override buttons (tool accessible).
   c. Address switches.
   d. Status LED’s.

K. Information Storage Within Drive Section:
1. Record of severe fault conditions with date and time stamp.
2. Record of E-stops, overloads, moves and power cycles.
3. Record of travel distance since installation/inspection.

L. Hoist Power and Control Cables:
1. Each Drive Section shall require a power cord and Cat 5e (or better) connected between receptacles mounted in the hoist and hoist Power and Communication Distribution (PCD) equipment by ETC. Inclusion of a 20 amp 3-phase breaker in the PCD is optional. PCD equipment shall incorporate a barrier between high and low voltage components. Proper strain relief at the Drive Section shall be provided.

M. Pipe Batten:
1. A pipe batten with a 48.3 mm outside diameter constructed of 3.8 mm extruded aluminum with a 3.8 mm vertical web shall be available for use with the hoist.
2. The pipe batten shall be extruded with a witness line to indicate the position of the web.
3. The pipe batten shall support a maximum distributed load of 150 lbs (68 kg) over a 10 ft (305 cm) span.
4. The pipe batten shall support a maximum point load of 65 lbs (29 kg) over a 10 ft (305 cm) span.
5. The pipe batten shall weigh no more than 1.5 lbs/ft; battens that weigh more than 1.5 lbs/ft shall not be acceptable.
6. The pipe batten shall be designed to a 10:1 safety factor.
7. The pipe batten shall be finished with black hard coat anodization.

N. Power and Control Distribution:
   1. The hoist and hoist cable management system shall allow for the attachment of dedicated circuit and data distribution equipment.
   2. The circuit and data distribution equipment shall be UL Listed for this application.

O. Cable Management:
   1. Supplied motor power and control wiring shall be fed to the motor control enclosure by multi-conductor SO cable and Cat 5e (or better) cable. Each cable shall be held in place at the enclosure by means of a dedicated strain relief assembly.

P. Helix Cable Management for Electrics:
   1. The load circuits and data wiring shall be fed to the power distribution equipment by one or more UL Listed helix cable management systems. The helix shall allow the feeder cable and data wiring to stack and store without imposing a direct physical load on the connector strip.
   2. The helix shall consist of a series of steel ribs connected to each other with nylon straps to allow the entire distance of travel required by the batten, up to 50 ft.
   3. The nylon straps shall attach directly to building structure. At the bottom, the helix shall be attached to a steel plate in a manner that imposes no additional physical load on the power distribution equipment.
   4. The helix shall support two pairs of cables:
      a. One hoist power and data pair with factory-installed connectors at each end.
      b. One distribution power and data pair which shall be unterminated. Distribution power cable shall support either three or six 20A circuits. Circuits may be 120V, 208V, or a combination of the two. Data distribution cable shall be a single Cat 5e which may be used to transmit either DMX or Ethernet.
      c. Hoist power and distribution equipment power cables be multi-conductor SO cable. The SO cables and data cables shall be held in place by means of a dedicated strain relief assembly.
      d. All cables shall be UL Listed.
      e. The helix shall support each pair on opposite ends of each steel rib, managing the cables within required NEC bending radii.
      f. The ribs shall stack/separate as the batten is lowered/raised and shall not impede the movement of the line set.
      g. Cables supported by the helix shall never heat greater than the rated temperature maximum of the cable when all circuits are loaded at maximum electrical capacity.
      h. Circuit and data terminations between the helix and distribution equipment shall be performed in the field.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify that field measurements are as required.

C. Verify that existing construction, surfaces, and conditions are ready to accept the work of this Section.

D. Plans and Layout Drawings: Verify that the submitted plans and layout drawings have been approved as indicated in PART 1, SUBMITTALS article of this Section.

E. Examine products to be installed for damage and other conditions detrimental to completion of the Work.

F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution: Prepare field conditions and existing construction for installation of work of this Section.

B. Prepare materials to be installed and equipment to be used during installation.

C. Examine inserts, clips, blocking, or other supports required to be installed by others to support tracks and battens. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution: Related to installation of Work.

B. Install all products, components, and systems according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 ENERGIZATION

A. A qualified Engineering Representative employed full time by the manufacturer shall visit the job site after the installation is complete and prior to the energization of the system to inspect, test and adjust the system. Refer to DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING article in this Section for providing training for the Owner's representatives in the operation and maintenance of the systems.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution and Section 01 77 00 - Closeout Procedures:

B. Clean installed work in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations including cleaning procedures and materials.

3.6 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution: Protecting installed construction.

B. After installation, protect any installed components from damage during construction. If damage occurs, despite such protection, remove and replace damaged components or entire unit as required to provide units in their original, undamaged condition.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training: Provide demonstration and training to the Owner regarding operation and maintenance of components of the installed Work.

B. Training Sessions: At least fourteen (14) days prior to training sessions, coordinate and schedule training sessions with required participants including Owner's representatives. Theatrical Systems Integrator is to provide two (2) training sessions, each to be four (4) hours, and for up to four (4) Owner representatives. Training beyond the total eight (8) hours is to be at additional cost and is to be pre-approved by Owner.

C. Training is to be for the Work provided for the following Specification Sections:
1. Section 26 55 61.10 - Auditorium Theatrical Lighting Systems.
2. Section 11 61 43 - Stage Curtains.

3.8 MANUFACTURER SERVICES

A. Service shall be provided directly by the manufacturer and is to be provided within twenty-four (24) hours.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 00 00

BASIC TELECOMMUNICATIONS REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Provide a complete passive structured cabling system consisting of Category 6A horizontal cabling for workstation, phone, camera and additional network connected devices. Horizontal cabling shall be terminated and tested and installed in their respective faceplate and patch panel. A fiber, backbone system shall be provided from the incoming service location indicated on the drawings and to interconnect internal Telecommunications rooms. Backbone cabling shall be terminated and tested and installed in their respective enclosures. The structured cabling system shall also consist of the Telecommunications Room Buildout. Room buildout shall include all plywood backboard, runway cable tray, cable strain relief supports, equipment racks, enclosures, patch panels, wire management and any additional items to provide a complete passive system. Servers, switches, and other active electronics shall be owner provided. WAP devices shall be owner furnished, contractor installed.

1.2 APPLICABLE CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All work shall conform to the latest standards and codes of the following organizations and publications as applicable.

B. When a conflict occurs, follow the most stringent requirements.

C. Codes and Standards:
1. NFPA - National Fire Code
2. NEC - National Electrical Code
3. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
4. ANSI/NECA/BICSI 568
5. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association
6. TIA-568-C - Commercial Building Standards for Telecommunications
7. TIA-569-D - Commercial Building Standards for Pathways and Spaces
8. TIA-606-B - Administration
9. BICSI TDMM - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual
10. BISCI CO-OSP - Customer-owned Outside Plant Design Manual
11. TDMM - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual
12. EIA - Electronic Industries Association
13. FCC - Federal Communications Commission
14. ICBO - International Conference of ICBO Building Officials
15. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineer
16. IBC - International Building Code
17. All local codes and regulations

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS

A. Abbreviations: The following abbreviations or initials may be used:
1. ABV CLG - Above Ceiling
2. AC - Alternating Current
3. ADA - American Disabilities Act

4. AFF - Above Finished Floor
5. AFG - Above Finished Grade
6. AMP - Ampere
7. AWG - American Wire Gauge
8. BC - Bare Copper
9. CCTV - Closed Circuit Television
10. CATV - Community antenna television
11. CLG - Ceiling
12. COAX - Coaxial Cable
13. CPU - Central Processing Unit
14. DC - Direct Current
15. DEG - Degree
16. EMT - Electrical Metallic Tubing
17. GND - Ground
18. IDF - Intermediate Distribution Frame (Telecom Room)
19. IMC - Intermediate Metallic Conduit
20. IN - Inches
21. IP - Internet Protocol
22. JB - Junction Box
23. KVA - Kilo-Volt-Amps
24. KW - Kilowatts
25. LBS - Pounds
26. LED - Light Emitting Diode
27. MAX - Maximum
28. MDF - Main Distribution Frame (Main Telecom Room)
29. MIC - Microphone
30. MIN - Minimum
31. MTD - Mounted
32. MTG - Mounting
33. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association
34. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association
35. NIC - Not in Contract
36. OFE - Owner furnished equipment
37. OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration
38. PB - Push button
39. PWR - Power
40. PVC - Polyvinylchloride
41. SCS - Structured Cabling System
42. EF - Telecommunications Entrance Facility
43. TR - Telecommunications Room
44. TTB - Telephone Terminal Board
45. UON – Unless Otherwise Noted
46. V - Volt
47. WAP - Wireless Access Point
48. WP - Weatherproof

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Quality assurance:

1. Installers Qualifications: Contractor with a minimum of five years documented successful installation experience on projects utilizing cabling infrastructure work similar to that required for this project. The contractor shall be an experienced firm regularly engaged in the layout and the installation of cabling infrastructure systems. The contractor must be able to show evidence that he has successfully completed projects of similar size and scope in the last 12 months. The contractor shall be a manufacturer certified Business Partner, CVA, or for the TE solution the installers, supervisors, registered certifier, and designers to have a current valid certification card.

    a. The Network Communications project manager must have experience in this type of project and he/she expected to provide technical support.
    b. The Network Communications project manager shall attend the monthly progress meetings held by the state and additional meetings as scheduled or required.
    c. BICSI registration must be current and the installer and technicians must be in good standing.
    d. During the shop drawing process, provide copies of all manufacturer and BICSI certifications, the contractor shall meet the following criteria: 15% of work force shall be BICSI certified ‘Technician level or better (RCDD). 15% of work force shall be BICSI certified Installer level 2 or higher; 15% of work force shall be BICSI certified installer level 1 or of equivalent experience/training.
    e. Contractor employees will wear visible ID badges on the job site with current picture and company name at all times.

B. Application Assurance:

1. Covers failure of the channel SCS to operate the applications, that the Solution is to support, as well as additional application(s) included in the numbered list. Manufacturer warrants that the registered channel SCS solution will be free from failures which prevent operation of the specific applications for which the original channel SCS was designed.

C. The Application Assurance Program also covers the following additional applications:

1. Those identified in the current (at the time of installation) channel SCS Performance Specifications
2. In accordance with application standards specifications, any applications introduced in the future by recognized standards or user forums that use TIA/EIA 568 or ISO/IEC 11801 components and link/channel specifications for cabling.
3. The contractor’s certifications are current for the manufacturer’s solution installation. The contractor shall provide standards compliant, warranted, end-to-end channel solution for structured cabling solutions.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer Warranty

1. Contractor shall provide a minimum Twenty (20) year cabling Extended Product Warranty and Application Assurance.
2. The warranty will support any performance claims the manufacturer makes over and above the Category 6A standards stated herein.
3. A Warranty statement from the Manufacturer stating the period of the warranty for all the products specified for the project and the name and address of the authorized manufacturers agent who will honor the warranty claims.

B. Extended Product Warranty

1. The Extended Product Warranty will cover product defects for all passive manufactured channel components. Passive components are those exhibiting no gain or contributing no energy.
2. Manufacturer warrants, from the date a Registration Certificate passes to the end-user, the following:
   a. That the passive products that comprise the registered Channel solution will be free from manufacturing defects in material or workmanship under normal and proper use;
   b. That all channel approved passive cabling products that comprise the registered channel solution exceed the specification of TIA 568 and exceed ISO/IEC 11801 standards and will be equal to or exceed to the performance specifications of the associated Communication product data sheet in effect at the time the Registration Certificate is issued;
   c. That the installation will exceed the insertion and return loss, attenuation and near end cross talk (NEXT) requirements of TIA 568-B and the ISO/IEC 11801 standards for cabling links/channel configurations specified in these standards.
   d. That each channel is comprised exclusively of a single manufacturer solution and is capable of delivering 1.2 Gbps (Cat 5e), 3.6 Gbps (Cat 6) or 10 Gbps (Cat 6A) to the workstations or WAPs in accordance with applications standards.
   e. This extended Product Warranty is applicable to the channel cabling solution products only on the original site of installation. Under the Extended Product Warranty, Manufacturer will either repair or replace the defective product itself at Manufacturers' cost. The U.S.A., Manufacturer will pay an Authorized cable installation Reseller for the cost of labor to repair or replace any such defective product on behalf of Manufacturer.
   f. Corning Cable Systems LANscape solutions "landscape extended warranty" a 25-year guarantee on complete fiber optic cabling solutions. The telecom contractor shall be an authorized Corning Cabling Systems extended warranty (NPI) installer.

C. Additional Warranty

1. Contractor shall state any additional Contractor supplied warranty. This contractor warrants the Network communications cabling infrastructure system to be free of defects in the materials and workmanship for the period of one year after the date of final payment. The effective date of this warranty applies to all components of these systems regardless of any equipment manufacturer's warranties, which may expire at an earlier date. Any system malfunctions or any previously undiscovered non- compliance with the plans and specifications during the warranty period are repaired at no cost to the Owner are brought into compliance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

C. Comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems."

2.3 GROUNDING & BONDING

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

2.4 CABLE TRAYS & PATHWAYS

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 05 36 "Identification for Communications Systems."

B. Maintain fire ratings at all floor and wall penetrations by providing UL listed, fire-rated, telecommunications pathway devices.

C. Provide UL listed, fire-rated, devices at all locations required by NFPA regulatory codes.

1. Devices must be tested in accordance with ASTM E 814 (ANSI/UL1479).

D. Conduits:

1. See Section 26 05 33 “Raceway and Boxes”. Comply with most stringent requirements where differences occur.
2. All interior telecommunications conduits shall be, at minimum, 1-1/4” EMT conduits unless otherwise noted in project documents.
3. Achieve the best direct route (e.g., usually parallel to building lines)
4. No bend greater than 90 degrees or an aggregate of bends in excess of 180 degrees between pull points or pull boxes.
5. Contain no continuous sections longer than 30.5 m (100 ft.).
6. Conduit bonding is to ground on one or both ends in accordance with national or local requirements.
7. Conduit type selection is to withstand the environment and meet code for installation.
8. For runs that total more than 30.5 m (100 ft.) in length, pull points or pull boxes installed so that no segment between points/boxes exceeds the 30.5 m (100 ft.) limit. Total conduit runs kept to 45.8 m (150 ft.) or less (including the sections through pull boxes).
9. Install nylon pullstring with >200 lbs tensile strength in all installed conduits.
10. 4” Entrance conduits shall each be provided with (3) 1.25” Innerducts.

2.5 COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 11 16 "Communications Racks, Frames, and Enclosures."

2.6 COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 13 23 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."

2.7 COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 15 13 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and latest TIA-569 standard for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.

2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating Between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating Between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating Between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.

5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.

6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.2 APPLICATION

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. All testing equipment must be using the latest manufacturer firmware.
2. All testing equipment must have been calibrated within the last year.
3. All testing equipment must meet or exceed the owner's minimum testing requirements.
4. All testing must meet manufacturer's warranty requirements.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect all components for defects prior to installation. Defective materials to be replaced at no cost to owner.

2. Verify workmanship of installed components meets owner's requirements and standards. Owner and/or owners' representative to give final approval of installed systems prior to turnover to owner.

3. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

    a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

5. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.

    a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB and in each TGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

D. Copper category 5e and/or 6 channels shall be tested as appropriate, with only PASSing values accepted, using a TIA-568-compliant Cat 6 Time-Domain Reflectometer. Copper category 6A channels shall be tested, with only PASSing values accepted, using a TIA-568-compliant Augmented Cat 6 (Cat 6A) Time-Domain Reflectometer.

E. Horizontal Cable Testing

1. Channel testing: Each equipment Network communications room patch cord, patch panel, horizontal cable, RJ 45 jack, Station patch cord will be tested end- to- end for compliance with category 6 level III parameters as stated in the TIA- 568 family of standards. Only certified cat 6-cable testing allowed on each all beyond cat 6 cables. The Test equipment used for horizontal category six cable tests complies with the industry standard Category 6 cable testers level III and comply with TIA test procedures. Each link shall be tested to TIA-568-C pinout, with only PASS results accepted. The contractor, at no charge to the owner, shall bring any pairs not meeting the requirements of the standard into compliance and complete end-to-end test results documentation to the owner. The test results will require 2-cd copies.

F. Fiber Optic Testing

1. Each 62.5 OR 50/125-micron fiber will be tested patch panel to patch panel at the 850 and 1300 nm wavelength in both directions using a OTDR and OLTS (Power Meter). Launch conditions must utilize the encircled flux metric. Each single mode fiber will be tested patch panel to patch panel at the 1310 and 1550 nm wavelength both directions using a light meter. The maximum total attenuation for any single fiber between patch panels will not exceed 2.0 db.
2. Power meter tests: For building risers, power meter tests are required.
3. Provide an OLTS and OTDR test for length, attenuation, and micro bends for each individual fiber. Documentation will include the OLTS and OTDR results.
4. Test results included for inclusion into the documentation package.
5. Link attenuation does not include any active devices or passive devices other than cable connectors and splices.
6. A final report shall be complied that records system configuration, fiber labels, cable routes, and as-builts details and as-built drawings.

G. Computer Generated Report

1. All cables/connectors shall be tested provide test equipment generated print out for each cable/connector, indicating that the channel end-to-end solution has passed or failed.
2. Test results:
   a. Provide digital copy on USB.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 26

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.
4. Grounding labeling.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:

1. BCT, PBB, SBBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

C. Comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit Corporation
2. The Siemon Company
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
4. Tyco Electronics Corp.
5. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems

B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.

D. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit Corporation
2. The Siemon Company
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
4. Tyco Electronics Corp.
5. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems

B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

D. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

E. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit Corporation
2. The Siemon Company
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
4. Tyco Electronics Corp.
5. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems
6. Eaton B-Line

B. PBB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as PBB and shall comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. SBB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with latest TIA-607 standard. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
1. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19-inch equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.

B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

1. The bonding conductors between the SBB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
2. The bonding conductors between the PBB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.

C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

D. Conductor Support:

1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches.

E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch intervals.
4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.

    a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing and bond both ends of the conduit to a SBB.

3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

A. The BCT between the PBB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.

3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 60 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

C. Daisy chaining of connections is not permitted. Individual bonding conductors must be utilized for components needing to be connected to the SBB or PBB.

D. Provide and use self-scoring installation hardware on devices that have painted surfaces. Prior to installation, remove paint from bonding surface and secure bonding connector using self-scoring hardware.

E. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pretwist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.

F. Primary Protector: Bond to the PBB with insulated bonding conductor.

G. Interconnections: Interconnect all SBBs with the PBB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one PBB is installed, interconnect PBBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.

H. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install top-mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the SBB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.

I. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each SBB and PBB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

J. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each SBB to the ground bar of the panelboard.

K. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the SBB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.

L. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

M. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the SBB.

N. Cable Tray: Bond all segments of cable tray to the adjacent segments of cable tray using bonding jumper. Bond all corners using bonding jumper. At a location near the SBB, bond the tray system to the SBB using a No. 2 AWG bonding conductor.

O. Sleeve systems: Bond all sleeve systems entering the telecommunications spaces to the local SBB using a No. 2 AWG bonding conductor.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

1. Label PBB(s) with "fs-PBB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the PBB.
2. Label SBB(s) with "fs-SBB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the SBB.
3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a PBB and a SBB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

    a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.

a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the PBB and in each SBB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 05 36

CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cable runway tray.
2. Wire-mesh cable tray.
3. Cable tray accessories.
4. Warning signs.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 05 36 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" for cable trays and accessories serving electrical systems.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints.

1. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, who is responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
3. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for cable trays, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design cable tray supports and seismic bracing.

B. Seismic Performance: Cable trays and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7

1. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.

B. Sizes and Configurations: See the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.

C. Structural Performance: See articles on individual cable tray types for specific values for uniform load distribution, concentrated load, and load and safety factor parameters.

2.3 CABLE RUNWAY TRAY

A. Manufacturers:

1. Legrand: 09-8104-Length-12-BK
2. Eaton B-Line
3. Snake Tray: 610 Series
4. MonoSystems
5. Middle Atlantic: CLB Series

B. Description:

1. Configuration: Two longitudinal side rails with transverse rungs swaged or welded to side rails, complying with NEMA VE 1.
2. Minimum Width: 12 inches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: ~~4~~ *1* inches.
4. Straight Section Lengths: 10 feet except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
5. Rung Spacing: 9 inches o.c.
6. Radius-Fitting Rung Spacing: 9 inches at center of tray's width.
7. Minimum Cable-Bearing Surface for Rungs: 7/8-inch width with radius edges.
8. No portion of the rungs shall protrude below the bottom plane of side rails.
9. Structural Performance of Each Rung: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
10. Fitting Minimum Radius: 12 inches.
11. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
12. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

C. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel

2.4 WIRE-MESH CABLE TRAY

A. Manufacturers:

1. Legrand: Cablofil Series
2. Eaton B-Line: Flex Tray Series
3. Snake Tray: Mega-Snake Series
4. MonoSystems: Mono-Mesh
5. Siemon: RouteIT Series

B. Description:

1. Configuration: steel wire mesh, complying with NEMA VE 1.
2. Minimum Width: 12 inches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: 4 inches
4. Straight Section Lengths: 10 feet except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
5. Structural Performance: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
6. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1.
7. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
8. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

C. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel: Electroplated Zinc

a. Straight Sections and Fittings: Steel
b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
c. Fasteners: Steel

2.5 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.

B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.

C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.6 WARNING SIGNS

A. Comply with requirements for identification in Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems."

B. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch-high, black letters on yellow background with legend "Warning! Not To Be Used as Walkway, Ladder, or Support for Ladders or Personnel."

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect cable trays according to NEMA FG 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

A. Install cable trays according to NEMA FG 1.

B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.

C. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure

D. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lb.

E. Install center-hung supports for single-rail trays designed for 60 versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.

F. Support wire-basket cable trays with center support hangers.

G. Support center support hangers for wire-basket trays with 1/4-inch-diameter rods.

H. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.

I. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA FG 1. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.

J. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

K. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.

L. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing; or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.

M. Install permanent covers, if used, after installing cable. Install cover clamps according to NEMA VE 2.

N. Install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays after cable tray installation.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

B. Cable trays with shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.

C. Bond cable trays to power source for cables contained within with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."

3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.

B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties according to NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket.

C. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every 18 inches.

D. Fasten and support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures. Fasten cables to the cable tray at the point of exit and support cables independent of the enclosure. The cable length between cable trays or between cable tray and enclosure shall be no more than 72 inches.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect raceways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections.

1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements.
2. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable trays, vibrations, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
3. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable trays do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communications or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers or are installed in separate cable trays.
4. Verify that there are no intruding items such as pipes, hangers, or other equipment in the cable tray.
5. Remove dust deposits, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
6. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorque in suspect areas.
7. Check for missing, incorrect, or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
8. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable trays. Test entire cable tray system for continuity. Maximum allowable resistance is 1 ohm.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 05 53

IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes.
5. Signs.
6. Cable ties.
7. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Identification Schedule:

1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
2. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
3. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
4. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA 606-B.

B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

B. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, vinyl flexible labels with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating protective shields over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
2. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
3. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

C. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, machine transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. Minimum Nominal Size:
    a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
    b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
    c. 3/8" high, bold type for cabling
    d. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 SIGNS

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

B. Laminated-Acrylic or Melamine-Plastic Signs:
1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:
    a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
    b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
    c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face
    d. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.5 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
5. Color: Black.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project. Verify and coordinate with owner prior to start of any labeling.

B. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

C. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

D. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

E. Labels shall be easily visible on both ends of cable runs.

F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.

G. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

H. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
3. Provide label 6 inches from cable end.

I. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Provide label 6 inches from cable end.

J. Self-Adhesive Labels:

1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

K. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.

C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.

1. System legends shall be as follows:

a. Telecommunications.

D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, numbered clockwise when entering room from primary egress, composed of the following, in the order listed:

1. Wiring closet designation.
2. Dash
3. Patch Panel
4. Port Number(s)

E. Equipment Room Labeling:
1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.
2. Patch Panels: Label individual rows and outlets, starting at to left and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label.

F. Backbone Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label the location of the far or other end of the backbone cable. Patch panel or punch down block where cable is terminated should be labeled identically.

G. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label indicating the following, in the order listed:
1. Coordinate labeling scheme with owner prior to installation.

H. Ceiling Grids: Label ceiling grid for WAP and Camera Cabling.
   1. Coordinate labeling scheme with owner prior to installation.

I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.

J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: Self-adhesive labels.

   1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

A. Equipment Identification Labels:
   1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
   2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
   3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
      a. Communications cabinets.
      b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
      c. Computer room air conditioners.
      d. Power distribution components.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 11 16

COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. 19-inch equipment racks.
2. 19-inch equipment cabinets.
3. Power strips.
4. Power distribution units.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.

B. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications racks, frames, and enclosures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Detailed Rack Elevations indicating layout of equipment. Coordinate with ITS department.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, from manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when work of this section is performed at project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. UL listed.

B. RoHS compliant.

2.2 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

A. Description: Two-post and four-post racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, 19-inch equipment mounting.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit
2. Chatsworth
3. Great Lakes
4. Siemon
5. Middle Atlantic
6. Ortronics

C. General Requirements:

1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Material: Aluminum (Two-Post), Steel (Four-Post).
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
4. Color: Black.

D. Floor-Mounted Racks:

1. Overall Height: 84 inches
2. Overall Depth: 30 inches (Four-Post)
3. Two-Post Load Rating: 1000 lb
4. Four-Post Load Rating: 2500 lb
5. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 45

    a. Numbering: Every rack unit, on interior of rack.

6. Threads: *Cage Nuts*
7. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip.
8. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
9. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
10. Self-leveling.

E. Wall-Mounted Racks:

1. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Depth: 24 inches
3. Load Rating: 150 lb
4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: As indicated on Drawings.

5. Threads: *Cage Nuts*
6. Wall Attachment: Four mounting holes.
7. Equipment Access: Dual hinges open to right or left, stopping in 90° position.

F. Cable Management:

1. Metal or Plastic, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.3 19-INCH EQUIPMENT CABINETS

A. Description: Manufacturer-assembled four-post frame enclosed by side and top panels and front and rear doors, designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, 19-inch equipment mounting.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit
2. Chatsworth
3. Great Lakes
4. Siemon
5. Middle Atlantic
6. Ortronics

C. General Cabinet Requirements:

1. Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
4. Color: Black.

D. Modular Wall Cabinets:

1. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Depth: 30 inches unless otherwise noted
3. Load Rating: 150 lb
4. Number of Rack Units: As indicated on Drawings.
5. Threads: *Cage Nuts*
6. Lockable front[and rear] doors.
7. Louvered side panels.
8. Cable access provisions top and bottom.
9. Grounding lug.
10. [Rack] [Roof]-mounted, 250-cfm fan.
11. Power strip.
12. All cabinets keyed alike.

E. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.4 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting, with flanges.
3. Height: 1 RU.
4. Housing: Metal.
5. (12) 120-VAC, 5-15R Receptacles.
6. (2) Front and (10) Rear Receptacles.
7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
8. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
9. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
10. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
11. Cord connected with 12-foot line cord.
12. Rocker-type on-off switch
13. Surge Protection: UL 1449, Type 3.

    a. Maximum Surge Current, Line to Neutral: 72 kA.
    b. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground.
    c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating for line to neutral and line to ground shall be 600 V and 500 V for neutral to ground.

2.5 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNITS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.

C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.

D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.

1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.

F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 13 23

COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. 850 nanometer laser-optimized 50/125 micrometer multimode optical fiber cable (OM4).
2. Optical fiber cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
3. Fiber backbone cabling shall be plenum rated & armored.
4. Cabling identification products.

1.2 OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Optical fiber backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:

    a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    b. Telecommunications pathways.
    c. Telecommunications system access points.
    d. Telecommunications grounding system
    e. Cross-connects.
    f. Patch panels.
    g. Patch cords.

5. Cross-connects and patch panels.

C. Optical fiber cable testing plan.

D. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-C-1.

2.2 850 NANOMETER LASER-OPTIMIZED, 50/125 MICROMETER, MULTIMODE OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OM4)

A. Description: Multimode, 50/125-micrometer, Armored, Indoor/Outdoor**,** tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Corning
2. Panduit
3. Siemon Company
4. OCC

C. Standards:

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA-492AAAD for detailed specifications.

D. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.

E. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth-length Product: 3500 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.

F. Minimum Effective Modal Bandwidth-length Product: 4700 MHz-km at 850 nm.

G. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Aqua
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

2.3 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers:

1. Comscope
2. Corning
3. Panduit
4. Siemon Company
5. OCC

B. Standards:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standard specifications of the TIA-604 series.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3.

C. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

D. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.

E. Connector Type: Type LC

F. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
2. Insertion loss not more than 0.50 dB.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

G. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; quick-connect, simplex and duplex; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
2. Insertion loss not more than 0.50 dB.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
4. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.

2.4 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

C. Factory test pre-terminated optical fiber cable assemblies according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. GCS will NOT accept any fiber loss readings over 2.5db for lengths fewer than 1000 feet.

G. The test shall be conducted utilizing a light loss fiber optic tester. The test shall indicate at a minimum:
1. Cable Length
2. dB loss (Attenuation)

3. Polarity

H. Each test result shall indicate the cable number, test date and tester name. All printed test results are to be submitted to the GCS Cable Project Manager in a neat, clean and orderly nature within a three ring binder. The test sheets are to be divided by panel and in numeric order. Dividers are to be placed between each panel's test sheets. Include an electronic copy as well as the any viewing software at no additional charge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 301, and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. General Requirements for Optical Fiber Cabling Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.3.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all cables; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
6. Bundle, lace, and train cable to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.

7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
9. In the communications equipment room, provide a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Grounding (Earthing), Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

1. Administration Class: Class 4.

2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 4 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.

D. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.

F. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
4. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA 606-B, for the following:

1. Flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.

2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

        1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA-526-14-B, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
        2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than those calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.1.

D. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

E. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

F. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 15 13

COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Category 6 twisted pair cable
2. Category 6A twisted pair cable (WAP's only)
3. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs and jacks.
4. Cable management system.
5. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.

1.2 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.

1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.

B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.

C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment.

C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-C-1.

2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway or Type CMP in listed cable routing assembly.
2. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

B. RoHS compliant.

2.3 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Commscope – Basis of Design
2. General Cable: Genspeed 6
3. Panduit
4. Siemon
5. Berk-Tek

C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Refer to drawings for system specific color coding

2.4 CATEGORY 6A TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Commscope – Basis of Design
2. General Cable: Genspeed 6
3. Panduit
4. Siemon
5. Berk-Tek

C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6A cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Refer to drawings for system-specific color coding.

2.5 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Commscope
2. Panduit
3. Siemon
4. Hubbell

C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:

1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.

E. Connecting Blocks:

1. 110-style IDC for Category 6
2. 110-style IDC for Category 6a.
3. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Features:

a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
c. Replaceable connectors.
d. 24 or 48 ports.

2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch equipment racks.

3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair cable indicated

H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
3. Contractor shall provide Category 6A patch and equipment cords. *10' Length at Station Ends, 12"Length at MDF and IDF Rack Ends.* Coordinate lengths with owner.
4. Contractor shall provide 10% space patch and equipment cords.

I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

K. Faceplate:
1. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel complying with requirements in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
2. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.

L. Legend:
1. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.6 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

D. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Comply with BICSI's Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.

3.2 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BISCI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to

suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems."

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 4 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Equipment grounding conductors.

D. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building- mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
    b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

E. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

C. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.

D. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 51 16

PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM

BOGEN E7000 COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM – Basis of design
Other accepted manufacturers: Atlas Global & Rauland Telecenter
Contractors may submit alternate options before bid for engineer approval.

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. The conditions of the General Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions) and the General Requirements are hereby made a part of this Section.

B. All bids shall be based on the equipment as specified herein. The catalog numbers and model designations are that of the Bogen Nyquist E7000 Series IP-Based Communications System and the specifying authority must approve any alternative system.

C. Contractors who wish to submit alternative equipment shall provide the specifying authority with the appropriate documentation at least 10 business days prior to bid opening. The submitted documentation must provide a feature by feature comparison identifying how the proposed equipment meets the operation and functionality of the system described in this specification. Prior to bid date, the contractor shall provide adequate and complete submittal information, which shall include but not be limited to specification sheets, working drawings, shop drawings, and system demonstration. The alternative supplier-contractor must also provide a list to include six installations identical to the proposed system.

D. The contractor shall provide the FCC registration number of the proposed system, where applicable.

E. Final approval of the alternative system shall be determined at the time of job completion. Failure to provide the "precise functional equivalent" shall result in the removal of the alternative system at the contractor’s expense.

F. The contractor for this work shall have read all the bidding requirements, the general requirements of division xx, and the contract proposal forms, and shall be held to the execution of this work. The contractor shall be bound by all the conditions and requirements therein.

G. The contractor shall be responsible for providing a complete functional system, including all necessary components whether included in this specification or not.

H. In preparing the bid, the contractor should consider that no claim will be made against the owner for any costs incurred by the contractor for any equipment demonstrations requested by the owner.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. The contractor shall supply and install all equipment, accessories, and materials in accordance with these specifications and drawings to provide a complete and operating IP-Based Communications System including but not limited to:

1. The platform shall provide complete Nyquist E7000 intercom and employ state of the art IP Technology including the minimum functions listed.

    a. Intercom call between staff locations and classrooms with Unlimited Station capacity
    b. Interactive Facility Maps
    c. User customizable Announcements with priority
    d. Text-to-Speech Announcements
    e. Emergency Classroom Check-In can be used to enhances campus security
    f. Emergency or Normal Announcements are capable of being recorded and activated by a speed dial on an administrative console, DTMF, wireless panic button, mobile app, web browser or external IP networked system using HTTPS URL-based Application Programming Interface (API)
    g. Internal clock is synchronized with NTP network time server whether on the LAN, WAN or Internet keeping the Scheduled events (Bells) and Announcements accurate within milliseconds.
    h. Audio distribution allow for scheduled or manually activated audio to be activated from the Admin Web UI, contact closure, Admin phone and/or by use of Routines
    i. Unlimited Schedules
    j. Unlimited Time, Paging, and Audio Zones
    k. Unlimited Page Stacking/Queueing
    l. Unlimited Scheduled events
    m. Unlimited Scheduled Audio events
    n. Integrated Internet Radio Source
    o. Email Notifications and Alerts the system can send an email with a system event, contact closure, or when a Routine has been activated to name a few
    p. Supervised Station Status system can be setup to send an email when a Nyquist device goes offline.
    q. Clock / Messaging Display capability improves school communications
    r. Alert Filters – Allow facilities to monitor for such as weather events, earthquakes, tornados, tsunami, volcanoes, public health, power outages, and many other National Weather Alerts emergencies and warnings.
    s. Multi-Site All Call paging allows authorized users to make normal district wide pages
    t. Multi-Facility Emergency All-Call paging allows authorized users to make emergency district wide pages
    u. Administrative Graphical User Interface or GUI that can be used by technicians or Administrative: CoS and Roles define who has access to what parts of the GUI
    v. Push-to-Talk Microphone
    w. Ambient Noise Sensing

2. The system shall have a Routines feature that allows staff to activate via Admin Web UI, dial string, panic button, mobile app, API or with an Admin phone touch interface. Routines can automatically launch a procedure, or sequence of actions, that the E7000 system executes as a result of an input trigger. Routines are designed with school security plans and can support crisis plans for situations such as school lockdown, weather events, or emergency evacuation.

3. Direct Inward Station Access or DISA allows administrator or first responder or emergency personnel with proper login codes to call into the system from outside the school into any classroom, zone, or entire facility with customer supplied SIP enabled Telephone Network. DISA is designed to allow remote monitoring, Facility All-Call or Zone Paging, and two-way conversation from outside the facility.

4. Authorized staff can use the Admin Web UI to configure the Clock/Messaging Display function. They can use it to create messages that will display on monitors connected to the 10-Watt plenum-rated Intercom Modules with HDMI 1.3 (max. 1920 x 1080 @ 24/30 Hz) output or the NQ-GA10PV devices in a selected zone, multiple zones, or to specific stations. When creating the message, you can set several options, including when and how long the messages are displayed, priority of messages, and the appearance of the messages. The schedule programming allows the event names to be displayed analog or digital clock along with day and date on an NQ-GA10PV Display. You can also remove messages from the message queue either manually or via a Routine.

5. The ADA requires that title II entities (State and local governments) and title III entities (businesses and nonprofit organizations that serve the public) communicate effectively with people who have communication disabilities. The goal is to ensure that communication with people with these disabilities is equally effective as communication with people without disabilities. With this in mind the Bogen Nyquist E7000 helps people who have vision disabilities with clear audio paging, massaging and hearing disabilities with visual messaging to any display to assist in communicating.

6. Interactive Facility Maps that are intuitive to use. Simply click on a classroom or area of the GUI and it can initiate an intercom, page or drill to another map level. I addition when the system is in Check-In mode the classroom has a pop up of a room's video feed via the Maps view if equipped. The system shall allow authorized staff to use the Map-based Audio/Video room monitoring during emergency check-in. Systems that don’t have provisions for this are not considered equal.

7. In the event of wide area network or WAN outage every facility must be capable of operating standalone and allow for all features listed within this specification to work. Systems that rely on the WAN to operate shall not be considered for comparison in this bid.

8. Manage Check-In functionality that allows staff to quickly verify that they are aware that a check-in event is underway and are reporting classroom status for their assigned classrooms or areas. For staff to check-in all they have to do is press their Call Switch after they have completed their required check-in procedure. Examples of check-in events include but are not limited to weather related shelter-in-place, safety related lockdown, fire evacuation, room occupancy.

9. The E7000 has a Disable Audio feature that can be activated via contact closure from fire alarm or security system, Admin Web UI, dial string, panic button, mobile app., API or with an Admin phone touch interface. When the E7000 has its Audio Disabled the follow features are disabled: programmed or manually activated audio distribution, Zone Paging, normal announcement files, All-Call Paging, manual normal tones and scheduled event tones.

10. Optional password protection for multi-site emergency all-Call, multi-site all-call, facility page. Emergency all-call page, all-call page, emergency announcement, announcement, zone page, alarm, and tone are used to prevent unauthorized use of the system.

11. Text-to-Speech option allows Admin Web UI users to add custom announcements into the system by simply typing the text that you want converted to speech for this announcement. The system will then generate a .wav file that can be used by the E7000 system. Systems that don't offer Text-to-Speech options shall not be equivalent.

12. Installation Wizards are available for installers to reduce the setup time on major components in the system programming. Included wizards are as follows: Customer Information, Dialing Length, Station, User, Time Zone, Network Time Server, and Zones as a minimum.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Specification sheets on all items including cable types

B. Outline drawing of system control cabinet showing relative position of all major components

C. Shop drawings, detailing integrated electronic communications network system including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Station wiring arrangement
2. Equipment cabinet detail drawing

D. Wiring diagrams showing typical connections for all equipment

E. Numbered Certificate of Completion for installation, programming, and service training, which identifies the installing technician(s) as having successfully completed the Nyquist E7000 technical training course provided by the Bogen Communications LLC.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All items of equipment shall be designed by the manufacturer to function as a complete system and shall be accompanied by the manufacturer's complete service notes and drawings detailing all interconnections.

B. The contractor shall be an established communications and electronics contractor that maintains a locally run and operated business and has done so for at least 10 years. The contractor shall be a duly authorized distributor of the equipment supplied with full manufacturer's warranty privileges.

C. The contractor shall show satisfactory evidence, upon request, that he or she maintains a fully equipped service organization capable of furnishing adequate inspection and service to the system. The contractor shall maintain at his or her facility the necessary spare parts in the proper proportion as recommended by the manufacturer to maintain and service the equipment being supplied.

1.5 SINGLE SOURCE RESPONSIBILITY

A. Except where specifically noted otherwise, all equipment supplied shall be the standard product of a single manufacturer of known reputation and a minimum of 30 years of experience in the industry. The supplying contractor shall have attended the manufacturer's installation and service training classes. A certificate of this training shall be provided with the contractor's submittal.

1.6 SAFETY / COMPLIANCE TESTING

A. The communications system and its components shall, where applicable, bear the label of a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL), such as Environmental Technology Laboratory (ETL), and shall be listed by their re-examination service. All work must be completed in strict accordance with all applicable electrical codes, under direction of a qualified and factory-approved contractor, and to the approval of the owner.

B. Bogen’s Nyquist E7000 solution is consistent with those NEMA SB 40-2015 requirements that specifically apply to school paging and intercom systems only as outlined within the ANSI/NEMA SB 40-2015 standards publication.

1.7 IN-SERVICE TRAINING

A. The contractor shall provide a minimum of eight hours of in-service training with this system. These sessions shall be broken into segments, which will facilitate the training of individuals in the operation of this system including Admin Web UI Dashboard operation, Scheduling, and Audio Distribution as a minimum. Operation manuals shall be provided at the time of this training.

1.8 WIRING

A. System wiring and equipment installation shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering best practices as established by the EIA and the NEC. Wiring shall meet all state and local electrical codes. All wiring shall be tested to be free from grounds and shorts.

B. All system wiring shall be labeled at both ends of the cable. All labeling shall be based on the room numbers as indicated in the architectural graphics package.

C. Wiring shall be done per manufacturer's recommendation (Cat 6A or West Penn #357) depending on speaker type. All terminal connections are to be on barrier strips.

1.9 PROTECTION

A. The contractor shall provide all necessary transient protection on the AC power feed and on all station lines leaving or entering the building.

B. The contractor shall note on their system drawings, the type and location of these protection devices and all wiring information. Such devices are not to be installed above the ceiling.

1.10 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

A. The contractor shall, at the owner's request, make available a service contract offering continuing factory authorized service of this system after the initial hardware and software warranty periods.

B. System shall include software maintenance that includes bug fixes and new feature releases for a period of five years. In addition, the contractor shall provide at the owner's request additional maintenance contracts that are available as one-year, three-year, and five-year extensions. The contractor shall provide a 24-hour response time from call by customer.

C. The system manufacturer shall maintain engineering and service departments capable of rendering advice regarding installation and final adjustment of the system.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. The Bogen Nyquist hardware products identified in this specification shall be warranted to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for five (5) years from the date of sale to the original purchaser; except for the NQ-SYSCTRL, NQ-T1100 and NQ-T1000 which each carry a two (2) year warranty. The Bogen Nyquist software products identified on this specification are warranted to be free from defects in material and workmanship for ninety (90) days from the date of sale to the original purchaser.

PART 2 - SYSTEM SPECIFICATION

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers, subject to compliance with requirements specifications, provide the following system:

1. Bogen Nyquist E7000 IP-based paging and intercom solution manufactured by Bogen Communications LLC.

B. The specifying authority must approve any alternative system 10 days prior to bid day.

C. The intent is to establish a standard of quality, function, and features. It is the responsibility of the contractor to ensure that the proposed product meets or exceeds every standard set forth in these specifications.

D. The functions and features specified are vital to the operation of this facility; therefore, inclusion in the list of acceptable manufacturers does not release the contractor from strict compliance with the requirements of this specification.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

A. Nyquist NQ-SYSCTRL System Controller

1. Configuration and management via a Web-based Graphical User Interface (GUI)
2. Wizard based setup for quick installation
3. Remote access from virtually any PC/MAC, tablet, or mobile device
4. Continuous monitoring of stations and appliances to ensure system operation
5. Dual network adapters to allow the System Controller to operate on two separate networks
6. Music automatically added to music library and playlist from USB port
7. Network-based audio that can be sourced (input) from any number of Nyquist appliances (NQ-P0100, NQ-A2xxx, NQ-A4xxx, etc.)
8. Ample storage for music files, recorded announcements, and call recordings
9. G722 and OPUS audio codec support to deliver superior HD audio quality
10. Convection air cooled; fan-less design for quiet, maintenance-free operation
11. Wall, rack, or shelf mountable

B. Nyquist NQ-E7030 Analog Station Bridge (ASB)

1. 24 station interface supporting analog speakers and call switches
2. 120-Watts of available power at 25-Volts
3. Two dynamic talk paths/amplification channels
4. Support Category G wiring or better
5. 25/70-volt speaker(s), ceiling-mounted, wall-mounted, and paging horns
6. CAN Bus 2.0 interface designed for support of Nyquist Digital Call Switch (DCS) NQ-E7020 that can initiate Normal, Urgent, or Emergency priority calls, all with options for Privacy Mode
7. Analog/Mechanical Call Switches capable of placing Normal, Urgent, or Emergency priority calls, Bogen CA15C rocker style momentary call button
8. Wall, rack, or shelf mountable

C. Nyquist NQ-P0100 Matrix Mixer Pre-Amplifier (MMPA)

1. No less than four Mic/Line inputs used for analog audio input like AM/FM Tuner or CD Player

2. Channel 4 configurable for Push-to-Talk MIC application

3. Line Level output to drive external amplifier

4. Software programmable configuration and operation

    a. Push-to-Talk Channel
    b. Push-to-Talk Type
    c. Push-to-Talk Zone
    d. Mixer Channels

5. Configurable built-in DSP

    a. Noise Gate
    b. Compressor/Limiter functions, etc.
    c. Tone Controls: Low Shelving, Mid Bandpass and Hi Shelving
    d. Multi-band Parametric EQ
    e. Variable Low-Cut/High-Pass filters
    f. CH1 can be configured as a digital AES/EBU (AES3) input

6. USB 2.0 host port, Type-A connector (future use)

7. Powered by 100V – 240V Universal AC Mains

8. Wall, rack, or shelf mountable

D. The Nyquist two and four channel amplifiers available in the following number of channels and watts

1. NQ-A2060 two channel with 60 watts per channel

2. NQ-A2120 two channel with 120 watts per channel

3. NQ-A2300 two channel with 300 watts per channel

4. NQ-A4060 four channel with 60 watts per channel

5. NQ-A4120 four channel with 120 watts per channel

6. NQ-A4300 four channel with 300 watts per channel

7. These amplifiers shall include GUI based DSP controls; 16-band Graphic Equalizer; Signal Present and Clip Monitor; Adjustable High Pass, Low Pass, and Bandpass Filters; Noise Gate; Compressor/Limiter; and 7-band Parametric Equalizer. Outputs shall be provided for 4-, 8-ohm, 25V, and 70V distributed systems.

8. Bridged or Mono Mode

9. Integrated Digital Signal Processor

a. Noise Gate
b. Compressor/Limiter functions, etc.
c. Tone Controls: Low Shelving, Mid Bandpass and Hi Shelving
d. Multi-band Parametric EQ
e. Variable Low-Cut/High-Pass filters

10. One Line-Level Input on two channel amplifiers

11. Two Line-Level Inputs on the four channel amplifiers

12. 100/1000 GB ethernet connection

13. USB 2.0 host port, Type-A connector (future use)

14. 100V – 240V Universal AC Mains

15. Wall, rack, or shelf mountable

16. The amplifiers shall carry the necessary safety agency listings for both the US and Canada. The amplifier shall employ convection air cooling. Amplifiers that require fans for cooling shall not be considered equal.

E. Nyquist NQ-E7010 Input/Output Controller – allows inputs from fire alarm, lockdown buttons, etc

1. Power over Ethernet 802.3af compliant

2. 8 x Dry Contact Closure Inputs

3. 8 x Relay Driver Outputs (Open-Collector)

4. USB 2.0 host port, Type-A connector (future use)

5. Software programmable configuration and operation including; Contact Type, Extension, Name, Close Interval, Actions (911, Audio, Alarm, Announcement, All-Call, Multi-Site-Emergency-All-Call, Emergency-Call, Emergency-All-Call, Hourly, Audio-Disabled, No Action, Page, Tone, Enable-Audio and Manual), Action ID, Zones, Close Extension, Dashboard Type, Dashboard Title, Dashboard Scope, Dashboard Text, Dashboard Style, Email and Routines

6. Wall, rack, or shelf mountable

F. NQ-T1100 VoIP Admin Phone Color Touch Display (aka Admin Station located in the main office)

1. 7” 800 x 480-pixel color display with backlight

2. Touch screen display for one touch operation

3. Full-duplex hands-free speakerphone with AEC

4. Call hold
5. Mute
6. Redial, call return, auto answer
7. PoE (802.3af) Class-3 support
8. Headset with EHS support
9. Dual Gigabit Ethernet ports
10. Desk Mountable
11. Optional Wall mount available

G. Optional third-party equipment support

1. Telephony interface device(s) for FXO/FXS analog port connectivity
2. Third-party hardware FXS gateway support includes:
    a. Two port FXS gateway Cisco SPA-112 typically used for analog interface to existing PBX CO port support
    b. 24 port FXS gateway Yeastar TA-2400 typically used for analog staff phone support

2.3 COMPONENTS AND DESCRIPTIONS

A. The Nyquist E7000 Series Educational System is a software-based VoIP paging and intercom system.

B. The System must be capable of supporting existing Bogen Multicom 2000 and Bogen Quantum Multicom IP wiring, 25/70-Volt speakers and analog call-switches, and equivalent competitive systems utilizing the existing architectural numbering scheme. The VoIP capabilities of the Nyquist system will enable the support of the features across the Nyquist appliances within the facility. The following sections define how the system handles each of the features in the system. Systems that do not allow the reuse of existing wiring or numbering scheme shall not be deemed acceptable. Systems that do not allow appliances to be seamlessly integrated via the existing customers LAN are not considered equal.

C. Nyquist E7000 Software

1. The Nyquist E7000 software is pre-installed on a Nyquist NQ-SYSCTRL System Controller or can be optionally installed on a dedicated dealer or customer supplied server. An unlimited number of facilities can be networked into a Nyquist-based District.

2. If the Nyquist Software is not a Nyquist NQ-SYSCTRL System Controller than the Minimum Server Requirements apply to dealer or customer supplied Server

    a. Debian Linux OS (AMD 64-bit version) release 8.4.x – 8.11.0
    b. Quad-core Intel-based processor running at 3.0 GHz or higher
    c. 8 GB RAM
    d. One 250 GB disk drive or larger

3. Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) is recommended for redundancy and high availability.

4. Consider using a larger drive if large amounts of audio (for example, voice mail, announcements, recordings, and music) are being stored on the system. Other factors that should be considered are:

    a. How often will backups be performed?
    b. Will the system be backed up locally or remotely on a detachable drive, SAN/NAS, or NFS?
    c. How many users will have voicemail ability?
    d. How long will voicemail messages be stored?
    e. Will voicemail messages be part of the local system backups?
    f. NIC 10/100/1000 MB Ethernet port
    g. One or more PCI/PCI Express (PCIe) slots if telephony network connectivity other than, or in addition to, SIP trunking
    h. One or more PCI/PCIe type third-party telephony interface cards (for example, FXO, FXS, etc.) if telephony network connectivity other than, or in addition to, SIP trunking

5. Audio shall be transmitted between the System Controller and the Nyquist appliances using the customer supplied LAN/WAN using both G.722 and Opus 48k audio encoding and streaming technology to deliver High Definition DVD quality audio. Systems that do not use G.722 and Opus for audio encoding and streaming shall not be deemed equivalent.

6. Installers have the ability to verify that the Nyquist System Controller can access Internet-based URLs required for the system to run properly by clicking on the "Check Internet Site Access" on the license activation wizard. If the installer made mistakes in configuring the network the install has the ability to go back and make changes to the network by clicking on the “Network Wizard” button.

7. The Nyquist software and Nyquist appliances firmware shall be upgradeable via the Nyquist Web UI System Update page that contains a list of available Nyquist software updates. When automatic software check and download are enabled, new software updates will automatically be downloaded and appear in the System Update list, and a dashboard message will be displayed to announce newly available software. Release notes can be viewed for each available update. System updates can be started via the System Update list. The System Update page includes a "Check for System Updates" button that can be used to manually check for and download available Nyquist software updates.

8. Prior to preforming Nyquist updates the technician shall have the ability to verify if the default gateway, Network Time Protocol, and Domain Name Servers are configured and available, to obtain network interface and routing tables status, and to display the Nyquist

E7000's public IP address. See "Check Internet Site Access" under "System Parameters". The E7000 system can be setup to automatic check for new Nyquist System software and automatic download of new Nyquist System Software

9. It shall be possible for a Nyquist facility to make "station-to-station" calls and "remote facility" All-Call pages to a single facility or to all Nyquist facilities in a district via the Nyquist Web UI or an Admin Station. Systems that require remote viewing software or other application software to be installed/loaded on to additional servers or PCs to make station-to-station calls and remote facility All-Call or district paging shall not be considered equivalent.

10. The Nyquist software is designed to handle all facility and district-wide communications, including but not limited to, inter-facility intercom calling and paging, district-wide Emergency All-Call and local facility point-to-point calls. Via the Nyquist Web UI, every facility shall be configured with the IP addresses of all the other remote facilities within the district. To ensure that these communications are operating correctly at all times the Nyquist appliances are supervised and remote facilities are monitored, if a device or facility has a fault the system can send and/or email and also display a message if a device changes state. System that don't provide Station Supervision and remote Facility Monitoring shall not be considered.

11. Nyquist can support an unlimited number of facilities; however, the maximum number of simultaneous remote facility intercom calls supported is based on the actual performance of the WAN and the Nyquist System Controller CPU load.

12. The voice quality of the facility calls may vary based on the WAN conditions. The maximum network bandwidth that All-Call and Zone Paging uses is average of 0.086 Mbps (Multicast G.722), and intercom calls average of 0.171 Mbps (unicast, G.722).

13. The system shall facilitate the repetitive playing of Normal or Emergency audio tones or announcements directed to an All-Call or a Paging Zone until stopped by the Nyquist user via the Web UI, an Admin Station, or a dry contact closure connected to the Nyquist I/O Controller NQ-E7010.

14. Through the use of Routines, a trained individual can create a routine that can perform a sequence of events that can include the repetitive playing of normal or emergency audio files, make or break contact closure(s), display different messages in different areas, send email(s), and place a phone call (if equipped) offsite and play a pre-recorded message. Routines can be triggered/started by Application Programming Interface (API) or the playing of normal or emergency audio files, make or break contact closure(s) or almost any feature or function in the E7000 system. The system must also be capable of executing multi-site Routines (e.g., supports District-wide lockdown). System that don't provide Routines are not equal.

15. A built-in Master Clock shall be included to automatically control class change bells or other time-based events. The Master Clock shall have an unlimited number of Events that may be programmed into any of the unlimited number of Facilities, unlimited number of Schedules, and unlimited number of Holiday events. The schedules shall be nameable for easy selection when assigning schedules to days or overriding a schedule. Schedules can be overridden via the Admin Web UI or Admin phone.

16. Network Time Synchronization. The system shall be capable of periodically updating/synchronizing the processor's time with a Network Time Server running Network Time Protocol (NTP) via the school's LAN network. Systems that do not provide Network Time Synchronization will not be deemed equivalent. The Nyquist server can be the NTP server for other devices on the LAN such as IP clocks and other IP devices.

D. Nyquist E7000 System Software Application

1. The Nyquist software is pre-installed on the Nyquist System Controller, and upon boot-up, users can log in to the Nyquist application via a web browser that supports WebRTC. Systems that require Com Port redirect software, client PC application, software or serial-to-Ethernet adapters for user access are not deemed equal. Communications between the System Controller and the Web UI(s) shall be via secure Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTPS) connections (i.e., https://).

2. The Nyquist Web UI shall be configured with four different default user access levels, based on four unique user roles. Systems that do not provide unlimited access levels and unlimited number of user roles are not considered equal.

3. The four default roles shall be: admin, optech, operator, and user. These roles provide a starting point/example for administrators to create additional roles

4. Only a user assigned the admin role shall be able to provide access to users, giving them the ability to create, delete, edit, and view system parameters.

5. Only an Administrator shall have the ability to adjust roles and Class of Service (CoS) of users. The roles determine if users can view the definable data objects that can include configuration, alarms, and performance data and if users can perform certain operations based on the user's role and station's CoS. All changes to roles and CoS are effective immediately, without the need to restart the browser or reboot the System controller or server.

6. The Nyquist Web UI Dashboard shall provide full administrative capabilities to manage/operate the following system features:

    a. Calling/Paging – Used to access directory, dial pad, Page Exclusion, Call Forwarding, Zone Page, Record Page, Prepending Page, All-Call, Emergency All-Call, Manage Check-in and operate Routines.
    b. Multi-Site Calling/Paging – Used for Facility Page, Multi-Site All Call, and Multi-Site Emergency All Call.
    c. Tones/Announcements – Used for Tones, Announcements, Alarms, Stop Announcement, Display Message, and Remove Message.
    d. View Weekly Schedule – Used to show the current active Bell Schedules.
    e. Audio Distribution – Used to distribute audio sources to Stations, Audio Zones or entire facility. Operators can create an unlimited number Audio Distributions as needed by the facility
    f. Enable or Disable Audio – Used to place the Nyquist system into Page Exclusion mode (i.e., "mute" the system) when a contact closure is supplied from the fire alarm panel. Systems that do not provide this capability are deemed not equal.

7. Systems that require application software to be installed on a PC to manage the above features shall not be considered.

8. To facilitate installation and configuration of the system, additional Web UI menus are required. The menus shall only be visible to users with the correct roles and CoS. The navigation menus found on the Web UI shall be as follows:

    a. System Parameters – Allow installers to adjust core system parameters including Product License, Restart Server, Station Supervision, Email Configuration, System Update, Shut Down Server, Check Internet Site Access, Check Server Status, Edit system tools and adjust all the System Parameters.
    b. Zones and Queues – Allow installers to create and modify Paging, Time, and Audio Zones. Installers can also setup Queues that can be used to eliminate feedback.
    c. Schedules – Allow installers and administrators to create bell schedules for multiple Schools, predefine alternative schedules to run, prevent the bells from ringing on a holiday, and schedule an announcement to play. The system shall allow an unlimited number of schedules to operate simultaneously within a facility.
    d. CoS Configuration – Allow the installer to create, modify, and delete CoS groups that control station access to the following features: Call-in Level, Zone Paging, All-Call Paging, Emergency All-Call, Inter-Facility Call/Page, Audio Distribution, Remote Pickup, Join Conversation, Call Forwarding, Walking Class of Service, External Call Routing, Call Transfer/3-way Calling, Manually Activate Tone Signals, Call Any Station, Manage Recording, Monitor Calls, Monitor Locations, Conference Admin, Conference User, Voicemail, Record Calls, Activate Alarm Signals, Disable Audio, Enable Audio, Allow Callee Auto-answer, District Paging, Inter-Facility Features, Manage Output Contacts, and Execute Routines.
    e. Admin Groups – Allow the installer to create, modify, and delete software groupings of admin phones, staff phones, and Admin Web UIs that can ring when a station calls in with a call switch.
    f. Stations – Allow the installer to set up, modify, and delete stations; set up Page Exclusion; view Station Status; and add New Stations.
    g. Bridge Devices – Allow the installer to configure the Nyquist ASBs.
    h. Amplifier Devices – Allow the installer to configure Nyquist Two and Four and PA Amplifiers
    i. Audio – Allow the installer to upload and manage Announcements, Playlists, Recordings, Songs, Tones, and Internet Radio Services. The system must support the uploading of both MP3 and WAV files and make Audio file management simple for users. Systems that limit the size of Audio files shall not be considered equal.
    j. Users – Allow the installer to manage users by giving them the proper roles and assign extensions if needed.
    k. Roles – Allow the installer to grant users rights to Create, Delete, Edit, Restart System, Sort Menu, Systems Update, Manage, Import/Export, Restore, Settings, or View.
    l. Facilities – Allow the installer to set up the district wide facilities for remote paging and calling.
    m. Outside Lines – Allow the installer to set up FXS and FXO ports for inbound and outbound system calling.
    n. SIP Trunks – Allow the installer to set up SIP trunks into the facility for inbound or outbound calling.
    o. Call Details – Allow the installer to review the historical system activities that can be used for incident investigation or system troubleshooting.

p. System Backup/Restore – Allow the installer to preform system backups or restores and allow the backups to be schedule to run automatically.
q. System Logs – Allow the installer to view and export log files, Nyquist-Intercom, and Web Server logs that can be used for troubleshooting and technical assistance.
r. Paging Exclusions – Allow the installer to view and edit stations that are excluded from paging.
s. Firmware – Update firmware for Nyquist speakers and appliances.
t. Routines – Allow installers to create routines that are a sequence of actions, that the Nyquist system executes as a result of an input trigger. Routines can support crisis plans for situations such as school lockdowns, weather events, or emergency evacuations.
u. Alert Filters – Allow installers to select the National Weather Alerts that the facility needs to monitor for such as weather events, earthquakes, tsunami, volcanoes, public health, power outages, and many other emergencies.
v. Systems that do not provide these options as a minimum shall not be considered equal.

E. Nyquist NQ-E7030 Analog Station Bridge

1. The Nyquist NQ-E7030 ASB allows facilities with existing Multicom or Quantum or compatible intercom systems to upgrade to Nyquist. Each ASB supports up to 24 speakers and call switches with 120-Watts of embedded 25 Volt power. The ASB is designed to drive almost any combination of 25 Volt speakers and horns.

2. The Nyquist ASB contains two 120-Watt amplifiers that are used dynamically by the system and allows two simultaneous amplified audio paths through the ASB. Either amplifier can be used for an intercom call and/or program (Paging, Time Tones and Audio) distribution.

3. Each of the 24 station interface ports - Support connections to as many as 24 individual 25 Volt speakers with one 25 Volt speaker connection per interface used for direct communication between the admin area and the classroom via Half-duplex talkback using the speaker as pickup and the 24 dry contact closure-type analog Call Switch connections allow for support of legacy Call-Switches like the CA15C.

4. On the back of the ASB is a CAN Bus 2.0 Interface designed to support the connection of 24 or more Nyquist NQ-E7020 Digital Call Switches DCS that can be associated with the programmed stations. Systems that don't support Digital Call Switches shall not be considered equal.

5. On the front of the ASB are two (2) x RGB full spectrum LED's. The POWER LED appears as solid red during initial power up, flashes green during a boot sequence, and appears solid green when fully booted. The STATUS LED uses the following indicators to provide information about the appliance:

a. Flashing red – No network connection found
b. Solid blue – The ASB is in an uninitialized state and is not associated to a server. (The server may be in a discovery mode.)
c. Solid green – The ASB is registered to a Nyquist server and is in normal operation
d. Flashing green – The ASB has an IP address but is not registered with the Nyquist server
e. Solid red – The ASB needs to be rebooted or reset so that the Nyquist application can resume

f. Flashing Blue – The ASB is updating.

6. USB 2.0 host port, type A connector designed for future applications.

7. On the front of the ASB you will also find the 10/100 Ethernet network connection. The ASB can be configured with a static IP address or use DHCP for connection to the customers network as required by the Network Administrator

8. The ASB gets its power from a universal mains power supply (100VAC – 240VAC)

9. The Nyquist NQ-E7030 ASB shall be rack, wall, or shelf mountable and shall include the required mounting bracket hardware.

F. Nyquist NQ-P0100 Matrix Mixer Pre-Amplifier (MMPA)

1. The Nyquist NQ-P0100 MMPA is designed to bring external audio into the Nyquist system. The MMPA interfaces with a local sound system by accepting one or more analog audio sources, mixing them, and outputting them to either, a) the network for Audio Distribution, or b) the MMPA's line level output that can then be inserted into an external amplifier to drive local sound system in gyms, cafeterias, auditoriums, etc. The MMPA supports the following:

   a. Four software selectable Line/MIC Input channels via three XLR connectors and four sets of screw-terminals. Input channel four (4) shall be capable of being configured to support a Push-to-Talk microphone Bogen model DDU-250. Channel-1 can be configured as a digital AES/EBU (AES3) input. Line/Monitor output – The MMPA becomes a station on the Nyquist system, allowing users to call it directly or to include it in any of the Page, Time, or Audio Zones and can be direct one-way page by calling it extension.
   b. The MMPA shall support the following features: Line-Level output to drive input on a local amplifier or self-amplified speaker; One USB 2.0 host port (Type-A connector) for future use; two (2) x RGB full spectrum LED status indicators.
   c. Configurable built-in Digital Signal Processing for Noise Gate, Compressor/Limiter functions, etc., Tone Controls: Low Shelving, Mid Bandpass and Hi Shelving, Multi-band Parametric EQ, and Variable Low-Cut/High-Pass filters.
   d. The MMPA is powered by Universal mains supply (100VAC – 240VAC).
   e. The MMPA shall be wall or shelf mountable and shall include the required mounting bracket hardware.

2. The system shall be equipped a minimum of one (1) Nyquist MMPA that allows for up to four user-configurable audio inputs. The MMPA shall support Line, MIC, and digital AES/EBU (AES3) input sources. The system supports an unlimited number of MMPAs.

G. Nyquist NQ-E7010 Input/Output Controller

1. The Nyquist NQ-E7010 I/O Controller is designed to accept contact closure inputs and activate open-collector outputs to drive relay coils. These inputs and outputs are used to trigger events or to be triggered by an event or Routine within the Nyquist system.

   a. PoE Class-1; IEEE 802.3af compliant with Optional 48VDC 15W power supply

b. Eight Dry Contact Closure Inputs that can be used with Fire Alarm Override Relays, external event triggers (for example, Lockdown Buttons, etc.)
c. Eight Relay Driver Outputs (Open-Collector) for use with Clock Correction (Sync Pulse), response to contact closure inputs, etc.
d. USB 2.0 host port, Type-A connector (future use)
e. Two (2) x RGB full spectrum LED Power and Status indicators

2. The Nyquist NQ-E7010 I/O Controller shall support wall or shelf-mounting options and shall include the required mounting bracket hardware.

3. The Nyquist NQ-E7010 I/O Controller shall be designed for wall or shelf mounting.

H. Nyquist NQ-E7020 Digital Call Switch

1. The Nyquist DCS has been exclusively designed for use with Nyquist appliances equipped with a CAN Bus 2.0 Interface. The CAN Bus 2.0 interface provides power and signal, and multiple DCSs can connect to each CAN Bus 2.0 interface. The DCS fits into a Single Gang/ Low Voltage installation using standard 'decora-plate' covers (supplied).

2. The DCS is a capacitive touch button design, so it doesn't have any moving parts to wear out. The behavior of this switch is software definable. Systems that require membrane or mechanical rocker style call switches that can wear out over time shall not be acceptable.

3. Normal call initiation involves touching the DCS one time. When a user touches the button on the DCS once, one of the three LED segments will light up green, a normal call will be placed, and the light will start blinking green. This is the indication that the Normal call has been placed to the VoIP Admin Phone or to a group of VoIP Admin Phones and that the phone or phones are ringing.

4. Urgent call initiation involves touching the DCS one time. When a user touches the button on the DCS once, one of the three LED segments will light up yellow, an Urgent call will be placed, and the light will start blinking yellow. This is the indication that the Urgent call has been placed to the VoIP Admin Phone or to a group of VoIP Admin Phones.

5. Emergency call initiation involves touching the DCS one or three times depending on station programming. When a user touches the button on the DCS once or three times within three seconds, all three LED segments will light up red, an Emergency call will be placed, and the light will start blinking red. This is the indication that the Emergency call has been placed to the VoIP Admin Phone or to a group of VoIP Admin Phones.

6. Single Press Emergency Call, if programmed, involves touching the DCS one time. When a user touches the button once, all three LED segments will light up red on the DCS, an Emergency call will be placed, and the light will start blinking red. This is the indication that the Emergency call has been placed to the VoIP Admin Phone or to a group of VoIP Admin Phones.

7. Normal and Urgent calls can easily be upgraded to an Emergency call after the DCS is flashing by touching the button on the DCS one time. The Normal or Urgent call will be

replaced by an Emergency call. Systems that don't allow the staff to upgrade the priority of a call shall not be considered equivalent.

8. Privacy Mode – Pressing and holding the button on the DCS for four seconds will place the speaker into Privacy Mode. As the user continually touches the DCS button, all LED segments will turn purple; when all three LED segments are lit purple, the speaker is in Privacy Mode. If a call comes into the classroom when the station is in Privacy Mode, the microphone will be disabled; the user in the classroom can touch the DCS once and it will allow talkback. Once the call ends, the classroom will need to manually return the speaker into Privacy Mode, if desired. The user can disable Privacy Mode without placing a call by pressing and holding the button on the DCS for four seconds. As the user continually touches the DCS, all LED segments will turn blue. When all three LED segments are lit blue, the speaker is no longer in Privacy Mode. Systems that require mechanical or membrane switches to achieve Privacy Mode shall not be considered equal.

9. The colors specified above are created by three RGB full spectrum LED segments to provide installers and users with visual status and feedback when installing and using the DCS. When the DCS is being installed and the power is connected before the signal, the LED will light red. It will also light red if the speaker in the classroom stops communicating with the Nyquist System Controller, indicating a problem with the station.

10. In addition to providing visual call status indications, a call confirmation audio file shall be played on the associated loudspeaker when a call is placed via a DCS. The three call-in levels shall have distinct audio confirmation messages:

    a. Call Placed
    b. Urgent Call Placed
    c. Emergency Call Placed

11. Emergency Link Transfer – If an Emergency call is unanswered by the VoIP Admin Phone and the Emergency Link Transfer is active, the Emergency call will be forwarded to the loudspeaker associated with the Emergency Link Station. Any station equipped with a loudspeaker can be programmed as the Emergency Link Station. Systems that do not provide Emergency Link Transfer shall not be considered equal.

I. Bogen Analog Call Switch CA-15C for use with the Nyquist ASB or NQ-GA10P(V)

1. The momentary Call Switch shall be capable of placing a combination of Normal/Urgent/Emergency Calls based on the software configuration of the Call Switch.

2. Normal/Emergency call configuration: Making a Normal call in this mode involves pressing the button on the Call Switch once. A call is then placed to the designated Admin Station. An Emergency call involves pressing the call switch at least four times. The Emergency call is then routed to the designated Admin Station. In both scenarios, the calling station number and call-in level (Normal or Emergency) are displayed on the Admin Station or on a group of Admin Stations. Additionally, Emergency calls can be routed to an alternative Admin Station or Emergency Link.

3. Urgent/Emergency call configuration: Making an Urgent call in this mode involves pressing the button on the Call Switch once. A call is then placed to the designated Admin Station. An

Emergency call involves pressing the button on the Call Switch at least four times. The Emergency call is then routed to the designated Admin Station. In both scenarios, the calling station number and call-in level (Urgent or Emergency) are displayed on the Admin Station or on a group of Admin Stations. Additionally, Emergency calls can be routed to an alternative Admin Station or Emergency Link.

4. Emergency Only call configuration: Making an Emergency call in this mode involves pressing the Emergency call switch with Call Level Emergency one time. The call is then switched to the Admin Station. This requires the display of the station number and call-in level on the Admin Station or on a group of Admin Stations. Additionally, Emergency calls can be routed to any Admin Station, including Emergency Link.

5. Emergency Link Transfer - If an Emergency call goes unanswered by the Admin Station and the Emergency link transfer is active, the Emergency call will be forwarded to the loudspeaker associated with the Emergency Link Station. Any station equipped with a loudspeaker can be programmed as the Emergency Link Transfer. Systems that do not provide Emergency Link Transfer shall not be considered equal.

6. In addition to the mechanical click of a Call Switch button press, a call confirmation audio file shall be played on the associated loudspeaker when a call is placed. The three call-in levels shall have distinct audio confirmation messages:

    a. Call Placed
    b. Urgent Call Placed
    c. Emergency Call Placed

J. The Nyquist amplifier shall have one dedicated Balanced Line Input. The amplifier shall provide a frequency response from 20-20 kHz +/- 0.25 dB at rated power. Distortion shall be less than 0.03%. The amplifier shall include GUI based DSP controls; 16-band Graphic Equalize; Signal Present and Clip Monitor; Adjustable High Pass, Low Pass, and Bandpass Filters; Noise Gate; Compressor/Limiter; and 7-band Parametric Equalizer. Outputs shall be provided for 4-, 8-ohm, 25V, and 70V distributed systems. The amplifier shall be rack mountable 1/2 Rack Width - Wall, Rack, or Shelf mountable 1RU and 2RU packages or by using a 19” Rack Mount Kit (NQ-RMK03; sold separately). It shall carry the necessary safety agency listings for both the US and Canada. The amplifier shall employ convection air cooling. Amplifiers that require fans for cooling shall not be considered equal.

K. Nyquist NQ-T1100 VoIP Admin Phone – Color Touch Display (Admin Station)

1. The Nyquist Admin Station shall have the following features:

    a. 7” 800 x 480-pixel color display with backlight
    b. Touch screen display for one touch operation
    c. Full-duplex hands-free speakerphone with AEC
    d. Call hold
    e. Mute
    f. Redial, call return, auto answer
    g. PoE (802.3af) Class-3 support
    h. Headset with EHS support

i. Dual Gigabit Ethernet ports
j. Desk Mountable
k. Optional Wall mount capable

2. The Nyquist Admin Station display panel shall show the time of day and day of week, the current bell schedule(s), and the station numbers and call-in priority of staff stations that are calling in. Depending upon the system programming, an Admin Station shall display menus to activate Zone Paging, All-Call Paging, Emergency All-Call Paging, District All-Call paging, alarm signals, and external functions.

3. The Admin Station shall be capable of calling either the loudspeaker or Staff Station at each classroom location.

4. The Admin Station shall display the classroom number of any station that calls 911. This allows front-office administrators to direct emergency personnel to the correct physical location in the building when they arrive. If a system is not connected to outside phone lines, then 911 calls can be routed to a designated station within the facility. The system shall automatically record all 911 calls made from any station. The 911 call recording shall begin as soon as 911 is dialed and continue unit the call is terminated. Recorded calls shall be maintained on the system for later playback review and/or retrieval by authorized personnel and/or authorities. Systems that do not provide this feature will not be deemed equal.

L. Additional Loudspeakers for use with the Nyquist ASB

1. 25/70-Volt Classroom Speakers shall be Bogen:

a. Ceiling Mounted Speakers: CSD2X2U Drop-In Ceiling Speaker
b. Ceiling Mounted Speakers: S810T725PG8U Ceiling Speaker
c. Wall Baffle Speakers: MB8TSQ/SL Metal Box Speaker

2. 25/70-Volt Hallway Speakers shall be Bogen:

a. Ceiling Mounted Speakers: CSD2X2U Drop-In Ceiling Speaker
b. Ceiling Mounted Speakers: S810T725PG8U Ceiling Speaker
c. Wall Baffle Speakers: MB8TSQ/SL Metal Box Speaker

3. 25/70-Volt Outdoor/Gym/Locker/Shop Room Speakers shall be Bogen:

a. Interior speakers locations shall be: FMH15T mounted in BBSM6 surface-mounted vandal-resistant enclosure with FMHAR8 adapter ring and SGHD8 heavy duty grille
b. Exterior speakers locations shall be: FMH15T mounted in BBFM6 flush-mounted vandal-resistant enclosure with FMHAR8 adapter ring and SGHD8 heavy duty grille
c.

4. 25/70-Volt Common Area Speakers shall be Bogen:

a. OCS1 Orbit Ceiling Speakers
b. OPS1 Orbit Pendant Speakers

2.4 SYSTEM CAPABILITIES

A. The communication system shall be a Bogen Nyquist E7000 Series Educational System and shall provide a comprehensive communications network between administrative areas and staff locations throughout the facility.

B. The system shall provide no less than the following features and functions:

1. Software-based, state-of-the-art, Voice over IP (VoIP) paging and intercom solution. 20/70-volt paging, 2-way intercom over owner provided “Yealink’ sip enable IP=base phones.

2. The system shall provide a Web User Interface (Web UI) that shall allow users to configure and control the system, in accordance with their assigned User Role, from any Chrome or MS Edge Web browser enabled PC, Mac, or Android tablet or mobile device.

3. Amplified-voice communication with analog loudspeakers shall use a shielded audio pair when connected to an ASB.

4. The system shall support any combination of the following VoIP phone station types: NQ-T1100 Administrative VoIP Phone – Color Touch Display (Admin Station) or NQ-T1000 Staff VoIP Phone – LCD Display (Staff Station).

    a. All VoIP phone station types shall utilize the same type of field wiring.
    b. There shall be no limit to the number of Admin Stations that can be connected to a facility. Systems that require different head-end equipment to make Admin Stations function, or systems that limit the number of Admin or Staff Stations shall not be deemed acceptable.

5. Future station alterations shall only require the Station Type to be changed in system programming. Alterations shall not require field wiring or system head-end alterations, unless an analog station device is being replaced by a VoIP station device or vice-versa.

6. The system shall be a global non-blocking system. The system shall be capable of unlimited amplified intercom paths per facility. Two amplified intercom paths shall be provided with each ASB for its complement of 24 stations. All hardware, etc., required to achieve the necessary number of amplified-voice intercom channels for this system shall be included in this submittal. ASB amplified-voice intercom channels shall provide voice-activated switching. Systems requiring the use of a push-to-talk switch on administrative telephones shall not be acceptable. There shall be an automatic level control for return speech during amplified-voice communications. The intercom amplifier shall also provide control over the voice switching sensitivity and delay times of the VOX circuitry on the ASB.

7. The system shall provide 911 Dial-Through via outside FXO/FXS lines or SIP trunks to ensure that one or more lines are always available for 911 calls. The 911 Dial-Through is available to any properly configured station (via CoS). When a station dials 911, the 911 call is processed as follows:

    a. Call routes to an Emergency Group where the call can be answered.

b. The 911 CO lines can be pre-configured and reserved. If the 911 reserved lines are busy, the normal CO lines will be connected to route the 911 calls. If all the normal CO lines are busy, then one of the ongoing calls shall be disconnected and the 911 call shall be placed.
c. When 911 is dialed from any station, its designated Admin Station or Admin Group will receive a message that the station has dialed 911.
d. The system shall automatically record all 911 calls made from any station. The 911 call recording shall begin as soon as 911 is dialed and shall continue until the call is terminated. Recorded calls shall be maintained on the system for later playback review and/or retrieval by authorized personnel and/or authorities.

8. It is of highest importance that Emergency calls from stations receive prompt attention. Therefore, it is important that there be an alternative destination in case the Emergency call does not get answered at the primary location. Details are as follows:

a. Staff-generated Emergency calls shall be treated as the second highest system priority. Therefore, all Emergency calls shall annunciate at the top of the call queue of their respective Admin Station or Admin Group. Should that Emergency call go unanswered for 15 seconds, the call shall be re-routed to an alternative speaker station. Then, a tone will prompt the caller to make a verbal call for help and annunciates to the Emergency link station “Emergency.” During the transfer, the original administrative telephone shall continue to ring the distinctive Emergency Ring. Should the Emergency Transfer-to-Station have an associated Admin Station, it will also ring for the Emergency call.
b. The Emergency Transfer-to-Station shall be software configurable.
c. Systems failing to transfer unanswered Emergency calls or failing to immediately connect to the designated Admin Station shall not be deemed as equal.

9. There shall be a Facility Wide Emergency All-Call feature. The Emergency All-Call shall be accessed from designated Admin Stations or the Nyquist Dashboard or by the activation of an external contact closure that shall give a microphone input Emergency status. The Emergency All-Call function shall have the highest system priority and shall override all other loudspeaker-related functions including Time Tones, Normal All-Call or Zone Pages, or Audio Distribution.

a. Considering that Emergency calls are to be treated with the highest level of concern, systems that do not regard Emergency All-Call with the highest priority shall not be deemed as equal.
b. Upon touching the Directory icon, a menu shall appear on the Admin Station display prompting the user to select the desired menu.
c. The Emergency All-Call shall capture the highest-level system priority and shall be transmitted over all speakers in the facility. It shall also be capable of activating an external control output, which can be used to activate external relays to automatically override volume controls, local sound systems, or strobe circuits.
d. This Emergency All-Call feature can have a four-digit pin number associated with it that would be required to use the feature or override someone that is already using this feature.
e. Systems without Emergency All-Call or systems with All-Call that cannot be activated by external means or that do not capture complete system priority or activate an external relay, shall not be acceptable.

10. There shall be unlimited Alarm Tones (four by default). Each may be accessed by dialing *91 and the two-digit tone number from any Admin Station, SIP Trunk, or FXO/FXS system interface. These Alarm Tones are separate from the Time Tones. Users shall be able to add an unlimited number of Alarm Tones to the system by uploading MP3 or WAV files. Systems that do not allow the user to upload MP3 and WAV files to customize the Alarm Tones or need to use external alarm/tone generators or special software or have less than four Emergency Alarm Tones shall not be acceptable.

11. Upon touching the Directory icon on an Admin Station, a menu shall appear on the display prompting the user to select from the sub-menus. The Alarms sub-menu is the first available. This precludes the user from having to memorize complicated key sequences to access Alarm Tones.

12. There shall be unlimited I/O Controller relay driver outputs accessible and controllable by properly authorized users via an Administrative Web UI. These outputs remain set until accessed and reset. Users shall have the ability to review the status of each relay driver output. Users shall be prompted through fields via a plain English menu, precluding users from having to remember any dialing sequences to control this feature. The system shall support an unlimited number of I/O Controllers, and each I/O Controller shall be able to interact with any and all other I/O Controllers on the system (i.e., an input on one I/O Controller can trigger an output on one or more different I/O Controllers). Systems that require the user to remember complicated dialing schemes or prompt the user via cryptic commands shall not be acceptable.

13. The I/O Controller can create a contact closure when the following operations are performed in the system:

    a. 911 call placed
    b. Audio Distributed
    c. Alarm is played
    d. Announcement is played
    e. All-Call preformed
    f. Multi-Site All-Call performed
    g. Multi-Site Emergency-All-Call
    h. Emergency-Call
    i. Emergency-All-Call
    j. Audio-Disabled
    k. Page

14. The system shall provide software controlled and programmable control outputs for external relay activation for use with strobe lights, magnetic locks, card access systems, motion detectors, cameras, or any low-voltage, dry contact creating device. Systems using dedicated security stations for control of external functions shall not be acceptable.

15. The system shall be capable of interfacing to PSTN/PBX/iPBX via both FXO/FXS line and SIP trunk connectivity.

16. The system shall be capable of providing each facility (i.e., (i.e., Nyquist location) an unlimited number of incoming FXO/FXS or SIP trunk lines that can be designated by the user

to ring the designated Day Admin or Night Admin. Where an Admin Station is designated to receive outside line calls, the incoming call's Caller ID information shall appear on the display. The system shall also provide the ability to make outside line calls from Admin Stations. This ability shall be programmable for each Admin Station and there shall be an unlimited number of CoS available to assign to any station.

17. The system shall be capable of supporting DID, DISA, and Security DISA functions.

    a. The system shall provide a password-protected Security DISA feature that shall only be accessible from authorized Police, Fire, Emergency personnel, or an off-premise security office that monitors the facility's security system. The Security DISA feature shall function as follows: Upon dialing the Security DISA phone number, the caller will receive a dial tone from the system, after which he or she must enter the assigned Security DISA passcode on the dial pad. Upon confirmation, the system will present the dial tone again and will allow the authorized personnel to dial any station/classroom on the system and monitor the activity without any pre-announce tone or privacy beep. This will allow the authorized personnel to audibly assess the situation and determine what actions need to be taken.
    b. All DISA and Security DISA calls shall be automatically recorded by the system for later playback review and/or retrieval by authorized personnel and/or authorities.

18. The system shall provide for field-programmable three-, four-, five-, or six-digit architectural station numbers.

19. There shall be an automatic level control for return speech during amplified-voice communications.

20. Each station loudspeaker shall be assignable to all or any combination of Paging, Time, and/or Audio Zones. Systems that do not provide unlimited Paging, Time, and/or Audio Zones shall not be acceptable.

21. There shall be unlimited schedules with unlimited programmable events per facility. Each event shall sound one user-selected tone or external audio source. It shall be possible to assign each schedule to a day of the week or to manually change schedules from an authorized user via a web-based UI. Systems that do not provide unlimited schedules, events, and tones, or that require software to be installed on a PC to perform these functions shall not be acceptable.

    a. The system shall provide multiple concurrent schedules per facility/location to accommodate split facilities (for example., combined Elementary and Middle School, combined Middle and High School, etc.).
    b. The system must be capable of providing Class Change Music to be played from an external audio source or audio files that are stored in playlists on the system during class change periods or whenever a facility wants music to be played in an area (i.e., (i.e., one or more Time Zones) on an automated schedule.
    c. Each event shall be able to be directed to any one or more of the unlimited Time Zones.
    d. Each of the unlimited Time Zones shall have a programmable, customizable Preannounce Tone and volume control that is unique unto itself.
    e. Each event shall play any of the Normal tones or external audio. Each event may utilize a different tone. For example, the system shall be capable of sending the gymnasium, shop

classes, and pool a separate, unique time tone to indicate “clean up.” Minutes later, the entire facility can be sent a different time tone to indicate class change.

f. Each of the unlimited Time Tones may be manually activated by selected VoIP Admin Phones or via an authorized user with access to the Web UI. These tones shall remain active as long as the telephone remains off-hook or until canceled from the keypad or the Nyquist Web UI.
g. Systems that do not provide an unlimited number of schedules or do not provide automatic activation of schedules shall not be acceptable.

22. Internal Master Clock shall be included, allowing an unlimited number of events per facility. Systems that do not provide an internal master clock or that must supply an external master clock to meet these specifications shall not be acceptable.

23. The Nyquist E7000 is capable of synchronizing with an NTP server and automatically adjusting the Daylight Savings Time for any time zone in the world. The server that the Nyquist E7000 application is running on can also be used as an NTP server for other systems on the LAN (for example, IP Clocks and control systems).

24. There shall be a Zone Page/All-Call Page feature that is accessible by selected Admin Phones and FXO/FXS or SIP connection to the PSTN or PBX/iPBX.

25. There shall be an option to play a pre-announce tone at any loudspeaker selected for voice paging.

26. There shall be a voice-intercom feature that is accessible by CoS authorized staff phones, all Admin VoIP phones, and Admin Web UIs.

    a. There shall be a privacy beep played every 15 seconds at any selected loudspeaker to indicate that an intercom call is in progress.
    b. There shall be a pre-announce tone played at any selected loudspeaker for intercom call communication.
    c. For special applications, the privacy and pre-announce tone signals shall be capable of being disabled during system initialization.
    d. There shall be a switch over to private telephone communications should the person at the classroom loudspeaker pick up his or her Staff Station and dial *3 to transfer the call down to the associated classroom Staff Station.

27. Normal and Urgent calls shall be placed into the queue for the designated Admin Station or Admin Web UI.

28. Each Admin Station call queue shall first be sorted per call priority (for example, Emergency, then Urgent, and then Normal). Calls are sorted within each priority level on a first-in, first-out basis. When a call is answered, it shall automatically be removed from the queue. Systems that do not sort calls per priority and order received shall not be acceptable.

    a. The display shall simultaneously display a minimum of three intercom calls pending.
    b. Additional calls beyond three shall be indicated by a scrolling option on the right-hand side of the screen thus prompting the user that additional calls are waiting.

29. It shall be possible to answer any incoming call by picking up the handset while it is ringing. It shall not be necessary to press any buttons to answer a call unless the call has dropped into the queue.

30. Staff Stations shall receive a dial tone upon going off-hook. Outgoing calls are made by dialing the desired station. Incoming calls can be directed to the telephone or to the associated loudspeaker for a hands-free reply. There shall be a switchover from loudspeaker to private telephone communication when a person picks up the handset, dials *3, and presses Enter/OK.

31. Each Station in a facility can have a unique CoS programmed with an unlimited number of CoS combinations.

32. Staff Stations shall be able to make a Normal call to any Admin Station by dialing the Admin Station's extension number. Staff Stations shall also be able to initiate an Emergency Intercom Call by dialing ****. Emergency Calls shall ring the Designated Day/Night Admin Station. The system shall provide for each station to have a Personal Identification Number (PIN). By dialing the PIN at any system telephone, the administrator shall have access to Emergency paging regardless of the restrictions on the phone being used.

33. Admin Stations shall receive a dial tone upon going off-hook. Outgoing calls are made by dialing the desired stations. Incoming calls can be directed to the telephone or to the associated loudspeaker for a hands-free reply. There shall be an automatic switchover from loudspeaker to private telephone communication should the person pick up his or her handset.

34. The display shall normally show the time of day and day of week, bell schedule name, and the numbers of a minimum of three stations calling-in, along with the call-in status of each station (Normal, Urgent, Emergency). The Admin Station's display shall indicate the station number being dialed from the Admin Station.

35. The display shall also provide user-friendly menu selections to assist the operator when using the Nyquist system. Displays shall be in English for maximum ease-of-use. Systems that require the operator to memorize long lists of operating symbols or control codes shall not be acceptable.

36. Admin Stations shall be programmable for any type of system access, providing or restricting the following CoS options:

    a. Call-in Level
    b. Zone Paging
    c. All-Call Paging
    d. Emergency All-Call
    e. Inter-Facility Call/Page
    f. Audio Distribution
    g. Remote Pickup
    h. Join Conversation
    i. Call Forwarding
    j. Walking Class of Service
    k. External Call Routing
    l. Call Transfer/3-way Calling
    m. Manually Activate Tone Signals
    n. Call Any Station
    o. Manage Recordings
    p. Monitor Calls
    q. Monitor Locations
    r. Conference Admin
    s. Conference User
    t. Voicemail
    u. Record Calls
    v. Activate Alarm Signals
    w. Disable Audio
    x. Enable Audio
    y. Allow Callee Auto-answer
    z. District Paging

aa. Inter-Facility Features
bb. Manage Output Contacts
cc. Execute Routines

37. Program selection and its distribution or cancellation shall be accomplished from a designated Admin Station with the assistance of the menu display system. Distribution and cancellation shall be to any one or combination of speakers, any Audio Zone or Audio Zones, or All Zones. It shall be possible to provide an unlimited number of program channels for the user to pick from.

    a. It shall be possible via an Admin Station to manually initiate any of the unlimited Normal Tones or Emergency Tones. The Tones shall be separate and distinctly different from the Alarm Tones. The Tone selected shall be capable of being played one time, continuously until it is canceled, or until the administrative display phone is placed back on-hook.
    b. Each Admin Station shall maintain a unique queue of all stations calling that Admin VoIP phone.

38. System programming shall be from an authorized Nyquist Admin User via any web browser. A valid username and password shall be required to gain access to the following programmable functions:

    a. System Parameters – Allow installers to adjust core system parameters.
    b. Zones – Allow installers to create and modify Paging, Time, and Audio Zones.
    c. Schedules – Allow installers and administrators to create Bell Schedules for the facility, predefine alternative schedules to run. Holiday Events prevent the bells from ringing on a school holiday. The system shall allow an unlimited number of schedules to operate simultaneous within a facility.
    d. Admin Groups – Allow the installer to create, modify, and delete software groupings of admin phones that can ring when a station calls in with a call switch.
    e. CoS Configuration – Allow the installer to create, modify, and delete CoS groups that can have the following features defined: Call in Level, Zone Paging, All-Call Paging, Emergency All-Call, Inter-Facility Call/Page, Audio Distribution, Remote Pickup, Join Conversation, Call Forwarding, Walking Class of Service, External Call Routing, Call Transfer/3-way Calling, Manually Activate Tone Signals, Call any Station, Manage Recording, Monitor Calls, Monitor Locations, Conference Admin, Conference User, Voicemail, Record Calls, Activate Alarm Signals, Disable Audio, Enable Audio, Allow Callee Auto-answer, District Paging, Inter-Facility Features, and Execute Routines.
    f. Stations – Allow the installer to set up, modify, delete stations, set up Page Exclusion, view stations' status, and add a station.
    g. Bridge Devices – Allow the installer to install the Nyquist ASBs.
    h. Audio – Allow the installer to upload and manage Announcements, Playlists, Announcements, Songs, and Tones. The must support the uploading of both MP3 and WAV files making Audio file management simple for users. Systems that limit the size of Audio files shall not be considered equal.
    i. Users – Allow the installer to manage users by giving them the proper Role and assign an Extension if needed.
    j. Roles – Allow the installer to limit user to the following: create, delete, edit, restart server, sort menu, systems update, manage, import/export, restore, settings, or view.
    k. Facilities – Allow the installer to set up the district wide facilities for remote paging and calling.
    l. Outside Line – allow the installer to set up FXS and FXO ports for inbound and outbound system calling.
    m. SIP Trunks – allow the installer to set up SIP trunks into the facility for inbound or outbound calling.

n. Call Details – allow the installer to review the historical system activities that can be used for incident investigation or system troubleshooting.
o. System Backup/Restore – allow the installer to preform system backup or restores and allow the backups to be schedule to run automatically.
p. System Logs – allow the installer to view and export Server, Nyquist-Intercom, and Web Server logs that can be used for trouble shooting and technical assistance.
q. Paging Exclusions – allow the installer to view and edit station that are excluded from paging.
r. Firmware – is used to update Nyquist appliances.
s. Routines – Allow installers to create routines that are a sequence of actions, that the Nyquist system executes as a result of an input trigger. Routines can support crisis plans for situations such as school lockdowns, weather events, or emergency evacuations
t. Alert Filters – Allow installers to select the National Weather Alerts that the facility needs to monitor for such as weather events, earthquakes, tsunami, volcanoes, public health, power outages, and many other emergencies.
u. Help –Provides information about the system, online help topics, and System Administrator Manual.
v. Systems not capable of supporting web-based configuration and control, or require plugins or dedicated application software, shall not be deemed as equal.
w. Systems that require a Serial-to-Ethernet converter, or require additional application software on a PC for configuration and/or control shall not be deemed as equal.

39. Admin Groups

40. Admin Stations can be placed into Admin Groups, which are used if incoming calls are not answered by the assigned Admin Station or the Day or Night Admin associated with the Admin Station. Admin Groups act as an always answer feature by providing an alternate list of Admin Stations. If an incoming call is not answered by the assigned Admin Station within 30 seconds for normal calls or 15 seconds for emergency calls, all Admin Stations in the Admin Group will ring.

41. If Call Forwarding is enabled at the Admin Station, Nyquist tries the forwarded extension. If that station does not answer or is busy, the call timeout is reduced to 15 seconds. After 15 seconds, the call rolls over to the Admin Group.

42. If an Emergency level call receives no answer, the Admin Group will ring if the Day Admin or Night Admin does not answer.

43. Admin Stations can be assigned to multiple Admin Groups. A Day or Night Admin can also be assigned to one or more Admin Groups.

44. Call Detail Reporting

    a. The Call Details feature allows the viewing and/or printing of detail records of every call in a facility in a call log format. Calls include scheduled announcements, paging, and internally and externally made or received telephone calls.

45. System Backup/Restore

    a. The system backup feature allows users with access to back up the system database, voicemail, and recordings.

b. The system restore allows users with access to perform a system restore of previously backed up database, voicemail, and/or recordings.
c. The installer also can set up an automatic backup that can be performed daily, weekly, or monthly.

46. System Log Files

    a. A log file records either events or messages that occur when software runs and is used when troubleshooting the system. The following parts of the Nyquist system generate log files:

        1. Server (This provides access to the Debian Linux OS server log files.)
        2. Intercom (This provides access to the Intercom application server log files
        3. Web Server (This provides access to the web server log files.)

    b. From the web-based UI, system logs can be viewed directly or exported via download to a PC, Mac, or Android device and then copied to removable media or attached to an email to technical support.

47. Paging Exclusions

    a. For school testing and exams, the administrators shall be able to put stations into Page Exclusion mode. During this time, the stations will only receive Emergency All-Call pages – not music, tones, or All-Calls. Emergency pages will still be heard at the station even if that station is set to exclude paging.

48. Firmware

    a. Installers can manage the available firmware. Because the Nyquist E7000 is constantly evolving and changing new versions of firmware will become available and the Firmware section allow installers or authorized users the ability to upload, check for updates, or configure the system to automatically download new firmware for later installation. Systems that can't automatically check for new software are not considered equivalent.

49. Routines are designed to automatically launch a procedure, or sequence of actions, that the Nyquist system executes as a result of an input trigger.

50. Some of the events (triggered by dashboard, IP Phone, I/O Controller contact, or Routines API) that can be created are as follows:

    a. Lockdown Routines
    b. Emergency Evacuation Routines
    c. Fire Alarm Routines
    d. Weather Alert Routines

51. As you can see the power of Routines can support your facilities crisis plans for situations such as lockdown, lockout, weather events, or emergency evacuations.

52. Alert Filters Configuration - The Common Alerting Protocol (CAP) is an international standard format for emergency alerting and public warning. It is designed for all hazards related to weather

events, earthquakes, tornado, tsunami, volcanoes, public health, power outages, and many other emergencies.

53. CAP elements and values are used when configuring alert filters for your Nyquist system. This part of the configuration allows installers to select or "Enable" or disable the filters needed for each facility. This filtered information can then be displayed on the NQ-GA10PV through the campus.

54. The growing list of information that can currently be displayed are as follows: 911 Telephone Outage, Administrative Message, Air Quality Alert, Air Stagnation Advisory, Arroyo And Small Stream Flood Advisory, Ashfall Advisory, Ashfall Warning, Avalanche Advisory, Avalanche Warning, Avalanche Watch, Beach Hazards Statement, Blizzard Warning, Blizzard Watch, Blowing Dust Advisory, Blowing Dust Warning, Brisk Wind Advisory, Child Abduction Emergency, Civil Danger Warning, Civil Emergency Message, Coastal Flood Advisory, Coastal Flood Statement, Coastal Flood Warning, Coastal Flood Watch, Dense Fog Advisory, Dense Smoke Advisory, Dust Advisory, Dust Storm Warning, Earthquake Warning, Evacuation - Immediate, Excessive Heat Warning, Excessive Heat Watch, Extreme Cold Warning, Extreme Cold Watch, Extreme Fire Danger, Extreme Wind Warning, Fire Warning, Fire Weather Watch, Flash Flood Statement, Flash Flood Warning, Flash Flood Watch, Flood Advisory, Flood Statement, Flood Warning, Flood Watch, Freeze Warning, Freeze Watch, Freezing Fog Advisory, Freezing Rain Advisory, Freezing Spray Advisory, Frost Advisory, Gale Warning, Gale Watch, Hard Freeze Warning, Hard Freeze Watch, Hazardous Materials Warning, Hazardous Seas Warning, Hazardous Seas Watch, Hazardous Weather Outlook, Heat Advisory, Heavy Freezing Spray Warning, Heavy Freezing Spray Watch, High Surf Advisory, High Surf Warning, High Wind Warning, High Wind Watch, Hurricane Force Wind Warning, Hurricane Force Wind Watch, Hurricane Local Statement, Hurricane Warning, Hurricane Watch, Hydrologic Advisory, Hydrologic Outlook, Ice Storm Warning, Lake Effect Snow Advisory, Lake Effect Snow Warning, Lake Effect Snow Watch, Lake Wind Advisory, Lakeshore Flood Advisory, Lakeshore Flood Statement, Lakeshore Flood Warning, Lakeshore Flood Watch, Law Enforcement Warning, Local Area Emergency, Low Water Advisory, Marine Weather Statement, Nuclear Power Plant Warning, Radiological Hazard Warning, Red Flag Warning, Rip Current Statement, Severe Thunderstorm Warning, Severe Thunderstorm Watch, Severe Weather Statement, Shelter In Place Warning, Short Term Forecast, Small Craft Advisory, Small Craft Advisory For Hazardous Seas, Small Craft Advisory For Rough Bar, Small Craft Advisory For Winds, Small Stream Flood Advisory, Snow Squall Warning, Special Marine Warning, Special Weather Statement, Storm Surge Warning, Storm Surge Watch, Storm Warning, Storm Watch, Test, Tornado Warning, Tornado Watch, Tropical Depression Local Statement, Tropical Storm Local Statement, Tropical Storm Warning, Tropical Storm Watch, Tsunami Advisory, Tsunami Warning, Tsunami Watch, Typhoon Local Statement, Typhoon Warning, Typhoon Watch, Urban And Small Stream Flood Advisory, Volcano Warning, Wind Advisory, Wind Chill Advisory, Wind Chill Warning, Wind Chill Watch, Winter Storm Warning, Winter Storm Watch, and Winter Weather Advisory.

55. Systems that are not capable of displaying National Weather Service CAP information to give advanced warning to facilities shall not be considered equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with the installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting the performance of the Nyquist E7000 Series Educational System.

B. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

A. All work described herein to be done by the manufacturer's authorized representative shall be provided by a documented factory authorized representative of the basic line of equipment to be utilized.

B. As further qualification for bidding and participating in the work under this specification, the manufacturer's representative shall hold a valid C-10 Contractor's License issued by the Contractor's State License Board of [your state]. The manufacturer's representative shall have completed at least 10 projects of equal scope, giving satisfactory performance, and shall have been in the business of furnishing and installing sound systems of this type for at least five years. The manufacturer's representative shall be capable of being bonded to ensure the owner of performance and satisfactory service during the guarantee period.

C. The manufacturer's representative shall provide a letter with submittals from the manufacturer of all major equipment stating that the manufacturer's representative is an authorized distributor. This letter shall also state that the manufacturer guarantees service performance for the life of the equipment and that there will always be an authorized distributor assigned to service the area in which the system has been installed.

D. The contractor shall furnish a letter from the manufacturer of the equipment. This letter shall certify that the equipment has been installed according to factory intended practices, that all the components used in the system are compatible, and that all new portions of the systems are operating satisfactorily. Further, the contractor shall furnish a written unconditional guarantee, guaranteeing all parts and all labor for a period of five years after final acceptance of the project by the owner.

3.3 DIVISION OF WORK

A. While all work included under this specification is the complete responsibility of the contractor, the following division of actual work listed shall occur:

B. The conduit, outlets, terminal cabinets, etc., which form part of the rough-in work, shall be furnished and installed completely by the electrical contractor.

C. The balance of the system, including installation of speakers and equipment, making all connections, etc., shall be performed by the manufacturer's authorized representative. The entire responsibility of the system, its operation, function, testing and complete maintenance for one year after final acceptance of the project by the owner, shall also be the responsibility of the manufacturer's authorized representative.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. The installation, adjustment, testing, and final connection of all conduit, wiring, boxes, cabinets, etc., shall conform to local electrical requirements and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's approved shop drawings.

B. Low-voltage wiring may be run exposed above ceiling areas where they are easily accessible.

C. The contractor shall install the new system at the location shown on the plans.

D. All Staff Stations and Call Switches shall be wall-mounted:

1. Mount at 54" AFF.
2. All wiring should be concealed.
3. Verify exact location with architect.
4. Avoid mounting near doors to prevent students from activating and running out of the rooms.

E. Admin Stations can be desk or wall mounted.

F. Speaker and telephone lines run above ceiling and not in conduit shall be tie-wrapped to a ceiling joist with a maximum spacing of 8' between supports. No wires shall be laid on top of ceiling tile.

G. Connect field cable to each Analog Speaker transformer using UL butt splices for #22 AWG wire.

H. Contractor shall provide a minimum of eight hours of configuration and operational instruction to school personnel.

I. On the first school day following installation of the Nyquist System, the contractor shall provide a technician to stand by and assist in system operation.

J. Mark and label all demarks IDF and MDF points with destination point numbers. Rooms with more than one outlet shall be marked XXX-1, XXX-2, XXX-3, etc. where XXX is the room number.

K. No graphic room number shall exceed the sequence from 000001 through 899999.

1. All outside speakers shall be on a separate Page Zone and Time Zone.
2. All zones shall be laid out not to exceed 40 Watts (@25V) maximum per zone.
3. All hallway speakers shall be tapped at 1 Watt (@25V) maximum.
4. All outside horns shall be tapped at 3.75 Watts (@25V) maximum.
5. All classroom speakers shall be tapped at ½ Watt (@25V) maximum.
6. Large rooms, such as cafeterias, shall be tapped at 2 Watts (@25V) maximum.

L. Plug disconnect: All major equipment components shall be fully pluggable by means of multi-pin receptacles and matching plugs to provide for ease of maintenance and service.

M. Protection of cables: Cables within terminal cabinets, equipment racks, etc., shall be grouped and bundled (harnessed) as to type and laced with No. 12 cord waxed linen lacing twine or T and B wire-ties, or hook and loop cable management. Edge protection material shall be installed on edges of holes, lips of ducts, or any other point where cables or harnesses cross a metallic edge.

N. Cable identification: Cable conductors shall be color-coded and individual cables shall be individually identified. Each cable identification shall have a unique number located approximately 1-1/2" from cable

connection at both ends of cable. Numbers shall be approximately 1/4" in height. These unique numbers shall appear on the As-Built Drawings.

O. Shielding: Cable shielding shall be capable of being connected to common ground at point of lowest audio level and shall be free from ground at any other point. Cable shields shall be terminated in the same manner as conductors.

P. Provide complete “in service" instructions of system operation to school personnel. Assist in programming of telephone system.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. The contractor shall provide equipment grounding connections for Integrated Telecommunications/Time/Audio/Media System as indicated. Tighten connections to comply with tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A to ensure permanent and effective grounds.

B. The contractor shall provide ground equipment, conductor, and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

C. The contractor shall provide all necessary transient protection on the AC power feed and on all station lines leaving or entering the building.

D. The contractor shall note on their drawings the type and locations of these protection devices and all wiring information.

E. The contractor shall furnish and install a dedicated, isolated earth ground from the central equipment rack and bond to the incoming electrical service ground buss bar.

3.6 DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide the following directly to the Supervisor of Technology Services.

1. One printed copy of all field programming for all components in system
2. One copy of all diagnostic software with a copy of field programming data for each unit
3. One copy of all field wiring runs, location, and end designation of system

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 27 53 19

EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO ANTENNA/REPEATER SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Furnish, install, and test a complete and operating Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This Section includes the requirements for an Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System for the purposes of assuring reliable communications by providing a minimum signal strength and minimum voice quality in 95% of all areas of the building.

B. Components Include
1. Bi-directional amplifiers (“BDA” or “BDAs”)
2. Donor antenna
3. Indoor coverage antennas
4. Distributed Antenna System (“DAS”)
5. Coaxial cable
6. Splitters and directional couplers
7. Backup power
8. All other equipment and components necessary for a complete and functioning Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System.

1.3 RELATED CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All aspects of system design, installation, testing and maintenance shall comply with the current versions of the following:
1. NFPA 1 – The National Fire Code (including Annex O from 2009)
2. NFPA 70 – The National Electrical Code
3. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code
4. NFPA 72-~~07~~ **13** National Fire Alarm Code
5. FCC 47 CFR Part 90.219: Private Land Mobile Radio, Use of Signal Boosters
6. Section 510 International Fire Code
7. TSB-88-B, The Telecommunications Industry Association's (TIA) Technical Service Bulletin 88
8. Equipment manufacturers’ installation and maintenance specifications

B. The requirements established by the AHJ in effect at the time of system installation supersede the specifications in this section. It is the contractor’s responsibility to assure the installed system complies with all currently applicable local, national and industry codes as adopted by the AHJ.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Definitions:

1. Authority Having Jurisdiction ("AHJ"): The local authority responsible for establishing requirements for Emergency Responder Radio Coverage Systems consistent with local codes and policies.
2. Critical Areas: Spaces within a building that require an extra assurance of radio coverage. These areas include emergency command centers, fire pump rooms, exit stairs, exit passageways, elevator lobbies, standpipe cabinets and other areas deemed critical by the AHJ.
3. Contractor: The entity bidding the project.
4. Owner: The entity who commissioned the project and will own the finished building.
5. Bi-Directional Amplifier or "BDA": An electronic device designed to provide amplification of uplink and downlink channels of radio services. These devices can be configured for operation on specific narrow-band frequencies, on a specific frequency band or on multiple frequency bands.
6. Distributed Antenna System ("DAS"): A network typically consisting of coaxial cable, fiber cable, splitters, taps, couplers and antennas designed for delivering radio signals to and from spatially separated antenna nodes or other intentional radiators, such as leaky coaxial cable, within a building or area where traditional off-air signal delivery is compromised.
7. Backup Power Supply: A secondary power source to support uninterrupted system operation in case of a failure of the primary power source. This system is configured to automatically transfer its load upon failure and restoration of the primary power source.
8. Donor Antenna: An antenna installed and directed to intercept over-the-air downlink and uplink radio signals on one or more channels from a specific base station or fixed repeater facility. A donor antenna usually is located on a roof or other location were reliable signal reception can be achieved. This antenna conveys radio signals delivered to and from a distributed antenna system.
9. Emergency Responder Radio Coverage System: A two-way radio communication system installed to assure the effective operation of radio communications systems specifically for fire, emergency medical services or law enforcement agencies within a structure where radio reception may otherwise be too weak for reliable communications.
10. Delivered Audio Quality Definitions ("DAQ"): This is a universal standard adopted from TSB-88-B and often cited in system designs and specifications.
    a. DAQ 1: Unusable, speech present but unreadable.
    b. DAQ 2: Understandable with considerable effort. Frequent repetition due to noise/distortion.
    c. DAQ 3: Speech understandable with slight effort. Occasional repetition required due to noise/distortion.
    d. DAQ 3.4: Speech understandable with repetition only rarely required. Some noise/distortion
    e. DAQ 4: Speech easily understood. Occasional noise/distortion.
    f. DAQ 4.5: Speech easily understood. Infrequent noise/distortion.
    g. DAQ 5: Speech easily understood.

11. Active System Components: System components, such as amplifiers, that require power. These components typically are utilized to provide amplification or "gain" to signals on the system.
12. Passive System Components: These components introduce signal loss in an RF system. Splitters, combiners, taps, directional couplers and cable are examples of passive system components.
13. Passive InterModulation ("PIM"): Unwanted signals generated due to non-linear connections or junctions in an RF path.
14. FCC: Federal Communications Commission
15. OET 65 Standards: FCC's Bulletin 65 provides Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields.
16. Public Safety/First Responder: Public Safety or First Responder agencies which are charged with the responsibility of responding to emergency situations. These include, but are not limited to: law enforcement departments, fire departments, and emergency medical companies.
17. RF: Radio Frequency

1.5 Design Approval

Plans shall be submitted and approved by the AHJ prior to installation. The Owner will submit the proposed design along with the full building plans as part of its Scheduled Plan Review. The following information shall be provided by the system designer/Contractor:

1. Detailed drawings showing the location of the amplification equipment and associated antenna systems.
   a. System Block Diagram including the donor antenna(s), BDA(s), passive components and in-building antennas. Include the RF link budget.
   b. Overlay of the system design on building floor plan drawings
2. Manufacturer's data sheets on all equipment to be installed.

1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Frequencies

1. *Two* sets of frequencies are to be utilized on the system.
2. The following FCC-licensed facilities are to be carried on the system:

FCC Call Sign	Downstream/ Base-to-mobile Frequency	Upstream/ Mobile-to-base Frequency	Channel Bandwidth

3. Transmissions on each set of frequencies must individually meet the coverage, minimum signal and minimum voice quality requirements.
4. Frequency Changes: Equipment selected for this system must be capable of being configured to different frequency pairs in the 700 - 800 MHz Public Safety frequency bands. These changes may later be necessary due to future additions or optimization of radio systems maintained by the AHJ.
5. It is the responsibility of the contractor to confirm the frequencies in use with the AHJ before proceeding with the system installation.

B. Minimum Received Signal Levels

1. Downstream signals: -95 dBm; The minimum signal strength that shall be received inside the building.
2. Upstream signals: -95 dBm: The minimum signal strength that shall be received at the Authority's repeater site.
3. Received signals in the building and at the Authority's repeater facility shall have a minimum Signal-to-Noise ratio of 15 dB.
4. Minimum received signal levels must be maintained regardless of seasonal and occasional signal path propagation conditions including those caused by weather and seasonal foliage changes.
5. Donor antennas utilized for the system must be directional and directed toward the respective repeater(s).
6. The minimum isolation between the donor antenna and system antennas shall be 15 dB or higher as necessary to prevent system oscillation based on the operating parameters required to meet the minimum coverage requirements.

C. Coverage
1. Signals at or above the minimum levels are to be receivable to and from 95% of all areas within the building. Spaces or rooms defined as critical areas require 99% coverage. For purposes of this Section, 95% coverage is considered to be all areas of the building.
2. The contractor is responsible for providing a system design and installation that provides enhancement only to those areas of the building where existing off-air service does not meet the minimum levels as described above. Signal strength surveys to confirm coverage enhancement requirements are the responsibility of the contractor. Care must be taken in engineering a system that will not cause interference to the Authority's radio system outside the building.

D. Equipment Locations
1. BDA: Wall space has been allocated for system electronic and headend components in the Electrical Room. The wall space is 4 feet wide by 8 feet tall.
2. Donor Antenna(s): A preferred antenna location on the building roof has been specified by the owner. The contractor is responsible for providing and installing the antenna(s), mounting hardware, roof penetration and conduit from the antenna mast to the Fire Control Room.
3. Electronic components, including secondary power, shall be designed for operation in a NEMA 4 non-vented weather tight box. These components must be capable of reliable operation at temperatures ranging from -22 degrees F to +120 degrees F (-30 degrees C to +50 degrees C) minimum.

E. System Power Source
1. A dedicated, 120-volt, 20 A circuit has been specified as primary power for the BDA or any other required electronic components located in the Electrical Room. If additional power is required at this or other locations such must be clearly specified as part of the submitted system design.
2. A secondary automatic transfer power source for all active electronic components in the system shall be provided. Supplier shall provide battery back up for 5 minutes of operation. System backup is by generator, however battery back shall be provided for momentary losses. If a generator is provided, battery back up capacity shall be 24 hours.

F. Mode of Operation

The system shall be designed for continuous, always-on service. A malfunction alarm for the BDA shall be provided and connected to the building fire alarm system.

G. System Frequency Response
All cable and passive electronic components shall have a minimum pass band of 400 – 2700 MHz.

H. Survivability
1. Physical Protection: All wiring and cabling, with the exception of radiating cable and antenna jumper cables measuring less than 2 feet in length, shall be installed in conduit.
2. All exposed cable, including flexible jumper cables, shall be plenum rated, utilizing a jacket of non-halogenated, fire retardant polyolefin.

I. Compatibility
The system shall not cause harmful interference to other RF systems in the building.

J. RF Exposure
The system shall meet the RF exposure guidelines of FCC Bulletin OET 65.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal Requirements with Bid Response
1. Product Data: Submit the manufacturer datasheets for the following components:
   a. Donor Antennas
   b. Coverage Antennas and/or Radiating Cable
   c. Coaxial Cable and Connectors
   d. Passive Devices including Splitters, Taps, Combiners and Couplers
   e. Bi-Directional Amplifiers (BDA)
   f. Secondary Power Supplies
   g. Surge Protection
2. Shop Drawings
   a. System Block Diagram including the donor antenna(s), BDA(s), passive components and in-building antennas. Include the RF link budget.
   b. Overlay of the system design on building floor plan drawings
   c. Overlay on floor plan drawings of the predicted signal strength within the coverage area indicating, at a minimum, the –95 dBm downlink (base to mobile) signal strength for all coverage areas.
   d. Building elevation and plan views depicting the location of any outdoor antennas associated with the proposed system. Include the antenna centerline height above building, orientation, mounting method, cabling, conduit route and the location of all external grounding connections.
   e. BDA and Secondary Power Supply installation. Include plan and elevation views indicating equipment dimensions, mounting methods, enclosure type, cable and conduit routing, voltage required, power required, label locations and required clearance from other equipment. Identify each piece of equipment by brand, model number and equipment type.
   f. Drawings and block diagrams are to be provided in AutoCAD format and accompanied by two (2) printed copies.

g. Shop drawings shall be 8.5 inch x 11 inch or greater, scaled or dimensioned, with dimensions or scale clearly noted. Floor plan drawings shall be 24 inch x 36 inch minimum with drawings scaled to legible size.
h. All components shall be consistently named or labeled for reference in other drawings, diagrams and tables.

3. Other Submissions
   a. Specify antenna grounding and surge protection in accordance with NEC Article 810 and these specifications.
   b. Specify the backup/secondary power source, and include calculations to ensure the backup power requirements as specified in this standard are met.
   c. List of Individuals Responsible for the system design, planning and installation along with their qualifications and experience.

B. Submittal Requirements Prior to the Start of System Installation
1. Documentation confirming the latest information from the AHJ of the frequencies to be supported by the system.
2. List of any approved system design changes required since the original bid and the reason for each change. This list includes any design changes required for approval by the AHJ.
3. Updated Product Data, Shop Drawings and Diagrams reflecting any changes.
4. Bill of Materials ("BOM")
5. Provide the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of service organizations that carry stock of repair parts for the system to be installed.
6. System Installation Schedule as approved by the Owner, General Contractor and AHJ.

C. Submittal Requirements at Project Close Out
1. As-Built Drawings of all items required and in the formats listed in item A and B above.
2. Test Reports
   a. In-Building Coverage Test Results
   b. Donor Antenna Isolation
   c. Spectrum Analysis Report demonstrating only the intended frequencies are being carried on the system.
   d. Spectrum Analysis Report demonstrating no spurious oscillations, PIM or other intermodulation products are being produced that would affect other services or system performance.
   e. Sweep test results of all coaxial cable runs
   f. System Malfunction Alarm and its connection to the fire alarm panel.
3. Record of system operating parameters including:
   a. Signal levels received at the donor antenna
   b. Signal levels at the input and output of the BDA
   c. BDA Gain Settings
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit hardware and software manuals for all products including all features and operating parameters.
5. Warranty Documents:
   a. Submit for all manufactured components utilized in the system
   b. Submit Manufacturer's Extended Warranty
   c. Submit Contractor's System Warranty

6. Submit the agenda for the training class along with copies of handouts to be utilized in the class.
7. Compile the items listed in this section into a single Operations and Maintenance Manual to be provided in electronic format. Include drawings and block diagrams in Adobe Acrobat (.pdf) and in AutoCAD format. Include a section containing a copy of the latest maintenance, testing and reporting requirements of the AHJ.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Minimum Qualifications of Personnel
   1. Engineering and Design:
      a. A valid Professional Engineering Certification and Certification of in-building system training issued by the manufacturer of the equipment being installed or
      b. Approval issued by the AHJ
   2. Installer Qualifications:
      a. Minimum five years of experience installing systems of similar scope and complexity
      b. Certified by the manufacturer of the BDA equipment to be installed

B. All equipment shall be UL listed and labeled, and in accordance with applicable NEMA and ANSI Standards.

C. All parts of racks and enclosures shall be welded or assembled with paint piercing ground washers, grounding strip and bonding jumper.

1.9 WARRANTY

The contractor shall warrant system performance as specified in this section for one year starting on the date of final system acceptance.

1.10 MAINTENANCE AND ANNUAL TESTING

A. The contractor shall provide the first full year of maintenance for the system. The term of this maintenance period begins on the date of final system acceptance.

B. Maintenance shall include
   1. 24-hour by 7-day emergency response within two hours after notification
   2. Annual testing

C. Annual Tests
   1. BDA Operating Parameters:
      a. Record signal and power levels
      b. Review self-diagnostics and other items as recommended by the manufacturer
      c. Note any parameter changes from previous tests, investigate causes
   2. Backup/Secondary Power Supply
      a. Record voltage and charging of batteries before testing under load

b. Test batteries under full load for at least one hour or until the integrity of the batteries can be determined.
3. Test system malfunction alarm and its connection to the fire alarm panel
4. Maintain documentation on-site with a backup copy off-site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

Subject to compliance with the requirements of this Section, manufacturers of the products that may be utilized in the system include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. CommScope/Andrew
2. Cobham
3. PCTEL
4. Times Microwave
5. RFS – Radio Frequency Systems
6. Microlab/FXR
7. Bird Technologies
8. EMR Corp.
9. Galtronics
10. ADRF
11. Notifier

2.2 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Donor Antennas

1. Electrical:
   a. Frequency band: 700-900 MHz covering the frequencies specified by the AHJ.
   b. VSWR ≤ 1.5:1
   c. Gain: ≥ 10.0 dBi
   d. Maximum Input Power: 100 watts
   e. Polarization: Vertical
   f. Front-to-back ratio: ≥ 15 dB
   g. Vertical Beamwidth: ≤ 30 degrees
   h. Horizontal Beamwidth: ≤ 60 degrees
   i. Impedance: 50Ω
2. Mechanical:
   a. Connector: 50Ω type N Female
   b. Mounting: Mast on a non-penetrating mount utilizing concrete block ballast
   c. Grounding/Bonding: Pursuant to NFPA 70 NEC Article 810 requirements
3. Environmental:
   a. Temperature: -40°C to +60°C
   b. Lightning Protection: Direct Ground
   c. Maximum Rated Wind Velocity: 125 mph

4. Antenna Cable:
    a. All exposed cable shall have a UV stable black jacket for protection from sunlight
    b. Cable feed to the BDA shall be ½" copper corrugated outer conductor foam dielectric coax.
    c. Weatherproofing: exposed connectors protected from the effects of weather
    d. Rigid conduit between the Donor location and BDA location shall be provided and installed by the contractor.

B. Omni-Directional In-Building Coverage Antennas
    a. Frequency band: 698-900 MHz
    b. VSWR ≤ 1.8:1
    c. Gain: ≥ 1.0 dBi
    d. Maximum Input Power: 25 watts
    e. Polarization: Vertical
    f. Vertical Beamwidth: ≥ 65 degrees
    g. Horizontal Beamwidth: 360 degrees
    h. PIM: < -150 dBc
    i. Impedance: 50Ω
2. Mechanical:
    a. Connector: 50Ω type N Female
    b. Mounting: ceiling mount or securely mounted above ceiling
3. Environmental:
    a. Temperature: -20°C to +70°C
    b. Plenum rated

C. Directional Coverage Antennas
1. Electrical
    a. Frequency band: 698-900 MHz
    b. VSWR ≤ 1.8:1
    c. Gain: ≥ 1.0 dBi
    d. Maximum Input Power: 25 watts
    e. Polarization: Vertical
    f. Vertical Beamwidth: ≥ 65 degrees
    g. Horizontal Beamwidth: 90 degrees - 180 degrees nominal
    h. PIM: < -150 dBc
    i. Impedance: 50Ω
2. Mechanical:
    a. Connector: 50Ω type N Female
    b. Mounting: ceiling or wall mount
3. Environmental:

a. Temperature: -20°C to +70°C
b. Plenum rated

D. Radiating Cable
1. Material:
a. Nominal size: ½" or 7/8"
b. Outer conductor: Corrugated copper
c. Slot Design: milled, two rows
d. Jacket Material: Non-halogenated, fire retardant polyolefin
e. Dielectric Material: Foam PE
f. Inner Conductor Material: Copper wire, copper tube or Copper-clad aluminum wire
g. Mounting: Minimum clearance of 2" from walls or other structure, secured at intervals and with hardware pursuant to manufacturer's specifications
2. Electrical
a. Frequency Range: 30 – 2650 MHz
b. Impedance: 50Ω ± 1
3. Environmental:
4. Temperature: -20°C to +80°C

E. Foam Dielectric Cable
1. Material:
a. Nominal size: ½" or 7/8"
b. Outer conductor: Corrugated copper
c. Dielectric Material: Foam PE
d. Inner Conductor Material: Copper wire, copper tube or Copper-clad aluminum wire
2. Electrical
a. Frequency Range: 30 – 2650 MHz
b. Impedance: 50Ω ± 1
3. Environmental:
4. Temperature: -20°C to +80°C

F. Splitters, Combiners, Couplers, Taps, Coax Jumpers and Connectors:
1. Electrical
a. Frequency Range: 698 – 2700 MHz
b. VSWR ≤ 1.3:1
c. Maximum Input Power: ≥50 watts
d. PIM: < -150 dBc

e. Impedance: 50Ω

2. Mechanical:
   a. Connector: 50Ω type N Female
3. Environmental:
   a. Temperature: -20°C to +70°C

G. BDA: Bi-Directional Amplifiers utilized on the system must meet the following requirements:
   1. Electrical
      a. Frequency agility: The unit shall have the capability to change operating frequencies within the 700 – 800 MHz Public Safety Band as may be required due to licensing changes of the AHJ or actions of the FCC.
      b. Alarming Functions: The BDA shall be linked to the building's fire alarm panel and configured to signal an alarm in the event of a failure with the BDA or donor antenna system.
      c. The BDA shall have received FCC Certification prior to installation.
      d. The system must be compatible with both analog and digital transmissions.
      e. Automatic gain and level controls shall be integrated into the BDA with a minimum dynamic range of 60 dB, less any gain reduction setting.
   2. Mechanical
      a. All BDA components shall be housed in a single, NEMA4 cabinet. The cabinet must be waterproof and capable of dissipating all heat without the use of ventilation.
      b. The BDA cabinet shall be painted fire engine red and display the following labeling in bright yellow letters: "RADIO REPEATER" unless alternate labeling is specified by the AHJ.
      c. The name and telephone number of the vendor responsible for system maintenance also must be marked on the cabinet.
      d. If the BDA is not located in the same room as the fire alarm panel, a sign shall be placed at the fire alarm panel with the name and telephone number of the local Fire Department indicating that they shall be notified of any failures that extend past two hours.
      e. The cabinet shall be securely locked to prevent unauthorized access.
   3. Environmental
      a. The BDA, as installed in the approved NEMA4 cabinet, shall be designed for operating in temperatures ranging from -22 degrees F to +120 degrees F (-30 degrees C to +50 degrees C).

H. Power Supplies: At least two (2) independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided, one primary and one secondary.
   1. Primary Power: The primary power source shall be supplied from a dedicated 20 Ampere branch circuit. The presence of primary power shall be monitored by the BDA monitoring system and provide notification upon loss of primary power.

2. Secondary Power: The secondary power source shall be capable of operating the in-building radio system for at least 24 hours of 100% system operation. This system shall utilize a dedicated battery system or a self-starting generator with dedicated storage batteries.
   a. The battery system shall automatically charge in the presence of the external/primary power input.
   b. The secondary power system shall be engaged automatically upon loss of primary power.
   c. The secondary power system shall be contained in one NEMA 4 enclosure.
   d. An alarm shall be configured to signal failure of the battery charging system or if the battery charge falls below 70% of capacity.
3. Environmental
   a. The secondary power system, as installed in the approved NEMA4 cabinet, shall be designed for operating in temperatures ranging from -22 degrees F to +120 degrees F (-30 degrees C to +50 degrees C).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. System Signal Wires, Power Conductors and Cables
1. Wires and cables shall enter each equipment enclosure, cabinet or rack in such a manner that all doors or access panels can be opened and closed unobstructed by cables.
2. Routing and Interconnection
   a. Wires or cables routed between cabinets, racks, and other equipment shall be installed in an approved conduit or cable tray that is secured to the building structure.
3. All cable shall be sweep tested for detection of any faults prior to and after installation. Sweep results shall be recorded for future reference.
4. Coaxial cable shall be carefully installed in strict compliance with the manufacturers' recommended procedures with special attention given to pulling tensions, bending radius and proper support.
5. Coaxial antenna cabling, except for radiating cable, shall be installed in its own metallic conduit.
6. All equipment, cable and components shall be installed and connected according to the OEM's specifications to insure correct installation and system performance.
7. Coordinate all roof penetrations with Owner and/or roofing contractor.

3.2 GROUNDING

A. Ground and bond cable shields and equipment per Manufacturer's requirements and NFPA 70 NEC requirements.

B. The Donor antenna mast shall be grounded per NFPA 70 NEC requirements. Grounding blocks and surge protection shall be provided for outside coaxial cabling.

3.3 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. An initial set of system Commissioning Tests shall be performed for the Owner prior to final Acceptance Testing with the AHJ. The commissioning tests will include all tests outlined in Part 1.07 C.2., "Submittal Requirements at Project Closeout", "Test Reports".

B. Tests shall be made using frequencies close to the frequencies used by the appropriate emergency services. If testing is done on the actual frequencies, then this testing must be coordinated with the local Department unit. All testing must be done on frequencies authorized by the FCC. A valid FCC license will be required if testing is done on frequencies different from the licensed department frequencies.

C. Final Acceptance Test Procedures
Acceptance testing shall consist of the following tests or those tests as may be directed by the AHJ and Cabarrus County emergency response.

1. Coverage Testing: For testing system signal strength and quality, the testing shall be based on the delivered audio quality (DAQ) system. A DAQ level below 3.4 shall be considered a failed test for a given grid cell. See Part 1.04, DEFINATIONS for descriptions of each DAQ level.
    a. Each floor of the building shall be divided into a grid of approximately 40 equal areas.
    b. The tests will be conducted by using a calibrated portable two-way radio of the latest brand and model as currently in use by the local Department.
    c. Small scale drawings (11 inch x 17 inch maximum) of the structure shall be provided by the Contractor for use and documentation of the test results. The plans shall show each floor divided into the grids as described above, and the results of any pre-testing. Each grid shall be labeled to indicate the DAQ result from the final acceptance testing.
    d. DAQ tests shall be made with the antenna held in a vertical position at 3 to 4 feet above the floor to simulate a typical portable radio worn on the belt or turnout coat pocket.
    e. A test location shall be selected near the center of each grid square. Once the test location of a grid area is selected, prospecting for a better spot within the area is permitted only within three feet (3') in any direction of the selected test location.
    f. The two-way radio will be utilized to transmit voice transmissions to verify communications to and from the outside area covered by the Department's radio system. For each grid location, the DAQ of the transmission shall be determined.
    g. A maximum of two non-adjacent areas will be allowed to fail the DAQ test.
    h. In the event that three or more of the grid test locations fail the test, the floor may be re-tested by creating a new grid consisting of 80 equal areas and test locations selected within each area. In testing the new grid, a maximum of four non-adjacent areas may fail the test. If the system fails the 80 area test, then the system must be revised to meet the coverage requirement.
2. Isolation and Spectrum Analysis Testing:
    a. Measurement of the isolation between the donor antenna(s) and the system antennas shall be performed utilizing a spectrum analyzer and appropriate signal generator.

b. A Spectrum Analysis Report demonstrating only the intended frequencies are being carried on the system.
c. Spectrum Analysis Report demonstrating no spurious oscillations or intermodulation products are being produced that would affect other services or system performance.

3. Other tests as requested by the AHJ.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 13 00

ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Security access central-control station.
2. One or more security access networked workstations.
3. Security access operating system and application software.
4. Security access controllers connected to high-speed electronic-data transmission network.

B. Related Requirements:

.

1. Section 28 15 00 "Access Control System Hardware Devices" for access control system hardware, such as keypads, card readers, and biometric identity devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.

B. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.

C. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.

D. Location: A Location on the network having a workstation-to-controller communications link, with additional controllers at the Location connected to the workstation-to-controller link with a TIA 485-A communications loop. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.

E. Workstation: Personal computer. Applies to the central station, workstations, and file servers.

F. RAS: Remote access services.

G. RF: Radio frequency.

H. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.

I. OSDP: Open Source Device Protocol

J. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.

K. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.

L. WMP: Windows media player.

M. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Diagrams for cable management system.
2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:

    a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
    b. Patch cords.
    c. Patch panels.

4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, workstations, and controllers.

C. Product Schedules.

D. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, and faceplates. For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Workstation operating system documentation.
2. Workstation installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the workstation and all installed peripherals. Software shall include system restore, emergency boot diskettes, and drivers for all installed hardware. Provide separately for each workstation.
3. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on USB media of the hard-copy submittal.
4. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match the products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Laser Printers: Three toner cassettes and one replacement drum unit.
2. Credential card blanks, ready for printing. Include enough credential cards for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra 50 percent for future use.
3. Fuses of all kinds, power and electronic, equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size used, but no fewer than three units.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Cable installer must have on staff an RCDD certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, workstations, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Central Station and Controllers:

1. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between 50 and 85 deg F, and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.
3. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
4. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 60 to 85 deg F and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
3. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, Type 3. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of [minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (and snow cover up to 12 inches thick).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE

A. Manufacturers:
1. Open Options – Owner Preferred
2. Axis
3. LenelS2
4. Software House
5. Or approved equal submitted and approved by engineer 10 days before close of bid.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Security Access System: Central server-based central station and field-installed controllers, connected by a high-speed electronic data transmission network. Systems shall allow Hotel style access to select doors and the ability to temporarily assign credentials remotely.

B. System Software: Based on 64-bit, Microsoft central station, workstation operating system, server operating system shall be installed on a separate partition on the VMS (Video Management System) Server and application software. Software shall have the following capabilities:

1. Multiuser and multitasking to allow for independent activities and monitoring to occur simultaneously at different workstations.
2. Graphical user interface to show pull-down menus and a menu-tree format that complies with interface guidelines of the operating system.
3. System license for the entire system including capability for future additions that are within the indicated system size limits specified in this Section.
4. Open-architecture system that allows importing and exporting of data and interfacing with other systems that are compatible with operating system.
5. Password-protected operator login and access.
6. Open-database-connectivity compliant.

.

C. Connection to the

2.3 OPERATION

A. Security access control software shall be accessible via web browser from a local and a remote location.

B. Distributed Processing: A fully distributed processing system.

1. Access-control information, including time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data, shall be downloaded to controllers so each controller can make access-control decisions.
2. Intermediate controllers for access control are prohibited.
3. In the event that communications with the central controller are lost, controllers shall automatically buffer event transactions until communications are restored, at which time buffered events shall be uploaded to the central station.

C. Data Capacity:

1. 130 different card-reader formats.
2. 999 comments.
3. 48 graphic file types for importing maps.

D. Location Capacity:

1. 200 reader-controlled doors.
2. 5,000 total-access credentials.
3. 100 supervised alarm inputs.
4. 100 programmable outputs.
5. 32,000 custom action messages per Location to instruct operator on action required when alarm is received.

E. System Network Requirements:

1. System components shall be interconnected and shall provide automatic communication of status changes, commands, field-initiated interrupts, and other communications required for proper system operation.
2. Communication shall not require operator initiation or response and shall return to normal after partial- or total-network interruption such as power loss or transient upset.
3. System shall automatically annunciate communication failures to the operator and shall identify the communications link that has experienced a partial or total failure.

F. False-Alarm Reduction: The design of the central station and controllers shall contain features to reduce false alarms. Equipment and software shall comply with SIA CP-01.

G. Error Detection:

1. Use a cyclic code method to detect single- and double-bit errors, burst errors of eight bits or fewer, and at least 99 percent of all other multibit and burst errors between controllers and the central station.
2. Interactive or product error-detection codes alone will not be acceptable.
3. A message shall be in error if one bit is received incorrectly.
4. Retransmit messages with detected errors.
5. Allow for an operator-assigned two-digit decimal number to each communications link representing the number of retransmission attempts.
6. Central station shall print a communication failure alarm message when the number of consecutive retransmission attempts equals the assigned quantity.
7. Monitor the frequency of data transmission failure for display and logging.

H. Data Line Supervision: System shall initiate an alarm in response to opening, closing, shorting, or grounding of data transmission lines.

I. Door Hardware Interface:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" and Section 08 71 11 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)" for door hardware required to be monitored or controlled by the security access system.
2. Electrical characteristics of controllers shall match the signal and power requirements of door hardware.

2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

2.5 APPLICATION SOFTWARE

A. System Software: Based on 64-bit, Microsoft Windows operating system.

1. Multiuser multitasking shall allow independent activities and monitoring to occur simultaneously at different workstations.
2. Graphical user interface shall show pull-down menus and a menu-tree format.
3. Capability for future additions within the indicated system size limits.
4. Open architecture that allows importing and exporting of data and interfacing with other systems that are compatible with operating system.
5. Password-protected operator login and access.

B. Application Software: Interface between the alarm annunciation and entry-control controllers to monitor sensors, operate displays, report alarms, generate reports, and help train system operators.

1. Reside at the central station, workstations, and controllers as required to perform specified functions.
2. Operate and manage peripheral devices.

3. Manage files for disk I/O, including creating, deleting, and copying files; and automatically maintain a directory of all files, including size and location of each sequential and random-ordered record.
4. Import custom icons into graphics to represent alarms and I/O devices.
5. Globally link I/O so that any I/O can link to any other I/O within the same Location without requiring interaction with the host workstation. This operation shall be at the controller.
6. Globally code I/O links so that any access-granted event can link to any I/O with the same Location without requiring interaction with the host workstation. This operation shall be at the controller.
7. Messages from workstation to controllers and controllers to controllers shall be on a polled network that utilizes checksumming and acknowledgment of each message. Communication shall be automatically verified, buffered, and retransmitted if message is not acknowledged.
8. Selectable poll frequency and message time-out settings shall handle bandwidth and latency issues for TCP/IP, RF, and other workstation-to-controller communications methods by changing the polling frequency and the amount of time the system waits for a response.
9. Automatic and encrypted backups for database and history backups shall be automatically stored on the central shared server and encrypted with a nine-character alphanumeric password that must be used to restore or read data contained in backup.
10. Operator audit trail for recording and reporting all changes made to database and system software.
11. Support network protocol and topology, TCP/IP, Novel Netware, Digital Pathworks, Banyan Vines, LAN/WAN, and RAS.

C. Workstation Software:

1. Password levels shall be individually customized at each workstation to allow or disallow operator access to program functions for each Location.
2. Workstation event filtering shall allow user to define events and alarms that will be displayed at each workstation. If an alarm is unacknowledged (not handled by another workstation) for a preset amount of time, the alarm will automatically appear on the filtered workstation.

D. Controller Software:

1. Controllers shall operate as autonomous, intelligent processing units.

    a. Controllers shall make decisions about access control, alarm monitoring, linking functions, and door-locking schedules for their operation, independent of other system components.
    b. Controllers shall be part of a fully distributed processing-control network.
    c. The portion of the database associated with a controller, and consisting of parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of points connected to that controller, shall be maintained in the controller.

2. The following functions shall be fully implemented and operational within each controller:

    a. Monitoring inputs.

b. Controlling outputs.
c. Automatically reporting alarms to the central station.
d. Reporting of sensor and output status to the central station on request.
e. Maintaining real time, automatically updated by the central station at least once a day.
f. Communicating with the central station.
g. Executing controller resident programs.
h. Diagnosing.
i. Downloading and uploading data to and from the central station.

3. Controller Operations at a Location:
   a. In the event of communication failure between the central station and a Location, there shall be no degradation in operations at the controllers at that Location. Controllers at each Location shall be connected to a memory buffer with a capacity to store up to 10,000 events; there shall be no loss of transactions in system history files until the buffer overflows.
   b. Buffered events shall be handled in a first-in-first-out mode of operation.

4. Individual Controller Operation:

   a. Controllers shall transmit alarms, status changes, and other data to the central station when communications circuits are operable. If communications are not available, controllers shall function in a stand-alone mode; operational data, including the status and alarm data normally transmitted to the central station, shall be stored for later transmission to the central station. Storage capacity for the latest 1024 events shall be provided at each controller.
   b. Card-reader ports of a controller shall be custom configurable for at least 40 Insert number different card-reader or keypad formats. Multiple reader or keypad formats may be used simultaneously at different controllers or within the same controller.
   c. Controllers shall provide a response to card readers or keypad entries in less than 0.25 seconds, regardless of system size.
   d. Controllers that are reset, or powered up from a nonpowered state, shall automatically request a parameter download and reboot to their proper working state. This shall happen without any operator intervention.
   e. Initial Startup: When controllers are brought on-line, database parameters shall be automatically downloaded to them. After initial download is completed, only database changes shall be downloaded to each controller.
   f. On failure for any reason, controllers shall perform an orderly shutdown and force controller outputs to a predetermined failure-mode state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device.
   g. After power is restored, following a power failure, startup software shall initiate self-test diagnostic routines, after which controllers shall resume normal operation.
   h. After controller failure, if the database and application software are no longer resident, controllers shall not restart but shall remain in the failure mode until repaired. If database and application programs are resident, controllers shall immediately resume operation. If not, software shall be restored automatically from the central station.

5. Communications Monitoring:

a. System shall monitor and report status of OSDP communications loop of each Location.
b. Communication status window shall display which controllers are currently communicating, a total count of missed polls since midnight, and which controller last missed a poll.
c. Communication status window shall show the type of CPU, the type of I/O board, and the amount of RAM for each controller.

6. Operating systems shall include a real-time clock function that maintains seconds, minutes, hours, day, date, and month. The real-time clock shall be automatically synchronized with the central station at least once a day to plus or minus 10 seconds. The time synchronization shall be automatic, without operator action and without requiring system shutdown.

E. Controller-to-Controller Communications:

1. TIA 485-A, four-wire, point-to-point, regenerative (repeater) communications network methodology.
2. TIA 485-A communications signal shall be regenerated at each controller.

F. Database Downloads:

1. All data transmissions from workstations to a Location, and between controllers at a Location, shall include a complete database checksum to check the integrity of the transmission. If the data checksum does not match, a full data download shall be automatically retransmitted.
2. If a controller is reset for any reason, it shall automatically request and receive a database download from the workstation. The download shall restore data stored at the controller to their normal working state and shall take place with no operator intervention.

G. Operator Interface:

1. Inputs in system shall have two icon representations, one for the normal state and one for the abnormal state.
2. When viewing and controlling inputs, displayed icons shall automatically change to the proper icon to display the current system state in real time. Icons shall also display the input's state, whether armed or bypassed, and if the input is in the armed or bypassed state due to a time zone or a manual command.
3. Outputs in system shall have two icon representations, one for the secure (locked) state and one for the open (unlocked) state.
4. Icons displaying status of the I/O points shall be constantly updated to show their current real-time condition without prompting by the operator.
5. The operator shall be able to scroll the list of I/Os and press the appropriate toolbar button, or right click, to command the system to perform the desired function.
6. Graphic maps or drawings containing inputs, outputs, and override groups shall include the following:

a. Database to import and store full-color maps or drawings and allow for input, output, and override group icons to be placed on maps.
b. Maps to provide real-time display animation and allow for control of points assigned to them.

c. System to allow inputs, outputs, and override groups to be placed on different maps.
d. Software to allow changing the order or priority in which maps will be displayed.

7. Override Groups Containing I/Os:

a. System shall incorporate override groups that provide the operator with the status and control over user-defined "sets" of I/Os with a single icon.
b. Icon shall change automatically to show the live summary status of points in that group.
c. Override group icon shall provide a method to manually control or set to time-zone points in the group.
d. Override group icon shall allow the expanding of the group to show icons representing the live status for each point in the group, individual control over each point, and the ability to compress the individual icons back into one summary icon.

8. Schedule Overrides of I/Os and Override Groups:

a. To accommodate temporary schedule changes that do not fall within the holiday parameters, the operator shall have the ability to override schedules individually for each input, output, or override group.
b. Each schedule shall be composed of a minimum of two dates with separate times for each date.
c. The first time and date shall be assigned the override state that the point shall advance to when the time and date become current.
d. The second time and date shall be assigned the state that the point shall return to when the time and date become current.

9. Copy command in database shall allow for like data to be copied and then edited for specific requirements, to reduce redundant data entry.

H. Operator Access Control:

1. Control operator access to system controls through three password-protected operator levels. System operators and managers with appropriate password clearances shall be able to change operator levels for operators.
2. Three successive attempts by an operator to execute functions beyond their defined level during a 24-hour period shall initiate a software tamper alarm.
3. A minimum of 1024 unique user accounts shall be available with the system software. System shall display the operator's name or initials in the console's first field. System shall print the operator's name or initials, action, date, and time on the system printer at login and logoff.
4. The password shall not be displayed or printed.
5. Each password shall be definable and assignable for the following:

a. Selected commands to be usable.
b. Access to system software.
c. Access to application software.
d. Individual zones that are to be accessed.
e. Access to database.

I. Operator Commands:

1. Command Input: Plain-language words and acronyms shall allow operators to use the system without extensive training or data-processing backgrounds. System prompts shall be a word, a phrase, or an acronym.
2. Command inputs shall be acknowledged and processing shall start in not less than one<Insert number> second(s).
3. Tasks that are executed by operator's commands shall include the following:

    a. Acknowledge Alarms: Used to acknowledge that the operator has observed the alarm message.
    b. Place Zone in Access: Used to remotely disable intrusion-alarm circuits emanating from a specific zone. System shall be structured so that console operator cannot disable tamper circuits.
    c. Place Zone in Secure: Used to remotely activate intrusion-alarm circuits emanating from a specific zone.
    d. System Test: Allows the operator to initiate a system-wide operational test.
    e. Zone Test: Allows the operator to initiate an operational test for a specific zone.
    f. Print reports.
    g. Change Operator: Used for changing operators.
    h. Security Lighting Controls: Allows the operator to remotely turn on or turn off security lights.
    i. Display Graphics: Used to show any graphic displays implemented in the system. Graphic displays shall be completed within 20 seconds from time of operator command.
    j. Run system tests.
    k. Generate and format reports.
    l. Request help with the system operation.

        1) Include in main menus.
        2) Provide unique, descriptive, context-sensitive help for selections and functions with the press of one function key.
        3) Provide navigation to specific topic from within the first help window.
        4) Help shall be accessible outside the application program.

    m. Entry-Control Commands:

        1) Lock (secure) or unlock (open) each controlled entry and exit up to four times a day through time-zone programming.
        2) Arm or disarm each monitored input up to four times a day through time-zone programming.
        3) Enable or disable readers or keypads up to two times a day through time-zone programming.
        4) Enable or disable cards or codes up to four times a day per entry point through access-level programming.

4. Command Input Errors: Show operator input assistance when a command cannot be executed because of operator input errors. Assistance screen shall use plain-language words and phrases to explain why the command cannot be executed. Error responses that require an operator to look up a code in a manual or other document are not acceptable. Conditions causing operator assistance messages include the following:

a. Command entered is incorrect or incomplete.
b. Operator is restricted from using that command.
c. Command addresses a point that is disabled or out of service.
d. Command addresses a point that does not exist.
e. Command is outside the system's capacity.

J. Alarms:

1. System Setup:

a. Assign manual and automatic responses to incoming-point status change or alarms.
b. Automatically respond to input with a link to other inputs, outputs, or operator-response plans; unique sound with use of WAV files; and maps or images that graphically represent the point location.
c. Sixty-character message field for each alarm.
d. Operator-response-action messages shall allow message length of at least 65,000 characters, with database storage capacity of up to 32,000 messages. Setup shall assign messages to access point.
e. Secondary messages shall be assignable by the operator for printing to provide further information and shall be editable by the operator.
f. Allow 25 secondary messages with a field of four lines of 60 characters each.
g. Store the most recent 1000 alarms for recall by the operator using the report generator.

2. Software Tamper:

a. Annunciate a tamper alarm when unauthorized changes to system database files are attempted. Three consecutive unsuccessful attempts to log onto system shall generate a software tamper alarm.
b. Annunciate a software tamper alarm when an operator or other individual makes three consecutive unsuccessful attempts to invoke functions beyond the authorization level.
c. Maintain a transcript file of the last 5000 commands entered at each central station to serve as an audit trail. System shall not allow write access to system transcript files by any person, regardless of their authorization level.
d. Allow only acknowledgment of software tamper alarms.

3. Read access to system transcript files shall be reserved for operators with the highest password authorization level available in system.
4. Animated Response Graphics: Highlight alarms with flashing icons on graphic maps; display and constantly update the current status of alarm inputs and outputs in real time through animated icons.
5. Alarm Handling: Each input may be configured so that an alarm cannot be cleared unless it has returned to normal, with options of requiring the operator to enter a comment about disposition of alarm. Allow operator to silence alarm sound when alarm is acknowledged.
6. Alarm Automation Interface: High-level interface to central-station alarm automation software systems. Allows input alarms to be passed to and handled by automation systems in the same manner as burglar alarms, using a TIA 232-F ASCII interface.
7. CCTV Alarm Interface: Allow commands to be sent to CCTV systems during alarms (or input change of state) through serial ports.

8. Camera Control: Provides operator ability to select and control cameras from graphic maps.

K. Alarm Monitoring: Monitor sensors, controllers, and DTS circuits and notify operators of an alarm condition. Display higher-priority alarms first and, within alarm priorities, display the oldest unacknowledged alarm first. Operator acknowledgment of one alarm shall not be considered acknowledgment of other alarms nor shall it inhibit reporting of subsequent alarms.

1. Displayed alarm data shall include type and location of alarm. Printed alarm data shall include type of alarm, location of alarm, date and time (to nearest second) of occurrence, and operator responses.
2. Maps shall automatically display the alarm condition for each input assigned to that map if that option is selected for that input location.
3. Alarms initiate a status of "pending" and require the following two handling steps by operators:

    a. First Operator Step: "Acknowledged." This action shall silence sounds associated with the alarm. The alarm remains in the system "Acknowledged" but "Un-Resolved."
    b. Second Operator Step: Operators enter the resolution or operator comment, giving the disposition of the alarm event. The alarm shall then clear.

4. Each workstation shall display the total pending alarms and total unresolved alarms.
5. Each alarm point shall be programmable to disallow the resolution of alarms until the alarm point has returned to its normal state.
6. Alarms shall transmit to the central station in real time except for allowing connection time for dial-up locations.
7. Alarms shall be displayed and managed from a minimum of four different windows.

    a. Input Status Window: Overlay status icon with a large red blinking icon. Selecting the icon will acknowledge the alarm.
    b. History Log Transaction Window: Display name, time, and date in red text. Selecting red text will acknowledge the alarm.
    c. Alarm Log Transaction Window: Display name, time, and date in red. Selecting red text will acknowledge the alarm.
    d. Graphic Map Display: Display a steady colored icon representing each alarm input location. Change icon to flashing red when the alarm occurs. Change icon from flashing red to steady red when the alarm is acknowledged.

8. Once an alarm is acknowledged, the operator shall be prompted to enter comments about the nature of the alarm and actions taken. Operator's comments may be manually entered or selected from a programmed predefined list, or a combination of both.
9. For locations where there are regular alarm occurrences, provide programmed comments. Selecting that comment shall clear the alarm.
10. The time and name of the operator who acknowledged and resolved the alarm shall be recorded in the database.
11. Identical alarms from the same alarm point shall be acknowledged at the same time the operator acknowledges the first alarm. Identical alarms shall be resolved when the first alarm is resolved.
12. Alarm functions shall have priority over downloading, retrieving, and updating database from workstations and controllers.

13. When a reader-controlled output (relay) is opened, the corresponding alarm point shall be automatically bypassed.

L. Monitor Display: Display text and graphic maps that include zone status integrated into the display. Colors are used for the various components and current data. Colors shall be uniform throughout the system.

1. Color Code:

a. FLASHING RED: Alerts operator that a zone has gone into an alarm or that primary power has failed.
b. STEADY RED: Alerts operator that a zone is in alarm and alarm has been acknowledged.
c. YELLOW: Advises operator that a zone is in access.
d. GREEN: Indicates that a zone is secure and that power is on.

2. Graphics:

a. Support 32,000 graphic display maps and allow import of maps from a minimum of 16 standard formats from another drawing or graphics program.
b. Allow I/O to be placed on graphic maps by the drag-and-drop method.
c. Operators shall be able to view the inputs, outputs, and the point's name by moving the mouse cursor over the point on the graphic map.
d. Inputs or outputs may be placed on multiple graphic maps. The operator shall be able to toggle to view graphic maps associated with I/Os.
e. Each graphic map shall have a display-order sequence number associated with it to provide a predetermined order when toggled to different views.
f. Camera icons shall have the ability to be placed on graphic maps that, when selected by an operator, will open a video window, display the camera associated with that icon, and provide pan-tilt-zoom control.
g. Input, output, or camera placed on a map shall allow the ability to arm or bypass an input, open or secure an output, or control the pan-tilt-zoom function of the selected camera.

M. System test software enables operators to initiate a test of the entire system or of a particular portion of the system.

1. Test Report: The results of each test shall be stored for future display or printout. The report shall document the operational status of system components.

N. Report-Generator Software: Include commands to generate reports for displaying, printing, and storing on disk and tape. Reports shall be stored by type, date, and time. Report printing shall be the lowest-priority activity. Report-generation mode shall be operator selectable but set up initially as periodic, automatic, or on request. Include time and date printed and the name of operator generating the report. Report formats may be configured by operators.

1. Automatic Printing: Setup shall specify, modify, or inhibit the report to be generated; the time the initial report is to be generated; the time interval between reports; the end of the period; and the default printer.
2. Printing on Request: An operator may request a printout of any report.

3. Alarm Reports: Reporting shall be automatic as initially set up. Include alarms recorded by system over the selected time and information about the type of alarm; the type of sensor, the location, the time, and the action taken.
4. Access and Secure Reports: Document zones placed in access, the time placed in access, and the time placed in secure mode.
5. Custom Reports: Reports tailored to exact requirements of who, what, when, and where. As an option, custom report formats may be stored for future printing.
6. Automatic History Reports: Named, saved, and scheduled for automatic generation.
7. Cardholder Reports: Include data, or selected parts of the data, as well as the ability to be sorted by name, card number, imprinted number, or by any of the user-defined fields.
8. Cardholder by Reader Reports: Based on who has access to a specific reader or group of readers by selecting the readers from a list.
9. Cardholder by Access-Level Reports: Display everyone that has been assigned to the specified access level.
10. Who Is "In" (Muster) Report:

    a. Emergency Muster Report: One-click operation on toolbar launches report.
    b. Cardholder Report. Contain a count of persons who are "In" at a selected Location and a detailed listing of name, date, and time of last use, sorted by the last reader used or by the group assignment.

11. Panel Labels Reports: Printout of control-panel field documentation including the actual location of equipment, programming parameters, and wiring identification. Maintain system installation data within system database so that data are available on-site at all times.
12. History Reports: Custom reports that allow the operator to select any date, time, event type, device, output, input, operator, Location, name, or cardholder to be included or excluded from the report.

    a. Initially store history on the hard disk of the host workstation.
    b. Permit viewing of the history on workstations or print history to any system printer.
    c. The report shall be definable by a range of dates and times with the ability to have a daily start and stop time over a given date range.
    d. Each report shall depict the date, time, event type, event description, and device; or I/O name, cardholder group assignment, and cardholder name or code number.
    e. Each line of a printed report shall be numbered to ensure that the integrity of the report has not been compromised.
    f. Total number of lines of the report shall be given at the end of the report. If the report is run for a single event such as "Alarms," the total shall reflect how many alarms occurred during that period.

13. Reports shall have the following four options:

    a. View on screen.
    b. Print to system printer. Include automatic print spooling and "Print To" options if more than one printer is connected to the system.
    c. "Save to File" with full path statement.
    d. System shall have the ability to produce a report indicating status of system inputs and outputs or of inputs and outputs that are abnormal, out of time zone, manually overridden, not reporting, or in alarm.

14. Custom Code List Subroutine: Allow the access codes of system to be sorted and printed according to the following criteria:

    a. Active, inactive, or future activate or deactivate.
    b. Code number, name, or imprinted card number.
    c. Group, Location access levels.
    d. Start and stop code range.
    e. Codes that have not been used since a selectable number of days.
    f. In, out, or either status.
    g. Codes with trace designation.

15. The reports of system database shall allow options so that every data field may be printed.
16. The reports of system database shall be constructed so that the actual position of the printed data shall closely match the position of the data on the data-entry windows.

O. Anti-Passback:

1. System shall have global and local anti-passback features, selectable by Location. System shall support hard and soft anti-passback.
2. Hard Anti-Passback: Once a credential holder is granted access through a reader with one type of designation (IN or OUT), the credential holder may not pass through that type of reader designation until the credential holder passes through a reader of opposite designation.
3. Soft Anti-Passback: Should a violation of the proper IN or OUT sequence occur, access shall be granted, but a unique alarm shall be transmitted to the control station, reporting the credential holder and the door involved in the violation. A separate report may be run on this event.
4. Timed Anti-Passback: A controller capability that prevents an access code from being used twice at the same device (door) within a user-defined amount of time.
5. Provide four separate zones per Location that can operate without requiring interaction with the host workstation (done at controller). Each reader shall be assignable to one or all four anti-passback zones. In addition, each anti-passback reader can be further designated as "Hard," "Soft," or "Timed" in each of the four anti-passback zones. The four anti-passback zones shall operate independently.
6. The anti-passback schemes shall be definable for each individual door.
7. The Master Access Level shall override anti-passback.
8. System shall have the ability to forgive (or reset) an individual credential holder or the entire credential-holder population anti-passback status to a neutral status.

P. Visitor Assignment:

1. Provide for and allow an operator to be restricted to only working with visitors. The visitor badging subsystem shall assign credentials and enroll visitors. Allow only those access levels that have been designated as approved for visitors.
2. Provide an automated log of visitor name, time and doors accessed, and name of person contacted.
3. Allow a visitor designation to be assigned to a credential holder.
4. Security access system shall be able to restrict the access levels that may be assigned to credentials issued to visitors.

5. Allow operator to recall visitors' credential-holder file once a visitor is enrolled in the system.
6. The operator may designate any reader as one that deactivates the credential after use at that reader. The history log shall show the return of the credential.
7. System shall have the ability to use the visitor designation in searches and reports. Reports shall be able to print all or any visitor activity.

Q. Training Software: Enables operators to practice system operation, including alarm acknowledgment, alarm assessment, response force deployment, and response force communications. System shall continue normal operation during training exercises and shall terminate exercises when an alarm signal is received at the console.

R. Entry-Control Enrollment Software: Database management functions that allow operators to add, delete, and modify access data as needed.

1. The enrollment station shall not have alarm response or acknowledgment functions.
2. Provide multiple, password-protected access levels. Database management and modification functions shall require a higher operator access level than personnel enrollment functions.
3. The program shall provide means to disable the enrollment station when it is unattended, to prevent unauthorized use.
4. The program shall provide a method to enter personnel identifying information into the entry-control database files through enrollment stations. In the case of personnel identity-verification subsystems, this shall include biometric data. Allow entry of personnel identifying information into the system database using menu selections and data fields. The data field names shall be customized during setup to suit user and site needs. Personnel identity-verification subsystems selected for use with the system shall fully support the enrollment function and shall be compatible with the entry-control database files.
5. Cardholder Data: Provide 99 user-defined fields. System shall have the ability to run searches and reports using any combination of these fields. Each user-defined field shall be configurable, using any combination of the following features:

    a. MASK: Determines a specific format with which data must comply.
    b. REQUIRED: Operator is required to enter data into field before saving.
    c. UNIQUE: Data entered must be unique.
    d. DEACTIVATE DATE: Data entered will be evaluated as an additional deactivate date for all cards assigned to this cardholder.
    e. NAME ID: Data entered will be considered a unique ID for the cardholder.

6. Personnel Search Engine: A report generator with capabilities such as search by last name, first name, group, or any predetermined user-defined data field; by codes not used in definable number of days; by skills; or by seven other methods.
7. Multiple Deactivate Dates for Cards: User-defined fields to be configured as additional stop dates to deactivate any cards assigned to the cardholder.
8. Batch card printing.
9. Default card data can be programmed to speed data entry for sites where most card data are similar.
10. Enhanced ASCII File Import Utility: Allows the importing of cardholder data and images.

11. Card Expire Function: Allows readers to be configured to deactivate cards when a card is used at selected devices.

2.6 SYSTEM DATABASE

A. Database and database management software shall define and modify each point in database using operator commands. Definition shall include parameters and constraints associated with each system device.

B. Database Operations:

1. System data management shall be in a hierarchical menu-tree format, with navigation through expandable menu branches and manipulated with use of menus and icons in a main menu and system toolbar.
2. Navigational Aids:

    a. Toolbar icons for add, delete, copy, print, capture image, activate, deactivate, and muster report.
    b. Point and click feature to facilitate data manipulation.
    c. Next and previous command buttons visible when editing database fields to facilitate navigation from one record to the next.
    d. Copy command and copy tool in the toolbar to copy data from one record to create a new similar record.

3. Data entry shall be automatically checked for duplicate and illegal data and shall be verified for valid format.
4. System shall generate a memo or note field for each item that is stored in database, allowing the storing of information about any defining characteristics of the item. Memo field is used for noting the purpose for which the item was entered, reasons for changes that were made, and the like.

C. File Management:

1. File management shall include database backup and restoration system, allowing selection of storage media, including USB.
2. Operations shall be both manual and automatic modes. The number of automatic sequential backups before the oldest backup will be overwritten; FIFO mode shall be operator selectable.
3. Backup program shall provide manual operation from any workstation on the LAN and shall operate while system remains operational.

D. Operator Passwords:

1. Support up to 32,000 individual system operators, each with a unique password.
2. One to eight alphanumeric characters
3. Allow passwords to be case sensitive.
4. Passwords shall not be displayed when entered.
5. Passwords shall have unique and customizable password profile, and allow several operators to share a password profile. Include the following features in the password profile:

a. Predetermine the highest-level password profile for access to all functions and areas of program.
b. Allow or disallow operator access to any program operation, including the functions of View, Add, Edit, and Delete.
c. Restrict doors to which an operator can assign access.

6. Operators shall use a user name and password to log on to system. This user name and password shall be used to access database areas and programs as determined by the associated profile.
7. Make provision to allow the operator to log off without fully exiting program. User may be logged off but program will remain running while displaying the login window for the next operator.

E. Access Card/Code Operation and Management: Access authorization shall be by card, by a manually entered code (PIN), or by a combination of both (card plus PIN).

1. Access authorization shall verify the facility code first, the card or card-and-PIN validation second, and the access level (time of day, day of week, date), anti-passback status, and number of uses last.
2. Use data-entry windows to view, edit, and issue access levels. Access-authorization entry-management system shall maintain and coordinate all access levels to prevent duplication or the incorrect creation of levels.
3. Allow assignment of multiple cards/codes to a cardholder.
4. Allow assignment of up to four access levels for each Location to a cardholder. Each access level may contain any combination of doors.
5. Each door may be assigned four time zones.
6. Access codes may be up to 11 digits in length.
7. Software shall allow the grouping of locations so cardholder data can be shared by all locations in the group.
8. Visitor Access: Issue a visitor badge for data tracking or photo ID purposes without assigning that person a card or code.
9. Cardholder Tracing: Allow for selection of cardholder for tracing. Make a special audible and visible annunciation at control station when a selected card or code is used at a designated code reader. Annunciation shall include an automatic display of the cardholder image.
10. Allow each cardholder to be given either an unlimited number of uses or a number from one to 9999 that regulates the number of times the card can be used before it is automatically deactivated.
11. Provide for cards and codes to be activated and deactivated manually or automatically by date. Provide for multiple deactivate dates to be preprogrammed.

F. Security Access Integration:

1. Photo ID badging and photo verification shall use the same database as the security access and may query data from cardholder, group, and other personal information to build a custom ID badge.
2. Automatic or manual image recall and manual access based on photo verification shall also be a means of access verification and entry.
3. System shall allow sorting of cardholders together by group or other characteristic for a fast and efficient method of reporting on, and enabling or disabling, cards or codes.

G. Operator Comments:

1. With the press of one appropriate button on the toolbar, the user shall be permitted to enter operator comments into the history at any time.
2. Automatic prompting of operator comment shall occur before the resolution of each alarm.
3. Operator comments shall be recorded by time, date, and operator number.
4. Comments shall be sorted and viewed through reports and history.
5. The operator may enter comments in two ways; either or both may be used:

    a. Manually entered through keyboard data entry (typed), up to 65,000 characters per each alarm.
    b. Predefined and stored in database for retrieval on request.

6. System shall have a minimum of 999 predefined operator comments with up to 30 characters per comment.

H. Group:

1. Group names may be used to sort cardholders into groups that allow the operator to determine the tenant, vendor, contractor, department, division, or any other designation of a group to which the person belongs.
2. System software shall have the capacity to assign one of 32,000 group names to an access authorization.
3. Make provision in software to deactivate and reactivate all access authorizations assigned to a particular group.
4. Allow sorting of history reports and code list printouts by group name.

I. Time Zones:

1. Each zone consists of a start and stop time for seven days of the week and three holiday schedules. A time zone is assigned to inputs, outputs, or access levels to determine when an input shall automatically arm or disarm, when an output automatically opens or secures, or when access authorization assigned to an access level will be denied or granted.
2. Up to four time zones may be assigned to inputs and outputs to allow up to four arm or disarm periods per day or four lock or unlock periods per day; up to three holiday override schedules may be assigned to a time zone.
3. Data-entry window shall display a dynamically linked bar graph showing active and inactive times for each day and holiday, as start and stop times are entered or edited.
4. System shall have the capacity for 2048 time zones for each Location.

J. Holidays:

1. Three different holiday schedules may be assigned to a time zone. Holiday schedule consists of date in format MM/DD/YYYY and a description. When the holiday date matches the current date of the time zone, the holiday schedule replaces the time-zone schedule for that 24-hour period.
2. System shall have the capacity for 32,000 holidays.
3. Three separate holiday schedules may be applied to a time zone.

4. Holidays have an option to be designated as occurring on the designated date each year. These holidays remain in the system and will not be purged.
5. Holidays not designated to occur each year shall be automatically purged from the database after the date expires.

K. Access Levels:

1. System shall allow for the creation of up to 32,000 access levels.
2. One level shall be predefined as the Master Access Level. The Master Access Level shall work at all doors at all times and override any anti-passback.
3. System shall allow for access to be restricted to any area by reader and by time. Access levels shall determine when and where an Identifier is authorized.
4. System shall be able to create multiple door and time-zone combinations under the same access level so that an Identifier may be valid during different time periods at different readers even if the readers are on the same controller.

L. User-Defined Fields:

1. System shall provide a minimum of 99 user-defined fields, each with up to 50 characters, for specific information about each credential holder.
2. System shall accommodate a title for each field; field length shall be 20 characters.
3. A "Required" option may be applied to each user-defined field that, when selected, forces the operator to enter data in the user-defined field before the credential can be saved.
4. A "Unique" option may be applied to each user-defined field that, when selected, will not allow duplicate data from different credential holders to be entered.
5. Data format option may be assigned to each user-defined field that will require the data to be entered with certain character types in specific spots in the field entry window.
6. A user-defined field, if selected, will define the field as a deactivate date. The selection shall automatically cause the data to be formatted with the windows MM/DD/YYYY date format. The credential of the holder will be deactivated on that date.
7. A search function shall allow any one user-defined field or combination of user-defined fields to be searched to find the appropriate cardholder. The search function shall include a search for a character string.
8. System shall have the ability to print cardholders based on and organized by the user-defined fields.

2.7 SURGE AND TAMPER PROTECTION

A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor-entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.8 CONTROLLERS

A. Controllers: Intelligent peripheral control unit, complying with UL 294, that stores time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data downloaded from the central station or workstation for controlling its operation.

B. Subject to compliance with requirements in this article, manufacturers may use multipurpose controllers.

C. Battery Backup: Sealed, lead acid; sized to provide run time during a power outage of 90 minutes, complying with UL 924.

D. Alarm Annunciation Controller:

1. The controller shall automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network.

a. Inputs: Monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions. Provides at least eight alarm inputs, which are suitable for wiring as normally open or normally closed contacts for alarm conditions.
b. Alarm-Line Supervision:

1) Supervise the alarm lines by monitoring each circuit for changes or disturbances in the signal using dc change measurements. System shall initiate an alarm in response to an abnormal current, which is a dc change of 5 percent or more for longer than 500 ms.
2) Transmit alarm-line-supervision alarm to the central station during the next interrogation cycle after the abnormal current condition.

c. Outputs: Managed by central-station software.

2. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet inside the controller enclosure.

E. Entry-Control Controller:

1. Function: Provide local entry-control functions including one- and two-way communications with access-control devices such as card readers, keypads, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.

a. Operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the controller and the field-device network.
b. Accept information generated by the entry-control devices; automatically process this information to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal:

1) On authentication of the credentials or information presented, check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
2) Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control.

c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction. A transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.

2. Inputs:

a. Data from entry-control devices; use this input to change modes between access and secure.
b. Database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.

3. Outputs:

a. Indicate success or failure of attempts to use entry-control devices and make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
b. Grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
d. Door Prop Alarm: If a portal is held open for longer than 20 seconds OR time listed in a schedule, alarm sounds.

4. With power supplies sufficient to power at voltage and frequency required for field devices and portal-control devices.
5. Data Line Problems: For periods of loss of communication with the central station, or when data transmission is degraded and generating continuous checksum errors, the controller shall continue to control entry by accepting identifying information, making authentication decisions, checking privileges, and controlling portal-control devices.

a. Store up to 1000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the controller and access-control devices for subsequent upload to the central station on restoration of communication.

6. Controller Power: NFPA 70, Class II power-supply transformer, with 12- or 24-V ac secondary, backup battery and charger.
a. Backup Battery: Valve-regulated, recombinant-sealed, lead-acid battery; spill proof. With single-stage, constant-voltage-current, limited battery charger, comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current recommendations for maximum battery life.
b. Backup Power-Supply Capacity: 90 minutes of battery supply. Submit battery and charger calculations.
c. Power Monitoring: Provide manual, dynamic battery-load test, initiated and monitored at the control center; with automatic disconnection of the controller when battery voltage drops below controller limits. Report by using local

controller-mounted digital displays and by communicating status to central station. Indicate normal power on and battery charger on trickle charge. Indicate and report the following:

1) Trouble Alarm: Normal power-off load assumed by battery.
2) Trouble Alarm: Low battery.
3) Alarm: Power off.

2.9 DOOR AND GATE HARDWARE INTERFACE

A. Exit Device with Alarm: Operation of the exit device shall generate an alarm. Exit device and alarm contacts are specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

B. Exit Alarm: Operation of a monitored door shall generate an alarm. Exit devices and alarm contacts are specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

C. Electric Door Strikes: Use end-of-line resistors to provide power-line supervision. Signal switches shall transmit data to controller to indicate when the bolt is not engaged and the strike mechanism is unlocked, and they shall report a forced entry. Power and signal shall be from the controller. Electric strikes are specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

D. Electromagnetic Locks: End-of-line resistors shall provide power-line supervision. Lock status sensing signal shall positively indicate door is secure. Power and signal shall be from the controller. Electromagnetic locks are specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

E. Vehicle Gate Operator: Interface electrical operation of gate with controls in this Section. Vehicle gate operators shall be connected, monitored, and controlled by the security access controllers. Vehicle gate and accessories are specified in Section 32 31 13 "Chain Link Fences and Gates."

2.10 FIELD-PROCESSING SOFTWARE

A. Operating System:

1. Local processors shall contain an operating system that controls and schedules that local processor's activities in real time.
2. Local processor shall maintain a point database in its memory that includes parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of all points connected to that local processor.
3. Execution of local processor application programs shall utilize the data in memory resident files.
4. Operating system shall include a real-time clock function that maintains the seconds, minutes, hours, date, and month, including day of the week.
5. Local processor real-time clock shall be automatically synchronized with the central station at least once per day to plus or minus 10 seconds (the time synchronization shall be accomplished automatically, without operator action and without requiring system shutdown).

B. Startup Software:

1. Causes automatic commencement of operation without human intervention, including startup of all connected I/O functions.
2. Local processor restart program based on detection of power failure at the local processor shall be included in the local processor software.
3. Initiates operation of self-test diagnostic routines.
4. Upon failure of the local processor, if the database and application software are no longer resident, the local processor shall not restart and systems shall remain in the failure mode indicated until the necessary repairs are made.
5. If the database and application programs are resident, the local processor shall immediately resume operation.

C. Operating Mode:

1. Local processors shall control and monitor inputs and outputs as specified, independent of communications with the central station or designated workstations.
2. Alarms, status changes, and other data shall be transmitted to the central station or designated workstations when communications circuits are operable.
3. If communications are not available, each local processor shall function in a stand-alone mode and operational data, including the status and alarm data normally transmitted to the central station or designated workstations, shall be stored for later transmission to the central station or designated workstations.
4. Storage for the latest 4000 events shall be provided at local processors, as a minimum.
5. Local processors shall accept software downloaded from the central station.
6. Panel shall support flash ROM technology to accomplish firmware downloads from a central location.

D. Failure Mode: Upon failure for any reason, each local processor shall perform an orderly shutdown and force all local processor outputs to a predetermined (failure-mode) state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device.

E. Functions:

1. Monitoring of inputs.
2. Control of outputs.
3. Reporting of alarms automatically to the central station.
4. Reporting of sensor and output status to central station upon request.
5. Maintenance of real time, automatically updated by the central station at least once a day.
6. Communication with the central station.
7. Execution of local processor resident programs.
8. Diagnostics.
9. Download and upload data to and from the central station.

2.11 FIELD-PROCESSING HARDWARE

A. Alarm Annunciation Local Processor:

1. Respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.

2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
4. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
5. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
6. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 milliseconds.
7. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central computer during the next interrogation cycle.
8. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
9. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
10. Local processor shall have at least four command outputs.
11. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.

B. Processor Power Supply:

1. Local processor and sensors shall be powered from an uninterruptible power source.
2. Uninterruptible power source shall provide eight hours of battery back-up power in the event of primary power failure and shall automatically fully recharge the batteries within 12 hours after primary power is restored.
3. If the facility is without an emergency generator, the uninterruptible power source shall provide 24 hours of battery backup power.
4. There shall be no equipment malfunctions or perturbations or loss of data during the switch from primary to battery power and vice versa.
5. Batteries shall be sealed, non-outgassing type.
6. Power supply shall be equipped with an indicator for ac input power and an indicator for dc output power.
7. Loss of primary power shall be reported to the central station as an alarm.

C. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet shall be furnished inside the local processor's enclosure.

D. Entry-Control Local Processor:

1. Entry-control local processor shall respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.
2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Entry-control local processor shall provide local entry-control functions including communicating with field devices such as card readers, keypads, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.

4. Processor shall also accept data from entry-control field devices as well as database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.
5. Processor shall send indications of successful or failed attempts to use entry-control field devices and shall make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
6. Processor shall grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
7. Entry-control local processor shall use inputs from entry-control devices to change modes between access and secure.
8. Local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
9. Processor shall operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station.
10. Processor shall store a minimum of 4000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station for subsequent upload to the central station upon restoration of communication.
11. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
12. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall also provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
13. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
14. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 ms.
15. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central station during the next interrogation cycle.
16. Entry-control local processor shall include the necessary software drivers to communicate with entry-control field devices. Information generated by the entry-control field devices shall be accepted by the local processor and automatically processed to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal.
17. Upon authentication of the credentials or information presented, the local processor shall automatically check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
18. Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control. The local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction.
19. Transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.
20. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
21. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
22. Local processor shall have at least four addressable outputs.
23. The entry-control local processor shall also provide control outputs to portal-control devices.
24. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.
25. The system manufacturer shall provide strategies for downloading database information for panel configurations and cardholder data to minimize the required download time when using IP connectivity.

2.12 TRANSFORMERS

A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to workstations, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.

B. Comply with TIA 606-B, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."

C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.

1. Record setup data for control station and workstations.
2. For each Location, record setup of controller features and access requirements.
3. Propose start and stop times for time zones and holidays, and match up access levels for doors.
4. Assign action message names and compose messages.
5. Set up alarms. Establish interlocks between alarms, intruder detection, and video surveillance features.
6. Prepare and install alarm graphic maps.
7. Develop user-defined fields.
8. Develop screen layout formats.
9. Discuss badge layout options; design badges.
10. Complete system diagnostics and operation verification.
11. Prepare a specific plan for system testing, startup, and demonstration.
12. Develop acceptance test concept and, on approval, develop specifics of the test.
13. Develop cable and asset-management system details; input data from construction documents. Include system schematics and Visio Technical Drawings in electronic format (PDF)

D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

3.3 DENTIFICATION

A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems" and with TIA 606-B.

B. Using software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article, develop cable administration drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with the same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.

C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.

D. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

3.4 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Maintain strict security during the installation of equipment and software. Rooms housing the control station, and workstations that have been powered up shall be locked and secured with an activated burglar alarm and access-control system reporting to a central station complying with UL 1610, "Central-Station Burglar-Alarm Units," during periods when a qualified operator in the employ of Contractor is not present.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system. See Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training."

B. Develop separate training modules for the following:

1. Computer system administration personnel to manage and repair the LAN and databases and to update and maintain software.
2. Operators who prepare and input credentials to man the control station and workstations and to enroll personnel.
3. Security personnel.
4. Hardware maintenance personnel.
5. Corporate management.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 15 00

ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Credential cards and printer
2. Cables
3. Transformers

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 13 00 "Access Control System Software and Database Management" for control and monitoring applications, workstations, and interfaces.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Diagrams for cable management system.
2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:

    a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
    b. Patch cords.
    c. Patch panels.

4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, and controllers.

C. Product Schedules.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Credential card blanks, ready for printing. Include enough credential cards for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra 50 percent for future use.
2. Fuses of all kinds, power and electronic, equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size used, but no fewer than three units.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Cable installer must have on staff an RCDD certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 60 to 85 deg F and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
3. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, Type 3. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of [minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (and snow cover up to 12 inches thick).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Security access system hardware shall use a single database for access-control and credential-creation functions.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

2.3 CREDENTIAL CARDS AND PRINTER

A. Credential Cards:

1. Modification: Entry-control cards shall be able to be modified by lamination direct print process during the enrollment process without reduction of readability. The design of the credential cards shall allow for the addition of at least one slot or hole to accommodate the attachment of a clip for affixing the credential card to the badge holder used at the site.
2. Card Size and Dimensional Stability: Credential cards shall be 2-1/8 by 3-3/8 inches. The credential card material shall be dimensionally stable so that an undamaged card with deformations resulting from normal use shall be readable by the card reader.
3. Card Material: Abrasion resistant, nonflammable, nontoxic, and impervious to solar radiation and effects of ultraviolet light.
4. Card Construction:

    a. Core and laminate or monolithic construction.
    b. Lettering, logos, and other markings shall be hot stamped into the credential material or direct printed.
    c. Furnish equipment for on-site assembly and lamination of credential cards.

5. HID 1586LGGMN PVC Cards, Low Frequency (125kHz), No slot punch:
    a. Provide 200 cards: 175 shall be unprogrammed, 20 shall be preprogrammed for general building access, and 5 shall be programmed as masters to allow access to all controlled openings.

B. Printers

A. Fargo DTC1250E Printer with Ethernet – Part # 050020

B. Fargo Spare Ribbons – Part # 45000 -- 4 cartridges

2.4 PUSH-BUTTON SWITCHES

A. Push-Button Switches: Momentary-contact back-lighted push buttons with stainless steel switch enclosures.

B. Electrical Ratings:

1. Minimum continuous current rating of 10A at 120-V AC.
2. Contacts that will make 720 VA at 60A and that will break at 720 VA at 10A.

C. Enclosures: Flush or surface mounting. Push buttons shall be suitable for flush mounting in the switch enclosures.

D. Enclosures shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:

1. Indoors, controlled environment.
2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
3. Outdoors.

E. Power: Push-button switches shall be powered from their associated controller, using dc control.

2.5 CABLES

A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Section 26519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirements.

B. Plenum-Rated TIA 485-A Cables: For doors with doors contacts only.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. NFPA 70 Type: Type CMP
6. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

C. Multiconductor, PVC, OSDP Card/Keypad Cables:

1. 22 AWG/2-Wire + 22 AWG/4-Wire + 22 AWG/2-Wire Shielded +18 AWG/4-Wire multi-conductor plenum rated cable.
   a. Lock Power: (1)18AWG/4-Wire
   b. REX/Spare: (2)2AWG/2-Wire
   c. Door: (1)22AWG/2-WireLAN Cabling:

2. Comply with requirements in Section 27 15 13 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

2.6 TRANSFORMERS

A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.

B. Comply with TIA 606-B, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."

C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.

D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

3.2 CABLING

A. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."

B. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

Retain one of first two paragraphs below.

C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

D. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 6 rating of components and optical fiber rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and optical fiber performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.

E. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.

F. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

3.3 CABLE APPLICATION

A. Comply with TIA 569-D, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."

B. Cable application requirements shall not exceed the recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Comply with Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."

C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.

E. Signal Ground:

1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems" and with TIA 606-B.

3.6 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use tester approved for type and kind of installed cable. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA 568-C.1, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for balanced twisted-pair cables must comply with minimum criteria in TIA 568-C.1.
2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.
3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.

C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.
3. Provide system training for up to 4 members of the owner’s staff.
4. Engage the owner to provide the credentials list for existing staff. The contractor shall setup, up to 150 credentials as part of the base contract.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 28 16 00

INTRUSION DETECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Provide combination intrusion detection control panels, including engineering, components, installation and commissioning.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 08 06 00: Openings

B. Section 08 10 00: Doors and Frames

C. Section 26 05 00: Common Work Results for Electrical, for interface and coordination with building electrical systems and distribution.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Reference Standards: Provide systems which meet or exceed the requirements of the following publications and organizations as applicable to the Work of this Section:

1. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):

   a. UL 365: Police Station Connected Burglar Alarm Units and Systems.
   b. UL 609: Local Burglar Alarm Units and Systems. c. UL 611: Central Station Burglar-Alarm Units.
   d. UL 636: Holdup Alarm Units and Systems.
   e. UL 684: Local, Central Station, and Remote Station.
   f. UL 1023: Household Burglar-Alarm System Units.
   g. UL 1076: Proprietary Burglar-Alarm Units and Systems. h. UL 1610: Central-Station Burglar-Alarm Units.

2. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):

   a. Code of Federal Regulations Title 47: Part 15: Radio Frequency Devices.
   b. Code of Federal Regulations Title 47: Part 68: Connection of Terminal Equipment to the Telephone Network.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Intrusion Detection Control Panels: Basis-of-design is the Honeywell VISTA 128BPT System, a burglary/access control/CCTV switching system that includes the following capabilities:

1. Listed for UL Commercial Burglary.
2. Supports up to 128 zones.
3. Supports up to 8 separate partitions.
4. Supports up to 150 users.
5. Supports commercial wireless devices.
6. Provides integrated security, access control, and CCTV switching capability.
7. Provides supervision of peripheral devices.
8. Supports up to 96 optional relay outputs.
9. Supports long-range radio (LRR) communication.
10. Provides scheduling capability to allow for automated operations.
11. Supports alarm reporting via Internet.
12. Interfaces with automation software.
13. Monitors smoke detector maintenance signals

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data sheets indicating systems and components proposed for use, including instruction manuals.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings including connection diagrams for interfacing equipment, list of connected equipment, and locations for major equipment components.

C. Record Drawings: During construction maintain record drawings indicating location of equipment and wiring. Submit an electronic version of record drawings not later than Substantial Completion of the project.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance data, customized to the system installed. Include system and operator manuals.

E. Field Tests: Submit results of field testing of every device including date, testing personnel, retesting date if applicable, and confirmation that every device passed field testing.

F. Maintenance Service Agreement: Submit a sample copy of the manufacturer's

maintenance service agreement, including cost and services for a one year period for

Owner's review. Maintenance shall include, but not be limited to, labor and materials to repair the system, provide test and adjustments, and regular inspections.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer: Minimum ten years experience in manufacturing and maintaining similar systems. Alarm manufacturer shall be certified compliant with ISO 9001.

B. Installer: Minimum two years experience installing similar systems, and acceptable to the manufacturer.

C. Environmental Conditions: System shall be designed to function in the following environmental conditions:

1. Storage Temperature: Designed for a storage temperature of -10° C to 70°C.

2. Operating Temperature: System shall be designed for an operating temperature of 0° C to 50°C (32° F to 120°F).

3. Humidity: System shall be designed for normal operation in an 85% relative humidity environment.

4. Electromagnetic Interference: System shall meet or exceed the requirements of FCC Part 15, Class B devices, FCC Part 68, IEC EMC directive.

D. Power Requirements: Components shall have the following electrical specifications. The system shall operate using standard 120 VAC, 50 Hz/60 Hz power.

1. Control Primary Power: Transformer power shall be 16.5 VAC, 40 VA.

2. Backup Battery: Rechargeable 12 VDC, gel type, lead acid backup battery shall be provided. The battery shall be rated between 12 and 34-ampere hours (AH).

3. Alarm Power: 12 VDC, 1.7 amps for each bell output

4. Auxiliary Standby Power: 12 VDC, 0.75 amp maximum.

5. Total Power: Combined auxiliary standby and alarm currents shall be 2.3 amps.

6. Fusing: The battery input, auxiliary, and bell outputs shall be protected using PTC circuit breakers. All outputs shall be power limited.

E. Control Panel Enclosure: A metal cabinet, suitable for wall mounting. Dimensions shall not exceed 14.5 inches (36.8 cm) in height, 12.5 inches (31.8 cm) in width or 3 inches (7.6 cm) in depth.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's labeled packages. Store and handle in accordance with manufacturer's requirements, in a facility with environmental conditions within recommended limits.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard one-year warranty for the system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

Basis of design: Intrusion Detection Alarm Panel Manufacturer: VISTA 128BPT by Honeywell, www.security.honeywell.com.
Acceptable equals: Edwards Signaling, Bosch Security Systems. DMP.
Intrusion detection panel selected shall integrate with Access Control and Security System. Include integration/programming time and materials.

2.2 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Control Panel: The control panel shall be an 8-partition, UL commercial and burglary control panel that supports up to 128 zones using basic hardwired, polling loop, and wireless zones, RF receivers, and relay modules. The control shall provide the ability to schedule time-driven events, and allow certain operations to be automated by pressing a single button. The system shall be capable of interfacing with an ECP long range radio (LRR) unit that can send Contact ID messages. The control shall provide integrated access control and CCTV-switching capability with the use of a single downloader and database.

1. Intrusion Detection System components shall be connected using the following Honeywell Genesis Series Cables:

a. Keypads use four conductor, 22AWG or 18AWG, non-shielded cable:

1) 22AWG

(a) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1104

(b) Riser applications use Part #: 2104

(c) Plenum applications use Part #: 3104

2) 18AWG

(a) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1119

(b) Riser applications use Part #: 2115

(c) Plenum applications use Part #: 3115

b. VPLEX Zone Expanders shall connect to a VPLEX data bus using two conductor,18AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1118

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2114

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3114

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4156

c. VPLEX Fire detection devices and two wire fire detection devices connect using two conductor, 18AWG, non-shielded fire alarm cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 4106

2) Riser applications use Part #: 4306

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 4506

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4156

d. Four wire fire detection devices connect using four conductor, 18AWG, non- shielded fire alarm cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 4107

2) Riser applications use Part #: 4307

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 4507

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4157

e. Unpowered detection devices connect to zone inputs using two conductor, 22AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1102

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2102

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3102

f. Powered detection devices connect to zone inputs using four conductor, 18AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1119

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2115

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3115

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4157 g. The Bell output shall use two conductor, 16AWG, non-

shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1125

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2121

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3121

h. Power connections for control panels shall be made using two conductor, 16AWG, non-shielded cable.

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1125

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2121

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3121

i. Ground connections to control panels shall be made using 14AWG solid insulated copper ground wire.

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1131

2. Basic Hardwired Zones: Control shall provide 8 style-B hardwire zones with the following characteristics:

a. EOLR supervision (optional for zones 2-8) shall support N.O. or N.C.sensors(EOLR supervision required for UL installations).

b. Zones/Points shall be individually assignable to any

partition. c. Supports up to 16 two-wire smoke detectors onzone

1.

d. Supports four-wire smoke or heat detectors on any zone (power to four-wire smoke detectors must be supervised with an EOL device).

3. Optional Expansion Zones:

a. Polling Loop Expansion: Control shall support up to 120 additional hardwire zones using a built-in two-wire polling (multiplex) loop interface. The polling loop shall provide power and data to remote point modules, and constantly monitor the status of all zones on the loop. Maximum current draw shall not exceed 128 mA. The polling loop zones shall have the following characteristics:

1) Interface with RPM (Remote Point Module) devices that provide Class B, Style Y (e.g., 4208U/4208SN) or a combination of Class B, Style Y, and
Class A, Style Z (e.g., 4208SNF) zones.

2) Individually assignable to one of 8 partitions.

3) Supervised by the control panel.

4) A 12,000 ft (3658 m) wire run capability without using shielded cable.

b. Wireless Expansion Zone: Control shall support up to 128 wireless zones using a 5800 series RF receiver (fewer if using hardwire and/or polling loop zones). Wireless zones shall have the following characteristics:

1) Supervised by control panel for check-in signals (except certain non- supervised transmitters).

2) Tamper-protection for supervised zones.

3) Individually assignable to one of 8 partitions.

4) Individually assignable to bell outputs and/or auxiliary relays.

5) Support wireless devices listed for Commercial Burglary using the 5881ENHC RF Receiver.

4. Partitions: Control shall provide the ability to operate 8 separate areas, each functioning as if it had its own control. Partitioning features shall include:

a. A Common Lobby partition (1-8), which can be programmed to perform the following functions:

1) Arm automatically when the last partition that shares the common lobby is armed.

2) Disarm when the first partition that shares the common lobby is disarmed.

b. A Master partition (9), used strictly to assign keypads for the purpose of viewing the status of all 8 partitions at the same time (master keypads).

c. Assignable by zone.

d. Assignable by keypad/annunciator.

e. Assignable by relay to one or all 8 partitions.

f. Ability to display burglary and panic and/or trouble conditions at all other partitions' keypads (selectable option).

g. Certain system options selectable by partition, such as entry/exit delay and subscriber account number.

5. User Codes: Control shall accommodate 150 user codes, all of which can operate any or all partitions. Certain characteristics must be assigned to each user code, as follows:

a. Authority level (Master, Manager, or several other Operator levels). Each User Code (other than the installer code) shall be capable of being assigned

the same or a different level of authority for each partition that it will operate.

b. Opening/Closing central station reporting

option. c. Specific partitions that the code can

operate.

d. Global arming capability (ability to arm all partitions the code has access to in one command).

e. Use of an RF (button) to arm and disarm the system (RF key must first be enrolled into the system).

6. Peripheral Devices: Control shall support up to 30 addressable ECP devices, which can be any combination of keypads, RF receivers, relay modules, and interactive phone module. Peripheral devices have the following characteristics:

a. Each device set to an individual address according to the device's

instructions. b. Each device enabled in system programming.

c. Each device’s address shall be supervisable (via a programming option).

7. Keypad/Annunciator: Control shall accommodate up to 16 keypads or six (6) touch-screen (i.e.; advanced user interface) keypads. The keypads shall be capable of the following

a. Performing all system arming

functions. b. Being assigned to any

partition.

c. Providing four programmable single-button function keys, which can be used for:

1) Panic Functions: activated by wired and wireless keypads; reported separately by partition.

2) Keypad Macros: 32 keypad macro commands per system (each macro is a series of keypad commands). Assignable to the A, B, C, and D keys by partition.

d. (3) Keypads are to be provided. (Gym Lobby, Cafeteria, & School). Coordinate exact location with owner. System shall be capable of being partitioned/zoned for separate arming and disarming.

8. Optional Output Relays: A total of 96 relay outputs shall be accommodated using relay modules. Each relay module shall provide four (4) Form C (normally open and normally closed) relays for general-purpose use. The relays shall be capable of being:

a. Programmed to activate in response to system

events.

b. Programmed to activate using time intervals.

c. Activated manually.

d. Assigned an alpha descriptor.

e. A combination of 4204 (ECP) and 4101SN (polling loop) relays.

9. Optional Vista Interactive Phone Module: The control shall support the ADEMCO 4285/4286 VIP Modules, which permit access to the security system in order to perform the following functions:

a. Obtain system status information.

b. Arm and disarm the security

system. c. Control relays.

d. Battery saving feature.

10. Integrated Access Control: Control shall be capable of the following:

a. Providing a command that activates relays to allow access doors to open (e.g., lobby door), lights to be turned on or off, etc.

b. Becoming a fully integrated access control system by using numerous VistaKey
Single-Door Access Control Modules.

c. Supporting up to 15 VistaKey Access Control Modules. The VistaKey Access Control Modules shall use the same Compass Downloader as the Vista-128BPT and shall be programmable from the Compass Downloader or the Keypad/Annunciators.

d. Assigning any number of access control relays to each partition (up to 96 for the system).

e. Supporting up to 500 access card holders using VistaKey.

11. CCTV Switching: System shall be capable of supporting the VistaView 100 CCTV Switching System. The CCTV system shall be fully integrated and be event driven by Burglary or Access events. When cameras are not event driven, they shall be driven by an automatic preset dwell time. The system shall also be capable of:

a. Activating the CCTV system via a Form-C relay output.

b. Operating up to 60 camera inputs and 30 video outputs.

12. Commercial Wireless Equipment: Control shall be compatible with UL Listed Commercial Wireless Security equipment including:

    a. ADEMCO 5881ENHC Commercial Wireless Receiver: The receiver shall be capable of receiving as many points as the control panel is rated for. Up to two (2) Receivers may be used on any system. Receivers may be remotely located anywhere on the system Keypad/Annunciator bus.

    b. Honeywell 5808W3 Wireless Photoelectric Smoke and Heat Detector: The device shall be UL 268 listed and shall have Maintenance Alert capability and Automatic Drift Compensation.

    c. ADEMCO 5809 Wireless 135D Fixed Temperature and Rate of Rise Heat Detector: The device shall be UL 521 listed for commercial applications.

    d. ADEMCO 5817CB Wireless Universal Contact Monitoring Transmitter: This device shall be capable of making any conventional UL listed contact device a wireless device. The device shall be UL listed for commercial burglary applications as follows: UL 365, 609, 1023, 1076 and 1610 for security and nurse call.

    e. ADEMCO 5869 Wireless Hold Up Switch/Transmitter: This device shall be UL 636 listed for commercial burglary applications.

13. Optional Keyswitch: Control shall support the ADEMCO 4146 Keyswitch on any one of the system's 8 partitions. If used, zone 7 is no longer available as a protection zone.

14. Voltage Triggers: System shall provide voltage triggers, which change state for different conditions. Used with devices such as a remote keypad sounder or keyswitch ARMED and READY LEDs.

15. Event Log: System shall maintain a log of different event types (enabled in programming). The event log shall provide the following characteristics:

    a. Stories up to 512 events.

    b. Viewable at the keypad or through the use of Compass software.

    c. Printable on a serial printer, including zone alpha descriptors.

16. Scheduling: Provides the following scheduling capabilities:

    a. Open/close schedules (for control of arming/disarming and reporting).

    b. Holiday schedules (allows different time windows for open/close schedules).

    c. Timed events (for activation of relays, auto-bypassing and un-bypassing,

auto- arming and disarming, etc.).

d. Access schedules (for limiting system access to users by time).

e. End User Output Programming Mode (provides 20 timers for relay

control). f. The system shall automatically adjust for daylight savings time.

17. Communication Features: Supports the following formats and features for the primary and secondary central station receivers:

a. Formats: ADEMCO Express; ADEMCO Contact ID 4 and 10 Digit Acct

number. b. Backup reporting: The system shall support backup reporting via the following: Secondary phone number; ECP long-range radio (LRR) interface; option to select long range radio (LRR) or dialup as the primary reporting method (dynamic signaling feature).

c. Internet reporting: The system shall be capable of communicating with the central station via the internet using Alarmnet-i. It shall provide the user with the ability to control the system via a browser interface (i.e., AOL, Netscape, Internet Explorer). All packet data transmitted to the monitoring station shall be encrypted with a minimum of 1024 bits of encryption.

18. Audio Alarm Verification Option: Provides a programmable Audio Alarm Verification (AAV) option that can be used in conjunction with an output relay to permit voice dialog between an operator at the central station and a person at the premises.

19. Cross-Zoning Capability: Helps prevent false alarms by preventing a zone from going into alarm unless its cross-zone is also faulted within 5 minutes.

a. Alarm notification appliances, including but not limited to sirens horns, bells and strobes.

b. Auxiliary devices capable of operating using full-wave rectified unfiltered voltage.

20. Exit Error False Alarm Prevention Feature: System shall be capable of differentiating between an actual alarm and an alarm caused by leaving an entry/exit door open. If not subsequently disarmed, the control panel shall:

a. Bypass the faulted E/E zone(s) and/or interior zones and arm the system.

b. Generate an Exit Error report by user and by zone so the central station knows it was an exit alarm and who caused it.

21. Built-in User's Manual and Descriptor Review: For end-user convenience, the control panel shall contain a built-in User’s Manual. It shall include the following capabilities:

a. By depressing any of the function keys on the keypad for five (5) seconds, abrief explanation of that function shall scroll across the

alphanumeric display.

b. By depressing the READY key for five (5) seconds, all programmed zone descriptors shall be displayed (one at a time). This feature shall provide a check for installers and ensure all descriptors have been entered properly.

22. Programming: Control shall be capable of being programmed locally or remotely using the ADEMCO Compass Downloader and shall be capable of:

a. Uploading and downloading all programming information at 300 baud. b. Uploading and displaying firmware revision levels from the control.

23. Automation Software: The Control shall be capable of interfacing with automation software via an RS232 input on a single partition.

2.3 COMPONENTS

A. System Integration: System shall integrate with facility doors, windows, and departments. The system shall also integrate with external systems, such as building appliances and building alert systems for remote control and central collection of external system alerts. When integrated with external systems, the system shall connect to the external system to receive status changes by way of a dry contact output from the external system. The system shall use its user interface to provide local status messages from external systems, providing for the initiation of local building policies. Optionally, the system may transmit information to an off-site monitoring service to provide initiation of remote policies when appropriate. The installer shall follow manufacturer's instructions when installing and programming system equipment.

1. V-Plex Bus Extensions: Extended system V-Plex bus branch circuits shall be scaleable to increase the total size of the bus in larger installations. Branch circuits leading from different buildings or from different floors in multi-story buildings shall be isolated from one another so that a shorted or grounded branch circuit is isolated away from other near-side branch circuits, allowing other V-Plex devices to be isolated so that they can continue to operate.

2. Zone Input: System zone inputs allow the system to sense the change in state of an output from an external device, such as a door/window position sensor, a motion detector, a relay output from an appliance, the output of an external alert system, or other devices that provide a dry closure output.

3. Wireless Receivers for Commercial Applications: Include Commercial Wireless Receivers where designated. The wireless receiver shall be UL Listed, Factory Mutual Approved, MEA Listed, and CSFM Listed for the application. The wireless receiver shall receive messages from wireless devices indicating device detection loop open, normal, shorted, tamper alarm, and low battery status when sent from transmitters associated with the system. Each wireless transmitter shall send

periodic check-in signals to its associated control panel. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any missing transmitter within four and one-half hours. Each transmitter shall report any low battery condition a minimum of seven days before its battery becomes too discharged to power the transmitter. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any low battery condition by providing a local indication at system keypads, and shall send a trouble report to the central monitoring station. The model number of the receiver is Honeywell 5881ENHC or equivalent.

4. Wireless Repeaters for Commercial Applications: Include Commercial Wireless Repeaters where designated. The wireless repeater shall be UL Listed for the application. The wireless repeater shall receive and forward messages from wireless devices indicating device detection loop open, normal, shorted, tamper alarm, and low battery status when sent from transmitters associated with the system. Each wireless transmitter shall send periodic check-in signals to its associated control panel. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any missing transmitter within four and one-half hours. Each transmitter shall report any low battery condition a minimum of seven days before its battery becomes too discharged to power the transmitter. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any low battery condition by providing a local indication at system keypads, and shall send a trouble report to the central monitoring station. The model number of the repeater is Honeywell 58xxRPT or equivalent.

5. Combined AlarmNet-I (Internet) and AlarmNet-GSM (Global System for Mobile) Fire Alarm Communication: The facility system shall be monitored using both the AlarmNet-I and the AlarmNet-G Communication services. The system shall use Honeywell's AlarmNet IGSMCF Fire Alarm transmitter or equivalent. The communication service shall employ a two-way Internet connection through AlarmNet Communication Service as the primary method of communication, and then the two-way GPRS (General Packet Radio Service) as the secondary means of communication and shall use SMS (Short Message Service) as a tertiary means of communication. The equipment shall be UL listed for use in this application. The installer shall follow manufacturer's instructions when installing the AlarmNet unit.

6. VSI Bus Isolation and Integrity: System V-Plex bus branch circuits shall be isolated from one another so that a shorted, overloaded, or grounded branch circuit is isolated away from other near-side branch circuits, allowing undamaged V-Plex bus circuits to continue to operate. VSI Isolation modules shall be installed at near-side connections to cable runs leading to additional buildings, at cable runs leading to additional floors in multi-story buildings, and at junction boxes leading to multiple V- Plex branch circuits within the system. The installer shall use the Honeywell VSI module or equivalent.

7. Zone Input: System zone inputs allow the system to sense the change in state of an output from an external device, such as a door/window position sensor, a motion detector, a relay output from an appliance, the output of an external alert system, or other devices that provide a dry closure output.

8. Dual-Tec Motion Detector, Wall-Mounted, V-Plex: Selected areas in the protected site will use motion detectors to sense motion in rooms or areas of

rooms. Where
designated in the plans, install a Honeywell Model DT7500SN V-Plex Dual-Tec Motion Detector or equivalent.

9. Passive Infrared Motion Detector, Ceiling-mounted, V-Plex: Selected areas in the protected site will use motion detectors to sense motion in rooms or areas of rooms. Where designated in the plans, install a Honeywell Model IS280CM Ceiling Mounted Passive Infrared Motion Detector or equivalent.

10. Panic Buttons: Include manual panic buttons under desks, in storage rooms, in walk- in refrigeration units and other designated locations. The panic button shall be the Honeywell Model 269SN or equivalent.

11. Keypad, Alpha Display: The system keypad shall include a two-line, alphanumeric LCD display. Use the Honeywell Vista 6160 keypad or equivalent. The installer shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions when installing system equipment.

12. Siren Outdoor in Enclosure: Monitor the status of protected openings and areas in the armed and disarmed state. When an audible alarm occurs, the system shall sound a Honeywell Model 719 Siren or equivalent located inside a 742BE Enclosure. The installer shall install the siren as directed by manufacturer instructions.

13. Siren Indoor, Flush Mount: Monitor the status of protected openings and areas in the armed and disarmed state. When an audible alarm occurs, the system shall sound a Honeywell Model Wave2F Siren or equivalent. The installer shall install the siren as directed by manufacturer instructions.

14. Premium Keypad, Alpha Display: The system keypad shall include a two-line, reverse display alphanumeric LCD display. Use the Honeywell Vista 6460 keypad or equivalent. The installer shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions when installing system equipment.

15. Portrait-style Keypad, Alpha Display: The system keypad shall include a two-line, reverse display alphanumeric LCD display. Use the Honeywell Vista 6165EX Portrait- style keypad or equivalent. The installer shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions when installing system equipment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine site conditions prior to installation. Notify Architect and Owner in writing if unsuitable conditions are encountered. Do not start installation until site conditions are acceptable.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Intrusion detection and fire alarm control panel system shall be installed and tested in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

1. Coordinate interfaces with Owner's representative where appropriate.

2. Provide backboxes, pullboxes, connectors, supports, conduit, cable, and wire for a complete and reliable installation. Obtain Owner's approval for exact location of all boxes, conduit, and wiring runs prior to installation.

3. Install conduit, cable, and wire parallel and square with building lines, including raised floors areas. Do not exceed forty percent fill in conduits. Gather wires and tie to create an orderly installation.

4. Coordinate with other trades to provide proper sequencing of installation.

3.3 FIELD COMMISSIONING AND CERTIFICATION

A. Field Commissioning: Test system as recommended by manufacturer, including the following:

1. Conduct complete inspection and testing of equipment, including verification of operation with connected equipment.

2. Test devices and demonstrate operational features for Owner's representative and authorities having jurisdiction as applicable.

3. Correct deficiencies until satisfactory results are obtained.

4. Submit written copies of test results.

3.4 TRAINING

A. Conduct on-site system training, with the number of sessions and length of sessions as recommended by the manufacturer. Training shall include administration, provisioning, configuration, operation and diagnostics.

END SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 28 20 00

VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, network video recorder, software and additional associated hardware.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Design Data: Include equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For video surveillance, cameras, camera-supporting equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
2. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non-temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
3. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250 and winds up to 85 mph. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
4. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion. Provide pricing for an additional two years of warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video.

B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

2.3 IP CAMERAS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Axis – Owner preferred
2. Samsung/Hanwha Techwin
3. Pelco

B. Camera Basis of design:
1. 4-Sensor: AXIS P373-PLE, 4x 5P resolution, 360° IR illumination.
2. 3-Sensor (Panoramic/180degree): AXIS P3818-PVE
3. 2-Sensor Lens: AXIS P4707-PLVE, 2x 5MP resolution, 360° IR illumination.
4. 1 Sensor: AXIS P3267-LV, 1x 5MP resolution, IR illumination.
5. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.

2.4 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

A. Manufacturers:

1. Shall be the same as camera manufacturer

B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.

C. Pan-and-Tilt Units: Motorized units arranged to provide remote-controlled aiming of cameras with smooth and silent operation, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.

1. Panning Rotation: 0 to 355 degrees, with adjustable stops.
2. Tilt Movement: 90 degrees, plus or minus 5 degrees, with adjustable stops.
3. Speed: 12 degrees per second in both horizontal and vertical planes.
4. Wiring: Factory prewired for camera and zoom lens functions and pan-and-tilt power and control.
5. Built-in encoders or potentiometers for position feedback
6. Pan-and-tilt unit shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of a specific scene.

D. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.

E. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: Aluminum enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.

1. Tamper switch on access cover sounds an alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central-control unit shall identify tamper alarms and indicate location in alarm display. Tamper switches and central-control unit are specified in Section 28 31 00 "Intrusion Detection."
2. Camera Viewing Window: Polycarbonate window, aligned with camera lens.
3. Duplex Receptacle: Internally mounted.
4. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
5. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
6. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
7. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

2.5 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Axis – Owner preferred
2. Salient
3. S2/Lenel
4. Pelco: Video Xpert Professional

B. Description:

1. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
2. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
3. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
4. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
5. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
6. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
7. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
8. Digital certification by watermarking.
9. Storage for 30 days with max resolution per camera recording at 10 fps, 12 hours a day for interior cameras and 24 hours a day for exterior cameras. Smart compression shall be disabled.
10. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software.
11. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
12. Supports up to 100 devices.
13. Rack mounted servers
14. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.
15. Windows 10

2.6 VIDEO MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Axis – Owner preferred
2. Pelco: Video Xpert Professional

3. Salient
4. S2/Lenel

B. Description:

1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.
6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards.
7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN.
8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, PTZ joysticks, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.
9. Provide a minimum of (5) copies of the latest version of the video management software.
10. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.

2.7 RACK MOUNTED UPS

A. Shall be Owner provided.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.

1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

E. For communication wiring, comply with the following:

1. Section 27 13 23 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."
2. Section 27 15 13 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

G. Cabling contractor shall provide a dedicated Category 6 cable per each camera location. Color shall be green. Coordinate with cabling Contractor.

3.2 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install cameras with 84-inch-minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.

B. Set final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera with owners direction. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.

C. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:

    a. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
    b. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
    c. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
    d. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
    e. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
    f. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
    g. Verify operation of control-station equipment.

3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.

4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation.

C. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Installers must hold a North Carolina Alarm Systems Business License.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment. Provide a minimum of 8 hours of factory training on the system for Gaston County employees.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 28 31 11

DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SCOPE

A. This standard provides the functional requirements for the installation, programming, configuration, warranty and maintenance of a complete Class B Analog/Addressable Intelligent Fire Alarm / Life Safety System.

B. This Fire Alarm / Life Safety System Standard must be conformed to in its entirety to ensure that the installed and programmed Life Safety System will function as designed and will accommodate the future requirements and operations required by the building owner. All specified operational features will be met without exception.

C. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit or fire alarm control panel.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Air-sampling smoke detectors.
5. Heat detectors.
6. Notification appliances.
7. Standby Power Supplies.
8. Device guards.
9. Magnetic door holders.
10. Remote annunciator.
11. Addressable interface device.
12. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
13. Surge Protection and Grounding.
14. CO Detector.
15. Programming, Commissioning and Training of Operators.
16. Conduit, wire and accessories required to furnish a complete and Operational Life Safety System.

D. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.

B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.

C. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Statutory and Reference Standard Compliance:

1. The latest edition of the North Carolina State Building Code.
2. North Carolina Department of Insurance “Requirements for Fire Alarm Detection and Alarm Systems”, latest revision.
3. National Fire Protection Association Standards:

    a. NFPA 70 - National Electric Code
    b. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm Code
    c. NFPA 90A - Air Conditioning Systems
    d. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code

4. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for use in fire protective signaling systems shall list the system and all components. The UL Label shall be considered as evidence of compliance with this requirement. The equipment shall be listed by UL under the following standards as applicable:

    a. UL 864/UOJZ, APOU - Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
    b. UL 1076/APOU - Proprietary Burglar Alarm Units and Systems.
    c. UL 268 - Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
    d. UL 268A - Smoke Detectors for Duct Applications.
    e. UL 217 - Smoke Detectors Single Station.
    f. UL 521 - Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
    g. UL 228 - Door Holders for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
    h. UL 464 - Audible Signaling Appliances.
    i. UL 1638 - Visual Signaling Appliances.
    j. UL 38 - Manually Activated Signaling Boxes.
    k. UL 346 - Water flow Indicators for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
    l. UL 1971 - Visual Signaling Appliances.
    m. UL 1481 - Power Supplies for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

5. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.

7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within the airflow range of the air-sampling detector.
12. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.

    a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
    b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
    c. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
    d. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.

13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
14. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

    a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
    b. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. REVIT and AUTOCAD copy of the as-built fire alarm map (not just the system as-builts). This is the as-built map that is posted by the annunciator.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:

    a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
    b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
    d. Riser diagram.
    e. Device addresses.
    f. Air-sampling system sample port locations and modeling program report showing layout meets performance criteria.
    g. Record copy of site-specific software.
    h. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:

        1) Equipment tested.
        2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
        3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
        4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
        5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.

    i. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
    j. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

C. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.9 COMMISSIONING

A. At Commissioning provide the following:

1. Warranty Statement from the manufacturer: Warranty statement will state the period of warranty for all of the products proposed for the project and shall include the name and address of the authorized manufacturers' agent who will honor any and all warranty claims.
2. Written Certification by the Fire Alarm Installer that no power supply or circuit in the system has an electrical load greater than 80% of its rated capacity.
3. A scaled plan of each building showing the placement of each individual item of fire alarm equipment as well as raceway size and routing, junction boxes, and conductor size, quantity, and color in each raceway.
4. A Single Line System Block Diagram and written System Operational Overview.
5. Complete calculations showing the electrical load on the following system components.
6. Each system Power Supply
7. Each standby Power Supply (batteries)
8. Each Notification Appliance Circuit.
9. ach auxiliary control circuit that draws power from any system power supply.
10. Field Connection Drawings: A complete set of drawings, one for each Fire Alarm Control Panel module which has any external (field) wiring connected to it, and one for each system detector, module or signaling appliance, shall be supplied. The Field Connection Drawings shall be provided in paper (hard-copy) format.
11. Print-out report detailing the sensitivity of each smoke detector installed in the system. Include date on report.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: The installer shall be a licensed low voltage contractor and a factory authorized distributor to ensure proper specification adherence, final connection, test, turnover, warranty compliance and service. The installer shall maintain a service organization with adequate spare parts stock within 50 miles of the installation. Installer shall have training certification by the manufacturer of the Fire Alarm Control Equipment. This certification shall not be more than two years old, to ensure up-to-date product and application knowledge on the part of the installing installer.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level IV technician.

C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.

1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Perform a full test of the existing system prior to starting work. Document any equipment or components not functioning as designed.

B. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Architect's written permission.

C. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.12 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service, and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.

B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.13 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Installer Warranty: Installer shall warrant the installed fire alarm system to be free from any defects of material and installation for a period of 2 years from acceptance by the professional engineer and/or owner.

1. Any deficiencies shall be immediately corrected at no additional cost to the owner.
2. Any defects that render the system inoperative shall be repaired within 24 hours of the owner notifying the contractor. Other defects shall be repaired within 48 hours of the owner notifying the contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All equipment furnished for this project shall be new and unused. All equipment, materials, accessories, devices, and other facilities covered by this guideline or noted on contract drawings and installation specifications shall be the best suited for the intended use and shall be provided by a single manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer’s representative and a Record of Completion presented upon completion shall verify system installation and operations. The manufacturer’s representative shall be responsible for an on-site demonstration of the operation of the system and initial staff training.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. All Control Panel Assemblies and the connected Automatic and Manual Alarm and Notification Appliances shall be designed and manufactured by the same company, shall be tested and cross-listed as compatible (to category UOJZ) to ensure that a fully functioning Life Safety System is designed and provided.

B. The Fire Alarm / Life Safety System supplied under this guideline shall be a microprocessor-based direct wired system. System shall utilize independently addressed, microprocessor-based smoke detectors, heat detectors, and modules, as described in this specification.

C. All initiation devices shall be analog addressable devices. The notification devices shall be installed where required to meet ADA, NFPA 72.

D. Locate the Fire Alarm Panel in the main electrical room. Locate a full function annunciator in the main office and a display only alpha-numeric display at the front door.

E. All Fire Alarm / Life Safety equipment shall be arranged and programmed to provide an integrated system for the early detection of fire, the notification of building occupants, the override of the HVAC system operation, the shut-down of the kitchen hood, and the activation of other auxiliary systems to inhibit the spread of smoke and fire and to facilitate the safe evacuation of building occupants.

F. All strobes shall be synchronized. A strobe unit shall be installed in every occupied space which includes all classrooms, restrooms, conference rooms, tutor rooms, science prep rooms and waiting areas/lobbies. Smoke and thermal detectors shall be installed in compliance with NFPA 72 codes. Duct detectors shall interface with HVAC systems to shut down necessary air-handling units.

G. The fire alarm system shall be microprocessor driven with stored program controllers. Each panel (node) on the network shall use a multiple microprocessor design so that the failure of a single microprocessor will not result in a local failure. Fire alarm systems that utilize only one microprocessor for system (node) and SLC control will not be accepted.

H. The Life Safety System shall be UL listed under Standard 864 (Control Units for Fire-Protective Signaling Systems) under categories UOJZ and APOU. The specified modules shall also be listed under UL 1076 (Proprietary Burglar Alarm Units and Systems) under category APOU.

I. A standby power supply shall automatically supply electrical energy to the system upon primary power supply failure. Use “Emergency Generator” circuit where available. Standby power shall be an electrical battery with capacity to operate the system under maximum supervisory load for 24 hours and capable of operating the system for 5 minutes in the alarm mode at 100% load. Fire alarm shall include a charging circuit to automatically maintain the electrical charge of the battery.

J. Do not install notification appliances on the exterior of the building unless specifically directed to do so by the Project Manager.

K. Remote LED indicators must be installed at each duct detector location. Install the indicator in the ceiling so it can be seen while standing in the corridor/classroom.

L. All power supplies must be on dedicated circuits. Existing building circuits (receptacles, lights, etc.) cannot be used. Use generator power where available.

M. Smoke detectors shall be installed a minimum of 3’ from air supply diffusers and lighting fixtures.

N. Automatic door closers to be activated by local smoke detectors only.

O. Use toggle bolts for all wall mounted equipment/components/appliances

P. All Fire Alarm wiring shall be FPLR or FPLP in conduit or duct, or MC fire alarm cable.

Q. Provide remote LED indicator lights for all duct detectors. Locate indicators in corridors.

R. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components shall be compatible with, and operate as an extension of, existing system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.

S. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.

T. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.

U. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.
4. Duct smoke detectors.
5. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
6. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
7. Fire standpipe system.
8. Fire pump running.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
2. Local sounding device at panel shall be activated.
3. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
4. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
6. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
7. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
8. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
9. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
10. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
11. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
12. Record events in the system memory.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. Alert and Action signals of air-sampling detector system.
3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
4. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
5. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.
6. Carbon monoxide detectors.
7. Fire pump running.
8. Fire-pump loss of power.
9. Fire-pump power phase reversal.
10.

D. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
2. After a time delay of 200 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
3. Display system status on graphic annunciator.
4. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.

E. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.

F. System Trouble Signal Actions:

1. Trouble indicator shall flash.
2. A local sounding device in the panel shall be activated
3. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
4. Unacknowledged alarm messages shall have priority over trouble messages, and if such an alarm must also be displayed, the trouble message will not be displayed until the operator has acknowledged all alarm messages.
5. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.

2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

2.5 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated in these specifications or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Preferred Brand Alternate No. 9: EST4 - Edwards.
2. Gamewell - FCI by Honeywell.
3. Siemens - Cerberus.

B. The above constitute the minimum type and quality of equipment to be installed.

C. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Operators' Interface:

a. Character Graphical Display shall provide the means to inform the System Operator with detailed information about the off-normal status of the installed Fire Alarm / Life Safety System. Character Graphical Display shall automatically respond to the status of the system and shall display that status in character front panel display.

2. Automatic Functions: The following status functions shall be annunciated by the Character Graphical Display:

a. When the Fire Alarm / Life Safety System is in the "Normal" Mode, the panel displays: Current Date and Time, Custom System Title (minimum 2 lines X 21 characters), and a summary total of system events.
b. The Character Graphical Display shall provide separate event queues for ALARM, TROUBLE, SUPERVISORY and MONITOR.

3. Loop Controller Interface:

a. An Electronic 100% digital Loop Controller shall be provided in each Fire Alarm Control Panel (where needed), to interface between the panel and the Analytical Microprocessor-based Detectors and modules.
b. It shall be possible to connect the electronic loop controller to the Analytical Microprocessor-based Detectors and modules utilizing any wiring material or method complying with Chapter 3 of the National Electrical Code (ANSI/NFPA 70-1996) as Class A (Style 6 or Style 7) or Class B (Style 4) circuits without the use of special shielding, twisted wire, or conduits. It must be possible to wire branch circuits (T-Taps) from Class B Circuits (Style 4). Each Electronic Protection Loop shall be configurable to operate as a Style 7 loop without the need for additional hardware modules.
c. All system programming and history shall be permanently stored in non-volatile memory to ensure that no programming or history is lost. Systems which store initial programming or field programming changes in battery backed memory will not be accepted.
d. The Electronic Loop Controller shall be capable of setting the address of all Analytical Microprocessor-based Detectors and modules connected to it electronically, without the need to set switches at any of the individual devices.
e. The Electronic Loop Controller shall notify the System Operator when any connected smoke detector reports a "Routine Maintenance Required" signal to the system.

4. Notification Appliance Circuits:

a. Provide where indicated on the plans supervised hard-wired Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) for the control of 24VDC signaling appliances. Each NAC shall operate as a Class B (Style Y) circuit and shall be capable of controlling up to 3.5 amps of signaling power.
b. NAC's shall be power limited to 3.5A at 24VDC and 4.1A at 20.4VDC to support higher current demand by visible appliances at lower battery voltages.

5. Remote Diagnostic Utility - RDUEU-E or equal:

a. The Fire Alarm System shall have the ability to report its status and sensitivity remotely over dial-up modem to a personal computer. The system shall be capable

of generating sensitivity, system status, and trend analysis reports from data downloaded from the panel. Installer to provide the modem at the panel.

2.6 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. The Microprocessor-based Addressable Fire Alarm Stations shall be a Lexan double action fire alarm stations and fit in to a standard electrical box

B. Stations shall be key reset.

C. Station shall be in red with white "PULL IN CASE OF FIRE" lettering.

2.7 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. System shall use Analytical Microprocessor-based Detectors that are capable of full digital communications with the Fire Alarm / Life Safety System using both broadcast and polling communications protocols. Each detector shall be capable of performing independent advanced fire detection algorithms. The fire detection algorithm shall measure sensor signal dimensions, time patterns and combine different fire parameters to increase reliability and distinguish real fire conditions from unwanted nuisance alarms caused by environmental events. Signal patterns that are not typical of fires shall be eliminated by digital filters and will not cause a system alarm condition. Devices not capable of combining different fire parameters or employing digital filters will not be acceptable.
2. Each detector shall have an integral microprocessor capable of making alarm decisions based on fire parameter information stored in the detectors' memory. Detectors not capable of making independent alarm decisions are not be acceptable. Maximum total loop response time for detectors changing state (alarm or trouble) shall be 0.5 seconds.
3. Each detector shall be capable of identifying diagnostic codes to be used for system maintenance. All diagnostic codes shall be stored in the detector. Each smoke detector shall be capable of transmitting pre-alarm, alarm, and maintenance signals to the Fire Alarm Control Panel via the Electronic Loop Controller.
4. All of these devices and their bases will also be required to be labeled with engraved Lexan labels to identify device address and intended location. Labels shall be red background with white letters, letters shall be a minimum of 1/4" in height.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Photoelectric detector shall utilize a light scattering type photoelectric smoke sensor to detect visible particulates produced by combustion. The integral microprocessor shall dynamically examine values from the sensor and initiate a system alarm based on the analysis of data. Detector shall continually monitor any changes in sensitivity due to the environmental effects of dirt, smoke, temperature, aging and humidity. Information shall be stored in the detectors' memory and shall be transferred to the electronic loop controller for retrieval using a laptop PC or the Intelligent Detector Program/Service Tool designed by the manufacturer specifically for the purpose.
2. The alarm set point shall be field selectable to any of five sensitivity settings ranging from 1.0% to 3.5% smoke obscuration per foot. The photo detector shall be suitable for operation in the following environment:

   a. Temperature: 32º F to 120º F (0oC to 49oC)
   b. Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing

c. Elevation: no limit

2.8 HEAT DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

1. System shall use Analytical Microprocessor-based Detectors that are capable of full digital communications with the Fire Alarm / Life Safety System using both broadcast and polling communications protocols. Each detector shall be capable of performing independent advanced fire detection algorithms. The fire detection algorithm shall measure sensor signal dimensions, time patterns and combine different fire parameters to increase reliability and distinguish real fire conditions from unwanted nuisance alarms caused by environmental events. Signal patterns that are not typical of fires shall be eliminated by digital filters and will not cause a system alarm condition. Devices not capable of combining different fire parameters or employing digital filters will not be acceptable.
2. Each detector shall have an integral microprocessor capable of making alarm decisions based on fire parameter information stored in the detectors' memory. Detectors not capable of making independent alarm decisions are not be acceptable. Maximum total loop response time for detectors changing state (alarm or trouble) shall be 0.5 seconds.
3. Each detector shall be capable of identifying diagnostic codes to be used for system maintenance. All diagnostic codes shall be stored in the detector. Each smoke detector shall be capable of transmitting pre-alarm, alarm, and maintenance signals to the Fire Alarm Control Panel via the Electronic Loop Controller.
4. All of these devices and their bases will also be required to be labeled with engraved Lexan labels to identify device address and intended location. Labels shall be red background with white letters, letters shall be a minimum of 1/4" in height.

B. Detectors - Fixed Temperature/Rate of Rise Heat Detector:

1. Heat Detector shall have a solid-state heat sensor, and shall transmit an alarm at a fixed temperature of 135° F (57°C) or due to a temperature Rate of Rise of 15°F/minute (9°C/minute). The detector shall continually monitor the temperature of the air in its surroundings to minimize thermal lag to the time required to process an alarm.
2. The heat detector shall be rated for ceiling installation at 70 ft (21.3m) centers and be suitable for wall mount applications.
3. Heat detectors provided for kiln rooms shall be standard rated.

2.9 DETECTOR MOUNTING BASES

A. Mounting base will not contain any electronics, shall support all Microprocessor-based Smoke detector types detailed in this specification, and have the following minimum requirements:

1. Removal of the respective detector will not affect electronic loop communications with other detectors on that loop.
2. Field Wiring Connections shall be made to the room side of the base, so that wiring connections can be made or disconnected by the installer without the need to remove the mounting base from the electrical box.
3. The base shall be capable of supporting remote alarm annunciation.
4. Bases will have the option of external L.E.D. operation, Relay base or data line isolator base.

a. Relay base shall mount in a standard electrical box described above and provide Form "C" contacts rated at 1 amp @ 30VDC and listed for "pilot duty".
b. Isolator bases shall operate within a minimum of 23 msec. Of a short circuit on the data line, shall run self-test procedure to re-establish normal operation, and shall operate in a class 'A' operation as well as class 'B'.

2.10 DUCT DETECTOR HOUSING

A. The Analytical Microprocessor-based photoelectric smoke detector shall be readily adaptable for use in air duct smoke detection applications, using a housing that mounts to the outside of the duct. When used for duct smoke detection, the smoke detectors will not forfeit any of the system functionality which they have when used as area smoke detectors.

B. The duct smoke detection housing shall allow the detector to sample and compensate for, variations in duct air velocity between 300 and 4000 feet per minute.

C. Remote alarm LEDs and Remote Test Stations shall be supported by the duct smoke detector and provided where indicated.

D. All detectors used in duct applications shall be located in accordance with NFPA 72 recommendations.

2.11 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.

B. Edwards # SIGA-COD or equal.

C. Kitchen carbon monoxide detector, where applicable shall have (1) detector with an output screen that reads carbon monoxide parts per million. Unit shall have battery back up with a test/reset switch and a peak level switch for personnel recording. Unit shall be plug-in type and not centrally connected to the fire alarm system. Based on the following, but not limited to:
1. KIDDIE KN-COPP-3

2.12 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. General:

1. All appliances which are supplied for the requirements of this specification shall be U.L. Listed for Fire Protective Service and shall be capable of providing the "Equivalent Facilitation" which is allowed under the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibilities Guidelines (ADA (AG)), and shall be UL 1971, and ULC S526 Listed.
2. All appliances shall be of the same manufacturer as the Fire Alarm Control Panel specified to insure absolute compatibility between the appliances and the control panels, and to ensure that the application of the appliances are done in accordance with the single manufacturers' instructions.
3. All horns shall be electronic, with field selectable jumpers to set operation for either continuous ring or temporal pattern and shall provide an adjustable high output or low output at 98dB or 94dB - . In - Out screw terminals shall be provided for wiring, the use of 'pig-tail' type connectors are not acceptable.
4. Wall or ceiling mount notification devices are acceptable.
5. All speaker/strobes shall be Genesis series with selectable candela output and wattage switch.

6. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
7. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

B. Self - Synchronized Strobes - Genesis series as required:

1. Strobes shall be supplied by the same manufacturer as the Fire Alarm Control Equipment. In - Out screw terminals shall be provided for wiring. The Strobes shall have a red or white plastic faceplate. They shall provide the proper candela output for the project per NFPA 72 spacing guidelines and synchronized flash outputs minimum requirements. The strobe shall have lens markings oriented for wall mounting.
2. In - Out screw terminals shall be provided for wiring. They shall provide synchronized flash outputs as required to comply with code requirements.

2.13 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.

B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.14 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A. Remote LCD annunciators shall have the full ability and duplicate in all fashion the main user interface located on the control panel. This includes the ability to control all system functions, tests, programming, and annunciations.

B. Annunciator shall also include the ability to add programmable switches and or LED’s as required for special functions without the need to add additional wires or cabinets.

C. Locate one remote full function LCD annunciator in the administration area of the building.

D. Locate one display only alpha-numeric annunciator adjacent to the front door.

2.15 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. General:

1. Fire Alarm / Life Safety System shall incorporate microprocessor-based addressable modules for the monitoring and control of system Input and Output functions over a 2 wire electronic communications loop, using both broadcast and serial polling protocols. All modules shall display communications and alarm status via LED indicators.
2. The function of each connected module shall be determined by the module type, and shall be defined in the system software through the application of a personality code. Simply changing the associated personality code may change module operation at any time.
3. All addressing of the Microprocessor-based Addressable Modules shall be done electronically, and the electrical location of each module shall be automatically reported

to the Fire Alarm Control Panel, where it may be downloaded into a PC, or printed out. The addressing of the modules will not be dependent on their electrical location on the circuit.

4. All field wiring to the Microprocessor-based Addressable Modules shall be supervised for opens and ground faults and shall be location annunciated to the module of incidence.
5. Diagnostic circuitry, and their associated indicators, with reviewable Trouble Codes, shall be integral to the Microprocessor-based Addressable Modules to assist in troubleshooting system faults.
6. The module shall be suitable for operation in the following environment:

    a. Temperature: 32oF to 120oF (0oC to 49oC)
    b. Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing

B. Single Input Module:

1. Microprocessor-based Addressable Modules shall be used to provide one (1) supervised Class B (style B) input circuit capable of latching operation for use with contact devices, non-damped water flow switches, non-latching supervisory sprinkler switches.

C. Dual Input Module:

1. Microprocessor-based Addressable Modules shall be used to provide two (2) independent supervised Class B (style B) input circuits capable of operating with two (2) contact devices. Both of the input circuits shall be terminated to, and operated from, the same microprocessor-based addressable module. The Initiating Device Circuit connected to the module shall be fully supervised for open circuits and ground faults.

D. Single Riser Signal Module:

1. The Microprocessor-based Addressable Single Input Signal Module shall provide one (1) supervised Class B (style Y) Notification Appliance Circuit capable of a controlling 2A of polarized 24 VDC Notification Appliances, 50W speaker circuit power @ 25VRMS, or 35W speaker circuit power @ 70VRMS.

E. Control Relay Module:

1. Microprocessor-based Addressable Control Relay Modules shall provide one form “C” dry relay contact rated at 2 amps @ 24 VDC or 0.5 amps at 120 VAC to, control external appliances or equipment processes. The control relay module shall be rated for pilot duty applications and releasing systems service. The position of the relay contact shall be confirmed by the system firmware.

2.16 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.

B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. A backup source shall be dialed upon failure of line one. Backup source is a cellular fire alarm communicator. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of

telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:

1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
2. Programming device.
3. LED display.
4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.

D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:

1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
2. Address of the supervisory signal.
3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply.
5. Loss of power.
6. Low battery.
7. Abnormal test signal.
8. Communication bus failure.

2.17 DEVICE GUARDS

A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the smoke detector, or notification device requiring protection.

1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

B. Description: ADA compliant Stopper II pull station covers with alarm signal.

1. STI-1130 for surface mount.
2. STI-1100 for flush-mount.

2.18 FIRE PULL STATION SIGNAGE

A. Description: The signs shall read “FIRE PULL STATION”. Signs shall be 3”x 8” x.0.13” made of molded styrene. White 0.132” raised copy letters with red background and Braille Grade 2. Letters to be ¾” high, Helvetica medium and all caps.

2.19 MAPS

A. Description: Identification map showing all initiating devices and their address numbers.

2.20 SURGE PROTECTION

A. AC Protection provide Surge Suppression Incorporated Model S-SPT120-15 or equal.

B. Notification Appliance Circuit (NAC) Protection provide Surge Suppression Incorporated Models TC24D2-B, TP224D4-B, or TP224D8-B or equal.

C. Initiating Device Circuit (IDC) Protection provide Surge Suppression Incorporated Models DP24C2-B, DC24C2-B, TC24D2-B, TP224D4-B, or TP224D8-B or equal.

D. Signaling Line Circuit (SLC) Protection provide Surge Suppression Incorporated Models DP24C2-B, DC24C2-B, TC24D2-B, TP224D4-B, or TP224D8-B or equal.

E. Auto Dialer Lines Protection provide Surge Suppression Incorporated Models TC130D2-B, TC130D4-B, or TC130D6-B or equal.

F. Point of Use AC Protection provide Surge Protection Incorporated Model S-SPIU2 or equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."

1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.

B. The entire system shall be installed in a workmanlike manner in accordance with approved manufacturers manuals and wiring diagrams. The contractor shall furnish all conduit, wiring, outlet boxes, junction boxes, cabinets and similar devices necessary for the complete installation.

1. All wiring shall be of the type recommended by the NEC, approved by local authorities having jurisdiction for the purpose, and shall be installed in dedicated raceways throughout. All wiring shall be in conduit or the special MC cable noted below. Wiring shall be in rigid conduit when run outside above ground and in PVC when run outside below ground. Wiring run below ground shall be suitable for wet locations. Wiring shall be color coded red. All wiring shall be installed by the low voltage installer. All final connections shall be made by the low voltage installer.
2. Run all fire alarm cable in separate pathways from other low voltage circuits.
3. For indoor use, an acceptable alternative to cable in rigid conduit in most locations will be plenum rated MC fire alarm/control cable equal to AFC Cable Systems type FPLP.

Cable will be color coded red. In new construction, EMT will be run in walls to a surface mounted box above the ceiling. MC cable will be run to the box with the armor stripped off enough to feed the device connected to the conduit without using additional splices. Use separate cables for data and signals. Where not run in cable trays, cable will be supported in a similar manner as conduit. The fire alarm installer will be responsible for the installation of the fire alarm MC cable and fire alarm devices. The electrical contractor will provide AC power and conduit stub-ups in walls and related boxes. Connectors used will be those designed specifically for this type of cable.

4. All junction and connection boxes shall be painted red for easy identification.
5. All penetration of floor slabs and fire walls shall be fire stopped in accordance with all local fire codes.
6. End of Line Resistors: Shall be furnished as required for mounting as directed by the manufacturer.
7. All wiring and equipment shall be installed according to the NEC and North Carolina Building Codes per the drawings submitted by the authorized Engineered Systems Distributor.
8. Field Connected Devices must be installed and wired by a Factory Trained and Authorized Fire Alarm Installer or a licensed electrical contractor under direct supervision of a Factory Trained and Authorized Fire Alarm Installer.
9. All auxiliary Power Supplies or other Fire Panels shall be located in electrical or mechanical rooms. They shall be mounted at a height between 48 to 60 inches from floor level. All such panels shall be “supervised” by the main Fire Alarm Panel.

C. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.

1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of the building.
2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.
3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing [control] [monitoring] equipment as necessary to extend existing [control] [monitoring] functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.

D. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.

1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 26 05 48.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:

1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
4. Install ADA compliant Stopper II pull station covers with alarm signal over all pull stations.
5. Install identification signs next to all pull stations. Mount signs securely with screws or liquid nails. The center point of the signs shall correspond with the center point of the pull stations.

F. Carbon Monoxide Detectors:

1. Install in kitchen for supervisory alarm detection.

G. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A or Annex B in NFPA 72.
5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.

H. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.

I. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.

1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.

J. Air-Sampling Smoke Detectors: If using multiple pipe runs, the runs shall be pneumatically balanced.

K. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.

L. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

M. Audible/Visible or Visible Only Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

1. Protective covers shall be placed over the horn / strobe units in the Gym and Multi - Purpose room.

N. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.

1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.

B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
   1. Magnetically held-open doors.
   2. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
   3. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
   4. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
   5. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
   6. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
   7. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
   8. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
   9. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

C. Install identification map showing all initiating devices and their address numbers beside the main panel for quick and easy location of alarmed or troubled devices.

   1. Map shall be mounted under glass.

3.5 SURGE PROTECTION AND GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

C. All equipment shall be properly grounded. Main panel shall be grounded directly to ‘earth ground’.

D. Surge protection shall be installed on the AC supply circuit at the Fire Alarm Panel and on all initiating, notification and monitoring circuits at the Fire Alarm Panel. In addition, surge protection shall be installed on all initiating, notification and monitoring circuits at all points of entry to a building from the outside.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

    a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.9 COMMISSIONING

A. The system shall be commissioned in accordance with the needs of the occupants of the protected building. Both "Complete System Commissioning" and "Phased System Commissioning" shall be possible with the specified system, and the execution of either method of commissioning shall be treated as stand-alone projects, and shall be documented as such, including the need for a complete contract close out submittal package for each Project Phase.

B. Complete System Commissioning:

1. The Factory Trained and Authorized Fire Alarm Installer in the presence of the Local AHJ, the Building Owners' Representative, and a Representative of the General Contractor shall perform commissioning of the entire installed system, if deemed appropriate.
2. A complete system documentation package shall be provided to the Local Authority Having Jurisdiction and the Building Owners' Representative at the time of commissioning.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

1. The Fire Alarm Installer shall schedule and execute an instruction class for the Building owner, which details the proper operation of the installed fire alarm system. The instruction shall also cover the schedule of maintenance required by NFPA 72 and any additional maintenance recommended by the system manufacturer.
2. This instruction shall also be separately furnished to the Local Municipal Fire Department if so requested by the Local Authority Having Jurisdiction.
3. The instruction shall be a minimum of 8 hours in duration and presented in an organized and professional manner by a person factory trained in the operation and maintenance of the equipment and who is also thoroughly familiar with the installation.
4. The Fire Alarm Installer shall provide service and operation manuals or any other curricula that may enhance the instruction of the Building Owners or Local Municipal Fire Department in the operation and maintenance of the system. Also provide software and hardware necessary to troubleshoot and completely program the system

B. The completely installed fire alarm system will be fully tested in compliance with Testing Procedures for Signaling Systems (ANSI/NFPA 72) under the supervision of a trained manufacturer's representative. The system shall be demonstrated to perform all the functions as specified.

C. The Fire Alarm Installer shall test:

1. Every alarm initiating device for proper response and program execution.
2. Every notification appliance for proper operation and audible/visual output.
3. All auxiliary control functions such as elevator capture, smoke door and damper release, and functional override of HVAC, ventilation, and pressurization controls.

D. After the system has been completely tested to the satisfaction of the Project Manager, the Fire Alarm Installer shall complete the Fire Alarm System Certification of Completion form published by the NFPA (Figure 1-7.2.1 in the National Fire Alarm Code).

E. The completed form signed by a principal of the Fire Alarm System installer shall be delivered to the Project Manager with the other system documentation required by these specifications.

F. All installation inspections are required prior to the walk through with the Fire Marshal.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 31 10 00
SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Protection of existing trees.
2. Clearing and grubbing.
3. Removal of trees and other vegetation.
4. Topsoil stripping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Remove and legally dispose of items indicated. Removal includes digging out and off-site disposing of stumps and roots or burning if allowed by local ordinance

B. Tree Protection Zone: The area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Topsoil: Friable, clay loam surface soil, found in varying depths.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees, plantings and other improvements adjoining the construction that might be misconstrued as damage caused by the Work.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Conduct site clearing operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Protection of Existing Improvements: Provide protections necessary to prevent damage to existing improvements indicated to remain in place.

1. Protect existing improvements on adjoining properties and on Owner's property.

2. Restore existing improvements damaged by clearing operations to their original condition.

C. The conditions existing at the time of inspection for bidding purposes will be maintained by the Owner to the extent practical. However, minor variations may occur due to natural occurrences prior to the start of clearing work.

D. Do not commence site-clearing operations until erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TREE PROTECTION FENCING

A. Tree protection fencing shall be non tearable orange “snow fence” of 2,000 lb. tensile yield per 4 ft. width and 1,000% elongation at break complying with ASTM D638.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Protection of Existing Trees and Vegetation

A. Install tree protection fencing as indicated. Erect and maintain a temporary fence around the drip line of individual trees or around the perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.

1. Do not store construction materials, debris, topsoil or other excavated material within the tree protection zone.

2. Do not permit vehicles or other equipment within the tree protection zone.

3. Maintain tree protection zones free of weeds and trash.

B. Protect existing trees and other vegetation indicated to remain in place, against unnecessary cutting, breaking or skinning of roots, skinning or bruising of bark, smothering of trees by stockpiling construction materials or excavated materials within drip line, excess foot or vehicular traffic, or parking of vehicles within drip line.

C. Provide protection for roots over 1-1/2 inch diameter that are cut during construction operations. Coat cut faces with emulsified asphalt, or other acceptable coating, formulated for use on damaged plant tissues. Temporarily cover exposed roots with wet burlap to prevent roots from drying out; cover with earth as soon as possible.

D. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain which are damaged by construction operations, in a manner acceptable to Architect.

3.2 SITE CLEARING

A. General: Remove trees, shrubs, grass and other vegetation as required to permit installation of the Work. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner, where such roots and branches obstruct installation of the Work.

B. Clearing and Grubbing: Clear site of trees, shrubs and other vegetation within the clearing limits indicated.

1. Completely remove stumps, roots, and other debris.

2. Use only hand methods for grubbing inside drip line of trees indicated to remain.

3. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 6 inches loose depth, and thoroughly compact to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

4. In a scenarios when an existing tree is located on top of or in close proximity to an existing utility and removal of the stump may result in damage of the existing utility the contractor must grind the stump at the direction of the architect for no additional cost to the owner. Stump grinding versus removal must be approved by the architect.

C. Selective Clearing: Clear areas designated as “Selective Clearing” of all ground covers, underbrush and trees less than 6-inches in diameter at breast height. Coordinate extent of material removed with Architect.

1. Remove trees that appear to be dying or weakening for any reason and at any point during construction up to and including Substantial Completion at the Architect’s direction.

3.3 Topsoil Stripping

A. Remove heavy growths of grass from areas before stripping.

B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered, but to a minimum of at least 4 inches.

C. Strip topsoil in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other material.

1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

D. Where existing trees are indicated to remain, leave existing topsoil in place within drip lines to prevent damage to root system.

E. Temporarily stockpile topsoil in storage piles in areas indicated or directed. Construct storage piles to provide free drainage of surface water. Cover storage piles, if required, to prevent wind erosion.

1. Do not stockpile topsoil within tree protection zones.

2. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

F. Dispose of unsuitable or excess topsoil in a legal manner off-site.

3.4 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIALS

A. Burning on Owner's Property: Burning may be allowed on this site subject to approval from the local Fire Marshall and other authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with all conditions of the burn permit, if it is obtained.

B. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials generated by clearing operations from Owner's property and dispose of in a legal manner off-site.

1. Remove waste materials and debris from the site in a manner to prevent spillage. Pavements and the area adjacent to the site shall remain free from mud, dirt and debris at all times.

2. Clean up debris resulting from site clearing operations continuously with the progress of the work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 20 00
EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

B. Refer to Section 01 2110 and the Bid Form for information concerning required allowances and unit prices.

C. Refer to Section 31 1000 for topsoil stripping and Section 32 9200 for topsoil placement.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Excavation, filling, backfilling, and grading indicated and necessary for proper completion of the work.

2. Preparing of subgrade for building slabs, walks, and pavements.

3. Drainage/porous fill course for support of building slabs.

4. Excavating and backfilling of trenches.

5. Excavating and backfilling for underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical appurtenances.

6. Providing and monitoring settlement plates.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. NCDOT approved Job Mix for stone.

B. Imported fill (if required): Submit location of borrow pit and a sample of the soil for approval to the Owner's Geotechnical Engineer a minimum of fourteen (14) working days prior to use

C. Geotextile Fabric

D. Copy of Blasting Permit, approved by authorities having jurisdiction, for record purposes.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Excavation: Removal of all material (except for rock) encountered to design subgrade elevations indicated for cut areas and to subsoil elevations in fill areas. Excavation also includes subsequent respreading, moisture conditioning, compaction, and grading of satisfactory materials removed.

B. Unauthorized Excavation: Removal of materials beyond the limits indicated in the definition of "Excavation" without specific direction of Architect.

C. Additional Excavation: Removal, disposal and replacement of materials beyond the limits indicated in the definition of "Excavation" at the direction of the Architect. Refer to Part 3 of this Section for requirements of Additional Excavation.

D. Subgrade: The undisturbed earth (in cut) or the compacted soil layer (in fill) immediately below granular subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.

E. Subsoil: The undisturbed earth immediately below the existing topsoil layer.

F. Building Pad: The area extending 10 feet beyond the exterior limits of the building/column footings and down to undisturbed soils at a one horizontal to one vertical slope.

G. Structures: The area extending a minimum of ten (10) feet beyond the edge of foundations, slabs, curbs, underground tanks, piping or other man-made stationary features occurring above or below ground surface.

H. Pavements: The area extending 10 feet beyond the exterior limits of paved areas and down to undisturbed soils at a one horizontal to one vertical slope. The area extending 3 feet beyond the exterior limits of walks and down to undisturbed soils at a one horizontal to one vertical slope

I. Subbase Material: Artificially graded mixture of crushed gravel or crushed stone meeting NCDOT specifications. Material type is indicated on the drawings.

J. Drainage/Porous Fill: Washed, evenly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel meeting the requirements of NCDOT No. 57 Stone.

K. Rock: Hard bed rock, boulders or similar material requiring the use of rock drills and/or explosives for removal. The criteria for classification of general excavation as rock is any material which cannot be dislodged by a Caterpillar D-8 Tractor, or equivalent, equipped with a single tooth hydraulically operated power ripper. The criteria for trench rock shall be that a Caterpillar 345 Backhoe, or equivalent, with a proper width bucket cannot remove the material.

1.5 Additional work

A. Paragraph 4.3.4 of General Conditions refers to certain conditions that may require additional excavation work. This paragraph is further defined herein and, where there are conflicts, is superseded by this section.

B. Claims for concealed, unknown, or unanticipated subsurface conditions are limited to those circumstances where:

1. Additional excavation work is required below the contract limits indicated to provide acceptable bearing for building pad, structures or pavements.

2. Additional excavation work is required to raise, lower, or revise the footings, foundations or other parts of the building to provide acceptable bearing.

3. Additional excavation work below the utility trench design elevations, for utilities outside the limits of the building, as required to provide acceptable bearing for the utility.

4. Rock is encountered between existing grade and design subgrade.

C. The risks of concealed, unknown, or unanticipated subsurface conditions (except for rock) from existing ground surface to the design subgrade elevations in cut areas and to subsoil elevations in fill areas shall be included in the Contract Amount and shall not be considered as grounds for additional costs to the Contract. The risks of concealed, unknown, or unanticipated subsurface conditions below the elevations stated above shall be considered as Additional Excavation.

D. During construction, if concealed, unknown, or unanticipated subsurface conditions are encountered which require that footings, foundations or other parts of the building be raised, lowered or revised to provide acceptable bearing for the building or if, outside the building limits, additional depth of utility trench excavation below the design subgrade or subsoil elevations is required, immediately notify the Architect upon discovery of such condition prior to disturbing the material encountered.

E. Payment for additional Work

1. Additional excavation shall be counted toward the unit price allowances established in the Bid Form. *The Owner reserves the right to negotiate said unit price allowances prior to the Award of Contract.*

2. Lowering of footings shall be paid for at a negotiated amount. The additional excavation involved shall be counted toward the unit price allowance.

3. Rock removal, if required, shall be counted toward the unit price allowances established in the Bid Form. All rock removal required to complete work other than trenching shall be paid for at the unit price for mass rock removal. Rock payment lines are limited to the following:

a) Two feet outside of concrete work for which forms are required, except footings.

b) One foot outside perimeter of footings, two feet below bottom of footings.

c) In pipe trenches, 6 inches below invert elevation of pipe and 3 feet wider than outside diameter of pipe, but not less than 4 feet minimum trench width.

d) Outside dimensions of concrete work where no forms are required.

e) Under slabs on grade, 6 inches below bottom of concrete slab.

4. No payment will be made for unauthorized excavation.

5. The expense of surveying quantities of rock removal and additional excavation shall be included in the unit price allowances.

1.6 EARTHWORK BALANCE ADJUSTMENTS

A. Adjustments of grades may be allowed with prior written approval of the Architect in order to accommodate shortfall or surplus of material that may occur. Should adjustments be allowed, maintenance of designed drainage patterns and required adjustments to drainage structures shall be a Contract responsibility. **No additional payment will be made for these adjustments**.

B. It is anticipated that some material will be required to be imported to achieve the finish grades indicated on the Drawings. Importation of the required material shall be a Contract responsibility. **No additional payment will be made for the importation of this material**.

C. It is anticipated that some material will be required to be exported to achieve the finish grades indicated on the Drawings. Excavation and disposal of the required material off-site in a legal manner shall be a Contract responsibility. **No additional payment will be made for the export and disposal of this material**.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Codes and Standards: Perform excavation work in compliance with applicable requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Environmental Compliance:

1. Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual for erosion control during earthwork operations.

2. Comply with the permit conditions for all work performed within wetlands.

C. Testing and Inspection Service: Owner will employ and pay for an independent Geotechnical testing and inspection laboratory to perform soil testing and inspection service during earthwork operations. Cooperate with Owner's Geotechnical Engineer as required for testing and inspection of work. These services do not relieve the responsibility for compliance with Contract Document requirements.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Site Information: Data concerning subsurface materials or conditions, which are based on test borings, have been obtained by the Owner for his use in designing the project. This data is contained in a report titled "FLATWOODS MIDDLE SCHOOL GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT by TERRACON. dated May 16, 2024. This report is included in this project manual for information only.

1. The accuracy or completeness of the data is not warranted or guaranteed by the Owner or the Architect/Engineer, and in no event shall be considered part of the Contract Documents. The Owner and Architect/Engineer expressly disclaim any responsibility for the data as being representative of the conditions and materials that may be encountered.

B. Bidders and interested parties (prior to receipt of bids) are encouraged to conduct their own soil and subsurface investigations, examinations, tests, and exploratory borings to determine the nature of the soil conditions underlying the project site. Contact the Owner's office to make an appointment to enter the site for the purpose of conducting your own investigation prior to bid.

C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner of others except when permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide acceptable temporary utility services.

1. Notify Architect not less than 48 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.

2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without receiving Architect's written permission.

3. Existing utilities across or along the line of work are indicated only in an approximate location. Locate all underground lines and structures. Call "NC one call" at 1-800-632-4949 prior to construction. If utilities are marked that are not shown on the plans, locate utility vertically and horizontally and provide information to architect. Repair and correct any damage to underground lines and structures.

1.9 SAFETY

A. Protection of Persons and Property: Barricade open excavations occurring as part of this work and post with warning lights.

1. Operate warning lights as recommended by authorities having jurisdiction and governing regulations and standards.

2. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

B. Work within the road right-of-way shall meet all requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Work Area Protection Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Satisfactory soil materials are defined as those complying with ASTM D2487 soil classification groups CL, GC, SC, GW, GP, GM, SM, SW, and SP.

B. Unsatisfactory soil materials are defined as those complying with ASTM D2487 soil classification groups CH, OL, OH, MH, ML and PT.

C. Backfill and Fill Materials: Satisfactory soil materials free of clay, rock or gravel larger than 4 inches in any dimension (2 inches for material used in trench backfill), debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation and other deleterious matter.

D. Imported material for structural fill shall comply with ASTM D2487 soil classification groups CL, GC, SC, GW, GP, GM, SM, SW, and SP.

2.2 Accessories

A. Non-woven Geotextile Fabric (for drainage): Mirafi 140N, or equivalent.

B. Woven Geotextile Fabric (for reinforcement): Mirafi 500X, or equivalent.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Section 02230 "Site Clearing."

C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earthwork operations.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and subsurface or groundwater from flowing into excavations and from flooding project site and surrounding area.

1. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water to prevent softening of foundation bottoms, undercutting footings, and soil changes detrimental to stability of subgrade and foundations. Provide and maintain pumps, well points, sumps, suction and discharge lines, and other dewatering system components necessary to convey water away from excavations.

2. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside excavation limits to convey rain water and water removed from excavations to collecting or runoff areas. Do not use utility trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.

B. Should any springs or running water be encountered in the excavation, notify the Architect and provide discharge by trenches (or other acceptable means) and drain to an appropriate point of disposal. Provide temporary drainage facilities to minimize the flow of rainwater onto adjacent property. Repair any damage to property or to subgrade as a result of construction and/or dewatering (or lack thereof) operations at no additional cost to the Contract. If permanent provision must be made for disposal of water other than as indicated, the Contract price shall be adjusted.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Blasting may be done only if authorized by the Owner and local authorities having jurisdiction. When explosives are used, experienced powdermen or persons who are licensed or otherwise authorized to use explosives shall execute the work. Explosives shall be stored, handled, and used in accordance with local regulations and with the "Manual of Accident Prevention in Construction" of the Associated General Contractor of America, Inc. Correct any damage to foundations or other work caused by use of explosives. Meeting the requirements of the blasting permit, if issued, is a Contract responsibility.

3.4 EXCAVATION

A. Excavation consists of removal, placement and disposal of material encountered when establishing required subgrade or finish grade elevations.

1. Excavation includes removal and disposal of pavements and other obstructions visible on ground surface; underground structures, utilities and other items indicated to be demolished and removed; together with earth and other materials encountered that are not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.

B. Rock Excavation: If Rock is encountered the Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will verify that the material qualifies for classification as rock excavation.

1. If rock is encountered in grading, remove to depths as follows:

a) Under surfaced areas, to 6" under the respective subgrade for such areas.

b) Under grass and planted areas - 12" minimum.

c) Under footings – Two feet below bottom of footing, One foot outside of perimeter of footing.

d) Under trenches – 6" below bottom of trench.

2. After the Owner's Geotechnical Engineer verified that the material is rock, Contractor shall employ a surveyor licensed in the State of North Carolina to calculate the quantity of material removed as Rock Excavation. The quantity of rock calculated shall not exceed the volume determined by the payment limits. The Owner's Project Representative shall review the quantity calculated within 48 hours of receiving the survey notes.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR BUILDING PAD AND STRUCTURES

A. Conform to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10 foot, and extending a sufficient distance from footings and foundations to permit placing and removal of concrete formwork, installation of services, other construction and for review.

B. Excavations for footings and foundations: Do not disturb bottoms of excavation. Excavate by hand to elevations required just before concrete reinforcement is placed. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

1. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation to required elevations and backfill with crushed stone prior to installation of footing.

C. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Structures: Conform to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10 foot plus a sufficient distance to permit placing and removal of concrete formwork, installation of services, other construction and for review. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended for bearing surface.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Cut surface under pavements to comply with cross-sections, elevations and grades as indicated.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to uniform width, sufficiently wide to provide ample working room and a minimum of 6 to 9 inches of clearance on both sides of pipe or conduit.

B. Excavate trenches to depth indicated or required to establish indicated slope and invert elevations and to support bottom of pipe or conduit on undisturbed soil. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

1. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation to required elevations and backfill with NCDOT #57 crushed stone prior to installation of pipe.

2. For pipes or conduit less than 6 inches in nominal size, and for flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, do not excavate beyond indicated depths. Hand-excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations and support pipe or conduit on undisturbed soil.

3. For pipes and equipment 6 inches or larger in nominal size, shape bottom of trench to fit bottom of pipe for 90 degrees (bottom 1/4 of the circumference). Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill. At each pipe joint, dig bell holes to relieve pipe bell of loads ensure continuous bearing of pipe barrel on bearing surface.

3.8 EXCAVATION STABILITY

A. General: Comply with local codes, ordinances, and requirements of agencies having jurisdiction.

B. Slope sides of excavations to comply with local codes, ordinances, and requirements of agencies having jurisdiction. Shore and brace where sloping is not possible because of space restrictions or stability of material excavated. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in safe condition until completion of backfilling.

C. Shoring and Bracing: Provide materials for shoring and bracing, such as sheet piling, uprights, stringers, and cross braces, in good serviceable condition. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open. Extend shoring and bracing as excavation progresses.

3.9 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Architect when mass, trench and footing excavations have reached required subgrade. The Architect will arrange for an inspection of conditions by the Owner's Geotechnical Engineer. Alternative procedures for arranging this review may be implemented at the Owner's written option.

B. If the Owner's Geotechnical Engineer determines that the subgrade bearing conditions are unacceptable, the Architect will authorize additional excavation until suitable bearing conditions are encountered.

C. Proof-roll subgrade [below the building slabs and pavements] with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction**, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction**]. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).

2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 20 tons.

3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

D. Under supervision of the Owner's Geotechnical Engineer, proofroll subgrade in cut areas below the building pad and pavement(s) with a loaded dump truck or other approved pneumatic tired vehicle. Should any unstable sub-soil be encountered below pavement or structures, break up the top eight inches of ground surface, pulverize, moisture-condition to optimum moisture content, and compact to percentage of maximum density as stated in Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements. Perform this work at no additional cost and/or time to the Contract.

E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.10 ADDITIONAL EXCAVATION

A. Additional Excavation (Mass): Remove excavated materials and dispose of on-site as directed by the Architect. Replace this excavated material with satisfactory material placed and compacted according to the requirements of the "Placement and Compaction" section.

B. Additional Excavation in Trenches: Remove excavated materials and dispose of on-site as directed by the Architect. Replace this excavated material with stone.

C. Additional Excavation in Footings: Remove excavated materials and dispose of on-site as directed by the Architect. Replace this excavated material with lean concrete/flowable fill or with stone extending 12 inches laterally beyond the footing in all directions.

D. The quantity of material removed as Additional Excavation (Mass, Trench or Footing) shall be calculated by a surveyor licensed in the State of North Carolina and employed by the

Contractor. The Owner's Project Representative shall review the quantity calculated within 48 hours of receiving the survey notes.

E. Protect the subgrade during construction. During wet conditions, the subgrade soils may become saturated and soften, possibly resulting in damage to the subgrade if disturbed by equipment. Correct subgrade damaged in this manner. **No additional payment will be made to correct subgrade damaged in this manner**.

3.11 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Correct Unauthorized Excavation as follows:

1. Under footings, foundation bases, or retaining walls, fill unauthorized excavation by extending indicated bottom elevation of footing or base to excavation bottom without altering required top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used to bring elevations to proper position when acceptable to Architect.

2. Elsewhere, backfill and compact unauthorized excavations as indicated for authorized excavations of same classification unless otherwise directed by Architect.

3.12 STORAGE OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS

A. Temporarily stockpile excavated materials acceptable for use as backfill and fill. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles for proper drainage. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile excavated materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within the drip line of trees to remain.

3.13 BACKFILL AND FILL

A. Backfill excavations as promptly as work permits, but not until completion of the following:

1. Acceptance by local authority having jurisdiction of construction below finished grade, including perimeter insulation.

2. Review, approval, and recording of the locations of underground utilities.

3. Removal of concrete formwork.

4. Removal of shoring and bracing (including backfilling of voids with satisfactory materials).

5. Removal of trash and debris from excavation.

6. Permanent or temporary horizontal bracing is in place on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow or ice.

C. Ground Surface Preparation: Remove vegetation, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface prior to placement of fills.

D. Bench sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material. Plow, scarify, bench or break up sloped surfaces flatter than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

E. Place soil material in layers to required subgrade elevations, for each area classification listed below, using materials indicated in Part 2 of this Section.

1. Under grassed areas, use satisfactory excavated or borrow material.

2. Under walks, curbs, and pavements, use satisfactory excavated or borrow material.

3. Under building slabs, use satisfactory excavated or borrow materials and drainage/porous fill material as indicated.

3.14 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Backfill trenches with concrete where trench excavations pass within 18 inches of column or wall footings and that are carried below bottom of such footings or that pass under wall footings. Place concrete to level of bottom of adjacent footing.

D. Provide 4-inch- (100-mm-) thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches (750 mm) below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.

E. Place and compact initial backfill, free of particles larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the utility pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the utility pipe or conduit.

G. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.

H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

I. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.

J. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

K. Do not backfill trenches until any required testing and inspections have been completed and Architect authorizes backfilling. Backfill carefully to avoid damage or displacement of pipe systems.

L. Under piping and conduit and equipment, use crushed stone where required over rock bearing surface and for correction of unauthorized excavation. Shape excavation bottom to fit bottom 90 degrees of cylinder.

M. Place backfill and fill materials evenly adjacent to structures, piping, or conduit to required elevations. Prevent wedging action of backfill against structures or displacement of piping or conduit by carrying material uniformly around structure, piping, or conduit to approximately same elevation in each lift.

3.15 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 3 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.

2. Remove and replace or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 3 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

B. Moisture Control: Where subgrade or layer of soil material must be moisture conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water to surface of subgrade or layer of soil material. Apply water in minimum quantity as necessary to prevent free water from appearing on surface during or subsequent to compaction operations. Maintain the moisture content of the structural fill materials to within 3% of the optimum moisture content until permanently covered.

C. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, soil material that is too wet to permit compaction to required density.

1. Stockpile or spread soil material that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction. Assist drying by discing, harrowing, or pulverizing until moisture content is reduced to a satisfactory value.

2. Work wet materials as directed by the Owner’s Geotechnical Engineer. Base bids on working material daily for a maximum of five days of acceptable weather.

3. No additional payment will be made for these operations.

3.16 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILL AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Before compaction, moisten or aerate each layer as necessary to provide optimum moisture content. Compact each layer to required percentage of maximum dry density or relative dry density for each area classification. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.

C. Control soil and fill compaction, providing minimum percentage of density indicated for each area classification indicated below. Correct improperly compacted areas or lifts as directed by Architect if soil density tests indicate inadequate compaction.

D. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum density at a moisture content within 3% of optimum in accordance with ASTM D698:

1. Under structures and building pad, compact each layer of backfill or fill soils to 95 percent maximum density of the Standard Proctor with moisture +/-3% of optimum moisture. The final lift should be compacted to a min of 98% of the Standard Proctor with moisture +/-3% of optimum moisture. This includes ground under future expansion areas.
2. For roadways the fill soils should be placed in in 10-12 inch loose lifts and compacted to a min of 95% of the standard proctor with moisture +/-3% of optimum moisture. The final lift of fill soils should be compacted to a min of 100% of the Standard Proctor. Crushed aggregate base coarse (CABC) should be placed in 10 to 12 inch compacted lifts and compacted to 100% of the Modified Proctor. CABC should be moisture condition prior to compacting and allow CABC to cure a min of 18-24 hours prior to proofrolling and density testing in the warmer months. During cooling months curing of CABC may take longer.
3. Under grass or unpaved areas, compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 92 percent maximum density of the Standard Proctor with moisture +/-3% of optimum moisture.

E. Seal all fill areas at the end of each working day, utilizing a smooth drum roller.

3.17 GRADING

A. General: Rough grading of areas within the Project, including cut and fill sections and adjacent transition areas, shall be reasonably smooth, compacted and free from irregular surface changes. The degree of finish shall be that ordinarily obtainable from either blade-grader or motor patrol except as otherwise indicated. The finished subgrade surface from the grassed areas generally shall be not more than 0.2 feet above or below the final grade or approved cross section, with due allowance for topsoil.

B. The tolerance for areas within 10 feet of building perimeter, walks and all areas to be paved shall not exceed 0.10 feet above or below the established subgrade. Finish all ditches, swales and gutters to drain readily. Unless otherwise indicated, evenly slope the subgrade to provide drainage away from building walls in all directions at a grade not less than ¼ inch per foot. Provide rounding at top and bottom of cut and fill slopes and at other breaks in grade.

C. Protection of Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas and areas of cut, fill and design/subgrade elevations from the actions of the elements and from deterioration as a

result of construction operations and weather conditions (frost, rains, snow, sleet, hail, etc.). Repair any settlement or washing that occurs prior to or after acceptance of the work. Fill to required subgrade levels any areas where settlement occurs. Protect trees to remain, and, at all areas of the Site where construction operations are in progress, provide protection for the safety of occupants of the existing facilities.

D. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.

2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

E. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:

1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus [**1 inch (25 mm)**].

2. Walks: Plus or minus [**1 inch (25 mm)**].

3. Pavements: Plus or minus [**1/2 inch (13 mm)**].

F. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) when tested with a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge.

3.18 PAVEMENT SUBBASE COURSE:

A. General: Place subbase material, in layers of indicated thickness, over subgrade surface to support a pavement base course.

B. Grade Control: During construction, maintain lines and grades including crown and cross-slope of subbase course.

C. Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders of acceptable soil materials, placed in such quantity to compact to thickness of each subbase course layer. Compact and roll at least at 12” width of shoulder simultaneously with compacting and rolling each layer of subbase course.

D. Placing: Place subbase course material on prepared subgrade in layers of uniform thickness, conforming to indicated cross-section and thickness. Maintain optimum moisture content for compacting subbase material during placement operations.

E. When a compacted subbase course is 6” thick or less, place material in a single layer. When more than 6” thick, place material in equal layers, except no single layer more than 6” or less than 3” in thickness when compacted.

F. Place subbase **and base** course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

G. On prepared subgrade, place subbase **and base** course under pavements and walks as follows:

1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.

2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.

3. Shape subbase **and base** course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.

4. Place subbase **and base** course 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.

5. Place subbase **and base** course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.

6. Compact subbase **and base** course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than **95** percent of maximum dry unit weight according to [**ASTM D 698**] [**ASTM D 1557**].

H. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches (300 mm) wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than **95** percent of maximum dry unit weight according to **ASTM D 698**.

3.19 BUILDING SLAB DRAINAGE COURSE

A. General: Place drainage/porous fill material, over subgrade surface to support concrete building slabs and sidewalks areas indicated.

B. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

C. Placing: Place drainage/porous fill material on prepared subgrade in layers of uniform thickness, conforming to indicated cross-section and thickness. Maintain optimum moisture content for compacting material during placement operations.

D. When a compacted drainage course is indicated to be 6 inches thick or less, place material in a single layer. When indicated to be more than 6 inches thick, place material in equal layers, except no single layer more than 6 inches or less than 3 inches in thickness when compacted.

3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Quality Control Testing During Construction: Allow testing service to inspect and approve each subgrade and fill layer before further backfill or construction work is performed.

1. If in the opinion of the Architect, based on testing service reports and inspection, subgrade or fills have been placed that are below required density, perform additional compaction and testing until required density is obtained.

B. The Owner will engage, and pay for, the services of a Geotechnical Engineer whose function shall be to afford complete engineering control by testing of the conditions of all

footing subgrades, the placement of all structural fills under structures, building pad and pavement areas, and all compaction where required, and to observe the proof rolling of the building pad and pavement areas.

C. The Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will be present as deemed necessary during all phases of the Work requiring filling, compaction operations or testing. The Geotechnical Engineer will provide the Architect with written certification that fill and compaction was completed with accepted materials in accordance with the Documents, and give a professional opinion regarding shrinkage or settlement of fill and safe load bearing capacity of fill.

D. Site Preparation and Proofrolling: The Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will determine if any additional excavation or in-place densification is necessary to prepare a subgrade for fill placement for slab or pavement support.

E. Fill Placement and Compaction: The Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will witness all fill operations and take sufficient in-place density tests to verify that the indicated degree of fill compaction is achieved. The Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will observe and approve borrow materials used and shall determine if their existing moisture contents are suitable/acceptable.

F. Footing Excavation Review: The Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will review the footing excavations for the building foundations. He will verify that the design bearing pressures are available and that no loose or soft areas exist beneath the bearing surfaces of the footing excavations.

G. The Owner's Geotechnical Engineer will submit two (2) copies each of his reports, recommendations and/or opinions to the Architect/Engineer and the Owner. Pertinent information will be provided to the Contractor as required.

3.21 EROSION CONTROL:

A. Provide erosion control methods in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook, and as indicated in the Contract Documents.

3.22 PROTECTION

A. Repair and reestablish grades in settled, eroded, and rutted areas to indicated tolerances.

B. Reconditioning Compacted Areas: Where subsequent construction operations or adverse weather disturbs completed compacted areas, scarify surface, reshape, and compact to required density prior to further construction.

C. Settling: Where settling is measurable or observable at excavated areas during general project warranty period, remove surface (pavement, lawn, or other finish), add backfill material, compact, and replace surface treatment. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of surface or finish to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

D. Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F.

3.23 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIALS

A. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove excess and/or waste materials, including trash and debris, and dispose of it off Owner's property in a legal manner.

B. Dispose of excess material and materials not acceptable for use as backfill or fill legally offsite.

C. Do not remove topsoil from site until it has been demonstrated to the Owner’s satisfaction that it is excess.

3.24 SETTLEMENT PLATES

A. Provide and monitor three settlement plates to evaluate the settlement occurring during and after fill placement. Locate the settlement plates as recommended by the Owners Geotechnical Engineer.

B. Record the elevation of the top of the settlement plate daily until settlement has slowed to a point satisfactory to the Owners Geotechnical Engineer. Settlement plate readings shall be made to an accuracy of 0.01’ and shall be referenced to a benchmark well beyond the influence of the fill being placed and protected from construction equipment disturbance.

C. Take precautions to prevent damaging or disturbing the settlement plates during construction operations.

D. Providing, maintenance and monitoring of the settlement plates is part of the Work.

E. Base bids on a settlement period of 45 calendar days commencing at the time final subgrade elevations in the area are attained.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 31 25 00

EROSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

B. The North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, latest edition.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the installation, maintenance and removal of erosion control measures required for prevention of sediment leaving the project site.

1.3 EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL PERMIT

A. Prior to commencement of work, obtain a copy of the approved Erosion and Sediment Control Plan from the North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources (NCDENR).

B. Apply for the Land Disturbance Permit from the North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources (NCDENR).

C. Post Erosion and Sediment Control Bond with the North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources (NCDENR).

D. Schedule a pre-construction conference on-site with the Architect and NCDENR Environmental Inspector. Hold this meeting prior to the start of any construction activities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Completed NCDENR Financial Responsibility / Ownership Form.

B. Copies of the weekly Erosion Control Measure inspection reports. *These may be submitted at the monthly progress meetings*.

C. Sediment Fence

D. Safety Fence

1.5 PAYMENT PROCEDURES FOR EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

A. Establish a line item in the Schedule of Values for Erosion Control Maintenance. This line item shall represent a minimum of thirty percent (30%) of the total value of the erosion control for the project.

B. Erosion control maintenance will be paid on a monthly basis, following the satisfactory installation and maintenance of the erosion control measures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EROSION CONTROL PRODUCTS:

A. Safety Fence

1. Four-foot-high, non-tearable orange plastic.

2. Post appropriate warning signs along the Safety Fence.

B. Construction Entrance

1. Heavy-duty stone aggregate and filter fabric construction entrance, complying with the requirements of Section 6.06 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. The water source for washing operations shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

C. Sediment Fence

1. Synthetic filter fabric, complying with the requirements of Section 6.62 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. Steel posts 1.33 lb/lf with a minimum length of 5 feet.

D. Wire Reinforced Silt Fence

1. Synthetic filter fabric, complying with the requirements of Section 6.62 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. Steel posts 1.33 lb/lf with a minimum length of 5 feet.

3. Wire fence reinforcement shall be a minimum of 14-guage and have a maximum mesh spacing of six inches.

E. Storm Drain Inlet Protection

1. Hardware cloth and gravel inlet protection, complying with the requirements of Section 6.51 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Sediment Filter complying with the requirements of Section 6.52 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

F. Culvert Inlet Protection

1. Rock pipe inlet protection, complying with Section 6.55 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

G. Diversion Dike

1. A dike or dike channel constructed along the perimeter of a disturbed construction area, complying with Section 6.22 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

H. Temporary Diversion

1. A temporary ridge or excavated channel or combination ridge and channel constructed across sloping land on a predetermined grade, complying with Section 6.20 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

I. Permanent Diversion

1. A permanent ridge or channel or combination ridge and channel constructed on a designed grade across sloping land, complying with Section 6.21 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

J. Temporary Sediment Trap

1. A small, temporary ponding basin formed by an embankment or excavation to capture sediment, complying with Section 6.60 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual and to the details indicated on the Drawings.

K. Sediment Basin

1. An earthen embankment suitable located to capture sediment, complying with Section 6.61 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual and to the details indicated on the Drawings.

L. Temporary Slope Drain

1. A tubing or conduit extending temporarily from the top to the bottom of a cut or fill slope, complying with the requirements of Section 6.32 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. Pipe shall be smooth lined polyethylene, complying with the requirements of ASTM F667 or AASHTO M294.

M. Outlet Protection

1. A structure designed to control erosion at the outlet of a channel or conduit, complying with Section 3.40.1 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

N. Riprap

1. A layer of stone designed to protect and stabilize areas subject to erosion, complying with Section 6.15 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. The size of the stone required is indicated on the drawings.

O. Check Dam

1. A small temporary stone dam constructed across a drainage way, complying with the requirements of Section 6.83.1 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2. Check dams shall be placed on filter fabric.

P. Dewatering Structure

1. A temporary filtering device used for dewatering operations, complying with the requirements of Sections 6.62 and 6.65 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

Q. Temporary Seeding

1. Planting rapid growing annual grasses, small grains or legumes to provide initial temporary cover for erosion control on disturbed areas, complying with Section 6.10 of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

R. Permanent Seeding

1. Refer to Section 32 9200 “Lawns and Grasses” for permanent seeding requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

A. Install all erosion and sediment control measures per the requirements of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

B. Protect all points of construction ingress and egress to the site to prevent tracking of mud onto public streets. Provide temporary construction entrances at all points of access to the site.

C. Clear only those areas necessary for installation of the perimeter erosion control measures. The balance of the site shall not be cleared or otherwise disturbed until the perimeter erosion control measures are installed, functional and approved by the NCDENR Environmental Inspector.

D. Follow the construction sequence and install erosion control measures as indicated on the Drawings and as directed by the NCDENR Environmental Inspector.

E. Install additional measures as necessary to prevent sediment from leaving the project site.

3.3 MAINTENANCE OF EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

A. Maintain all erosion and sediment control measures per the requirements of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

B. At a minimum, the following maintenance is required:

1. Safety Fence

   a) Review fence regularly for damage. Repair any damage immediately.

   b) Secure the fence at the end of each working day. Repair or replace all locking devices as necessary.

2. Construction Entrance

   a) Wash and rework stone and/or place additional stone as required to prevent tracking of mud onto the roadways.

   b) Clean out the sediment-trapping device for the washrack.

   c) Remove all materials spilled, dropped, washed or otherwise tracked onto roadways or into storm sewers immediately. Do not use water trucks to wash the roadways.

3. Sediment Fence

   a) Inspect immediately following each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall.

   b) Make any required repairs immediately. Give special attention to damage resulting from end-runs and undercutting.

   c) Replace fabric that is decomposing or is otherwise ineffective.

   d) Clean out accumulated sediment following every storm event. Do not allow sediment to accumulate higher than one-half the height of the barrier.

4. Wire Reinforced Sediment Fence

   a) Inspect immediately following each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall.

   b) Make any required repairs immediately. Give special attention to damage resulting from end-runs and undercutting.

   c) Replace fabric that is decomposing or is otherwise ineffective.

   d) Clean out accumulated sediment following every storm event. Do not allow sediment to accumulate higher than one-half the height of the barrier.

5. Storm Drain Inlet Protection

   a) Inspect immediately following each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall.

   b) Remove and clean or replace stone filters that have been clogged with sediment. Make any required repairs immediately

   c) Remove accumulated sediment as required. Do not allow sediment to accumulate higher than one-half the height of the measure.

6. Culvert Inlet Protection

   a) Inspect immediately following each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall.

   b) Remove and clean or replace stone filters that have been clogged with sediment. Make any required repairs immediately

   c) Remove accumulated sediment as required. Do not allow sediment to accumulate higher than one-half the height of the measure.

7. Temporary Diversion Dike

   a) Inspect immediately following each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall. Inspect at least once every two weeks, whether or not it has rained. Make any necessary repairs immediately.

   b) Repair damages caused by construction activities by the end of each working day.

8. Temporary Diversion

   a) Review measure at the end of each working day to ensure its effective operation.

9. Diversion

   a) Inspect diversion following every rainfall and at least once every two weeks.

   b) Remove accumulated sediment and make repairs as necessary.

   c) Re-seed as necessary to maintain vegetative cover.

10. Temporary Sediment Trap

    a) Remove sediment and restore the trap to its original dimensions once the sediment accumulates to the cleanout level. Refer to the drawings for the appropriate cleanout level elevations.

    b) Any pumping shall be discharged through an approved dewatering structure.

c) Remove and clean or replace stone choked with sediment.

d) Regularly check the structure to ensure that it is structurally sound. Immediately repair any damage discovered.

11. Sediment Basin

a) Remove sediment and restore the basin to its original dimensions once the sediment accumulates to the cleanout level. Refer to the drawings for the appropriate cleanout level elevations.

b) Any pumping shall be discharged through an approved dewatering structure.

c) Regularly inspect the principal spillway and outfall for proper function. Regularly inspect the emergency spillway to ensure that its lining is well established and erosion resistant. Immediately repair any damage discovered.

d) Regularly check the embankment to ensure that it is structurally sound. Immediately repair any damage discovered.

12. Temporary Slope Drain

a) Inspect the temporary slope drains weekly and following every storm event. Immediately make any necessary repairs to ensure a free flow through the pipe.

13. Outlet Protection

a) Inspect outlet protection following every storm event. Re-lay riprap as necessary to prevent concentrated flow from running across the outlet protection.

14. Riprap

a) Inspect riprap following every storm event. Re-lay riprap as necessary to prevent concentrated flow from running under or around the riprap.

b) Clean out accumulated sediment from the riprap.

15. Check Dams

a) Inspect immediately following each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall.

b) Remove and clean or replace stone that has been clogged with sediment.

c) Inspect for evidence of by-pass flows. Make any required repairs immediately

d) Remove accumulated sediment as required. Do not allow sediment to accumulate higher than one-half of the height of the dam.

16. Dewatering Structure

    a) Repair or replace the filtering media to prevent sediment accumulation from affecting the filtering capacity of the structure.

17. Temporary Seeding

    a) Re-seed and mulch areas where cover is inadequate to protect against erosion until adequate cover is obtained.

C. Remove accumulated sediment as required and at appropriate intervals to maintain the effective function of all erosion control measures.

D. Inspect, repair and remove accumulated sediment from erosion control measures following significant (greater than ½") rainfall events.

E. If erosion control measures become clogged, causing the impoundment of water, restore the measures immediately. Ponded water poses a potential drowning hazard and shall be relieved immediately by either pumping (through an approved dewatering structure) or by removal of the blockage.

3.4 REMOVAL OF EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

A. Remove all temporary erosion control measures following the stabilization of the site. Do not remove erosion control measures until authorized by the NCDENR Environmental Inspector.

B. Topsoil, permanently seed and stabilize areas occupied by erosion control measures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 31 16
TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes soil treatment for termite control.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data and application instructions.

B. Certification that products used comply with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulations for termiticides.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. In addition to requirements of these specifications, comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for preparing substrate and application.

B. Engage a professional pest control operator who is licensed according to regulations of governing authorities to apply soil treatment solution.

C. Use only termiticides that bear a federal registration number of the EPA and are approved by local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Restrictions: Do not apply soil treatment solution until excavating, filling, and grading operations are completed, except as otherwise required in construction operations.

B. To ensure penetration, do not apply soil treatment to frozen or excessively wet soils or during inclement weather. Comply with handling and application instructions of the soil toxicant manufacturer.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Furnish written warranty, executed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

B. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion. Also, include a renewable warranty for the Owner’s future consideration.

C. The warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL TREATMENT SOLUTION:

A. Use an emusible concentrate insecticide for dilution with water, specially formulated to prevent infestation by termites. Fuel oil will not be permitted as a diluent. Provide a working solution of one of the following chemical elements and concentrations:

1. Cypermethrin (Demon Max) per manufacturer recommendations.

B. Other solutions may be used as recommended by Applicator and if acceptable to local governing authorities. Use only soil treatment solutions that are not injurious to planting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Surface Preparation: Remove foreign matter that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and foundations. Toxicants may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended by toxicant manufacturer.

B. Application Rates: Apply soil treatment solution as follows:

1. Under slab-on-grade structures, treat soil before concrete slabs are placed, using the following application rates:

a) Apply 4 gallons of chemical solution per 10 linear feet (5.1 L of chemical solution per meter) to soil in critical areas under slab, including entire inside perimeter of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partition walls, around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating slab, and around interior column footers.

b) Apply 1 gallon of chemical solution per 10 sq. ft. (4.1 L of chemical solution per sq. m) as an overall treatment under slab and attached slab areas where fill is soil or unwashed gravel. Apply 1-1/2 gallon of chemical solution per 10 sq. ft. (6.1 L of chemical solution per sq. m) to areas where fill is washed gravel or other coarse absorbent material.

c) Apply 4 gallons of chemical solution per 10 linear feet (5.1 L of chemical solution per meter) of trench for each 12 inches (300 mm) of depth from grade to footing, along outside edge of building. Dig a trench 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) wide along outside of foundation to a depth of not less than 12 inches (300 mm). Punch holes to top of footing at not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and apply chemical solution. Mix chemical solution with the soil as it is being replaced in the

trench.

2. Under crawlspace and basement structures, treat soil along exterior and interior walls of foundations with shallow footings as specified above for exterior of slab-on-grade structures.

3. Treat soil under or around crawlspace structures as follows:

   a) Apply 4 gallons of chemical solution per 10 linear feet (5.1 L of chemical solution per meter) of trench along inside of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partitions, and around piers and plumbing. Do not apply an overall treatment in crawlspaces.

   b) Apply 4 gallons of chemical solution per 10 linear feet (5.1 L of chemical solution per meter) of trench, for each 12 inches (300 mm) of depth from grade to footing, along outside of foundation walls, including part beneath entrance platform porches, etc.

   c) Apply 4 gallons of chemical solution per 10 linear feet (5.1 L of chemical solution per meter) along the inside and outside of foundation walls of porches.

   d) Apply 1 gallon of chemical solution per 10 sq. ft. (4.1 L of chemical solution per sq. m) of soil surface as an overall treatment only where attached concrete platform and porches are on fill or ground.

4. At hollow masonry foundations or grade beams, treat voids at rate of 2 gallons per 10 linear feet 2.6 L per meter, poured directly into the hollow spaces.

5. At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated, apply at rate of 4 gallons per 10 linear feet (5.1 L per linear m) of penetration.

B. Post signs in areas of application to warn workers that soil termiticide treatment has been applied. Remove signs after areas are covered by other construction.

C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, landscape grading, or other construction activities following application.

D. Allow not less than 12 hours drying time after application before beginning concrete placement or other construction activities.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 32 12 16

ASPHALT PAVEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hot-mix asphalt paving over prepared subbase.
2. Hot –mix asphalt patching.
3. Hot-mix asphalt overlays.
4. Asphalt surface treatments
    a) Coal tar sealant

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.

B. Material Certificates: Certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that each material complies with requirements.

C. Traffic maintenance and Work Area Protection Plan: Submit a plan indicating sequencing and measures to be used for the maintenance and protection of traffic during operations within or immediately adjacent to existing roadways open to vehicular traffic. The Architect and the North Carolina Department of Transportation must approve this plan prior to commencement of work within the Right-of-Way.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed hot-mix asphalt paving similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Asphalt paving materials and installation shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if substrate is wet or excessively damp or if the following conditions are not met:

1. Tack Coats: Minimum ambient temperature of 50 deg F (10 deg C), and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F (1 deg C) for 12 hours immediately prior to application.

2. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) and rising at time of placement.

3. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) and rising at time of placement.

1.6 TESTING AND INSPECTION

A. Within the road Right-of-Way and in the bus loop, NCDOT inspectors shall observe the asphalt placement. Coordinate the necessary inspection schedule with the local NCDOT District Office.

B. The Owner's testing agency will observe the asphalt placement in the parking lots and on-site areas not in Right-of-Way.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASPHALT-AGGREGATE MIXTURE

A. General: Provide plant-mixed, hot-laid asphalt-aggregate mixture complying with the requirements of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and as recommended by local paving authorities to suit project conditions.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977, emulsified asphalt or ASTM D 2397, cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

B. Prime Coat: Asphalt emulsion prime conforming to NCDOT requirements.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Paving Geotextile: Nonwoven polypropylene, specifically designed for paving applications, resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to support paving and imposed loads.

B. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.

C. Notify Architect in writing of any unsatisfactory conditions. Do not begin paving installation until these conditions have been satisfactorily corrected.

3.2 MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

A. Utilize flagmen, barricades, warning signs and warning lights as required by the NCDOT Roadway Standard Drawings and Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

3.3 PATCHING AND REPAIRS

A. Patching: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Recompact new subgrade. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches (300 mm) into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically.

1. Tack coat faces of excavation and allow to cure before paving.

2. Fill excavation with dense-graded, hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

B. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of dense-graded, hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch (25 mm) in existing pavements.

1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches (75 mm) thick.

C. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm). Refill with asphalt joint-filling material to restore watertight condition. Remove excess filler that has accumulated near cracks or joints.

D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to existing surfaces of previously constructed asphalt or Portland cement concrete paving and to surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt pavement. Apply at a uniform rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m) of surface.

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before paving.

2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillage and clean affected surfaces.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.

B. Sweep loose granular particles from surface of unbound-aggregate base course. Do not dislodge or disturb aggregate embedded in compacted surface of base course.

C. Prime Coat: For asphalt sections less than 4” thick, apply uniformly over surface of compacted-aggregate base at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. (0.7 to 2.3 L/sq. m). Apply

enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure for 24 hours minimum.

1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use just enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.

2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

3.5 GEOTEXTILE INSTALLATION

A. Apply bond coat, consisting of asphalt cement, uniformly to existing surfaces at a rate of 0.20 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. (0.8 to 1.2 L/sq. m).

B. Place paving geotextile promptly according to manufacturer's written instructions. Broom or roll geotextile smooth and free of wrinkles and folds. Overlap longitudinal joints 4 inches (100 mm) and transverse joints 6 inches (150 mm).

1. Protect paving geotextile from traffic and other damage and place overlay paving the same day.

3.6 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt mix on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness, when compacted.

1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thickness indicated.

2. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C).

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet (3 m) wide, except where infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete asphalt base course for a section before placing intermediate or surface courses.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.7 JOINTS

A. Construct joints between old and new pavement, or between successive days work, to ensure continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat.

2. Offset longitudinal joints in successive courses a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

3. Offset transverse joints in successive courses a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).

4. Construct transverse joints as required by the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.

3.8 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F (85 deg C).

B. Breakdown Rolling: Accomplish breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Repair surfaces by loosening displaced material, filling with hot-mix asphalt, and rerolling to required elevations.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling, while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve indicated density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:

1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 1559.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm. Surface course average density shall be 90 percent SF9.5A and 92 percent S9.5B of reference laboratory density.

E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while still hot, with back of rake or smooth iron. Compact thoroughly using tamper or other satisfactory method. Edges adjacent to curbs and curb and gutter sections shall be flush with the edge of concrete.

F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials. Remove paving course over area affected and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.

G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:

1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).

2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.

B. Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Base Course: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

2. Surface Course: 3/16 inch (3 mm).

3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch (6 mm).

C. Check surface areas at intervals as directed by Architect.

3.10 ASPHALT PAVEMENT OVERLAY

A. Milling at edges…..

B. Subgrade repair……

C. Tack Coat…...

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Within the NCDOT Right-of-Way and in the bus loop, coordinate required inspections with the local NCDOT District Office..

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field inspections and tests and to prepare test reports.

1. Testing agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from requirements.

C. Additional testing, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with requirements.

D. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 13 13
SITE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Extent of Portland cement concrete paving is shown on drawings, including:

1. Curbs and gutters
2. Concrete Medians
3. Walkways
4. Service area pavement.
5. Paved Ditches

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide certification that all materials meet NCDOT standards for the class of concrete required.

1.4 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Forms: Steel, wood, or other suitable material of size and strength to resist movement during concrete placement and to retain horizontal and vertical alignment until removal. Use straight forms, free of distortion and defects.

1. Use flexible spring steel forms or laminated boards to form radius bends as required.
2. Coat forms with a nonstaining form release agent that will not discolor or deface surface of concrete.

B. Welded Wire Mesh: Welded plain cold-drawn steel wire fabric, ASTM A 185.

C. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed

D. Concrete Materials: Comply with requirements of applicable Division 3 sections for concrete materials, admixtures, bonding materials, curing materials, and others as required.

E. Expansion Joint Materials: Comply with requirements of applicable Division 7 sections for preformed expansion joint fillers and sealers.

F. Antispalling Compound: Combination of boiled linseed oil and mineral spirits, complying with AASHTO M-233.

G. Liquid-Membrane Forming and Sealing Curing Compound: Comply with NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

2.2 CONCRETE MIX, DESIGN, AND TESTING

A. Comply with requirements of applicable Division 3 sections for concrete mix design, sampling and testing, and quality control or NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures whichever is more stringent.

B. Design mix to produce normal-weight concrete consisting of Portland cement, aggregate, water-reducing or high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer), air-entraining admixture, and water to produce the following properties:

1. Comply with the requirements of NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface to check for unstable areas and need for additional compaction. Do not begin paving work until such conditions have been corrected and are ready to receive paving.

3.2 FORM CONSTRUCTION

A. Set forms to required grades and lines, braced and secured. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so that forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

B. Check completed formwork for grade and alignment to following tolerances:

1. Top of forms not more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet.

2. Vertical face on longitudinal axis, not more than 1/4 inches in 10 feet.

C. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent as required to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.3 REINFORCEMENT

A. Locate, place and support reinforcement as specified in Division 3 sections, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. General: Comply with requirements of applicable Division 3 sections for mixing and placing concrete or NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures whichever is more stringent.

B. Do not place concrete until subbase and forms have been checked for line and grade. Moisten subbase if required to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.

C. Place concrete by methods that prevent segregation of mix. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocation of reinforcing, dowels, and joint devices.

D. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints as far as possible. If interrupted for more than 1/2 hour, place a construction joint.

E. Fabricated Bar Mats: Keep mats clean and free from excessive rust, and handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap to adjacent mats.

F. Place concrete in 2 operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.

G. Remove and replace portions of bottom layer of concrete that have been placed more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer or use bonding agent if acceptable to Architect.

H. Curbs and Gutters: Automatic machine may be used for curb and gutter placement. If machine placement is to be used, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed minimums indicated. Machine placement must produce curbs and gutters to required cross-section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as indicated for formed concrete. If results are not acceptable, remove and replace with formed concrete meeting requirements.

3.5 JOINTS

A. General: Construct expansion, weakened-plane (contraction), and construction joints true to line with face perpendicular to surface of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to the centerline, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Weakened-Plane (Contraction) Joints: Provide weakened-plane (contraction) joints, sectioning concrete into areas as shown on drawings. Construct weakened-plane joints for a depth equal to at least 1/4 concrete thickness, as follows:

1. Tooled Joints: Form weakened-plane joints in fresh concrete by grooving top portion with a recommended cutting tool and finishing edges with a jointer.

2. Sawed Joints: Form weakened-plane joints with powered saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut joints into hardened concrete as soon as surface will not be torn, abraded, or otherwise damaged by cutting action.

3. Inserts: Use embedded strips of metal or sealed wood to form weakened-plane joints. Set strips into plastic concrete and carefully remove strips after concrete has hardened.

C. Construction Joints: Place construction joints at end of placements and at locations where placement operations are stopped for more than 1/2 hour, except where such placements terminate at expansion joints.

1. Construct joints as indicated or, if not indicated, use standard metal keyway-section forms.

D. Expansion Joints: Provide premolded joint filler for expansion joints abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, and other fixed objects, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Locate expansion joints at 20 feet o.c. for each pavement lane unless otherwise indicated.

F. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint, not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface where joint sealer is indicated. If no joint sealer, place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface.

G. Provide joint fillers in one-piece lengths for full width being placed wherever possible. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint filler sections together.

H. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with a metal cap or other temporary material. Remove protection after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.

I. Fillers and Sealants: Comply with requirements of applicable Division 7 sections for preparation of joints, materials, installation, and performance.

J. Refer to Drawings for scoring patterns for:

1. Selected sidewalk areas

2. Service Areas

3. Patios

4. Courtyard

3.6 CONCRETE FINISHING

A. After striking-off and consolidating concrete, smooth surface by screeding and floating. Use hand methods only where mechanical floating is not possible. Adjust floating to compact surface and produce uniform texture.

B. After floating, test surface for trueness with a 10-ft. straightedge. Distribute concrete as required to remove surface irregularities, and refloat repaired areas to provide a continuous smooth finish.

C. Work edges of slabs, gutters, back top edge of curb, and formed joints with an edging tool, and round to 1/2-inch radius, unless otherwise indicated. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surface.

D. After completion of floating and when excess moisture or surface sheen has disappeared, complete troweling and finish surface as follows:

1. Broom finish by drawing a fine-hair broom across concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic. Repeat operation if required to provide a fine line texture acceptable to Architect.

E. Do not remove forms for 24 hours after concrete has been placed. After form removal, clean ends of joints and point-up any minor honeycombed areas. Remove and replace areas or sections with major defects, as directed by Architect.

3.7 CURING

A. Protect and cure finished concrete paving in compliance with applicable requirements of Division 3 sections. Use membrane-forming curing and sealing compound or approved moist-curing methods.

3.8 REPAIRS AND PROTECTIONS

A. Repair or replace cracked, broken or defective concrete curbs and curb and gutter, as directed by Architect.

B. Replace cracked, broken or defective concrete sidewalks.

C. Repair or replace cracked, broken or defective concrete pavement, as directed by Architect.

D. Drill test cores where directed by Architect when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with Portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.

E. Protect concrete from damage until acceptance of work. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

F. Sweep concrete pavement and wash free of stains, discolorations, dirt, and other foreign material just before final inspection.

END OF SECTION

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 32 17 00

PAVEMENT MARKINGS, SIGNS AND SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. Establishing the location of pavement markings and applying pavement markings for parking space lines, traffic control, fire lane and accessible spaces.

2. Installation of signs for traffic control and accessible spaces.

3. Installation of wheel stops at parking spaces.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All work and materials shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. All materials for signs shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures (and to the requirements of the latest edition of the Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices for traffic signs.

C. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer, who has successfully completed striping and signage projects similar in size and complexity to this project. The installer's primary business (defined as a minimum of 60% of total billings) shall be striping and signage.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data and written confirmation that the following materials are included on NCDOT's list of approved construction materials:

1. Pavement marking paint

2. Wheel stops

3. Signs

4. Posts

B. Installer Qualifications (NCDOT Certification?)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PAVEMENT MARKING PAINT

A. Paint shall conform to the requirements of Division 12 of the (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and Federal Specification TT-P-1952. Color shall be white unless otherwise indicated.

B. Curb painting color along fire lanes and cross walks shall be yellow, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Thermoplastic lane markings are required within NCDOT rights-of-way.

2.2 PAINT APPLICATOR

A. Provide hand-operated push-type applicator machine of a type commonly used for application of paint to pavement surfaces. Paint applicator machine shall be acceptable for marking small street and parking areas. Applicator machine shall be equipped with the necessary paint tanks and spraying nozzles, and shall be capable of applying paint uniformly at coverage specified.

2.3 WHEEL STOPS

A. Wheel stops shall be made of 3,000 psi precast concrete and be 6 inches high, 8 inches wide and approximately 6 feet long. Provide chamfered corners and edges and two holes for anchoring.

2.4 SIGNS AND POSTS

A. Signs shall conform to the requirements of Division 9 of the (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. Signs shall be fabricated with encapsulated lens sheeting.

B. Signposts for traffic control signage shall be 4” x 4” treated wood conforming to the requirements of Division 10 of the (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Utilize metal posts for fire-lane signage and for signage at accessible parking spaces.

2.5 CONCRETE

A. Concrete shall be Class A, General concrete, conforming to the requirements of Division 10 of the (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION FOR PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Apply pavement markings only when the ambient temperatures is above 50°F and less than 95°F, unless otherwise approved.

B. Allow pavement to cure for a period of not less than 7 days before applying pavement marking.

C. Clean surfaces thoroughly before application of paint. Remove, dust, dirt and other granular surface deposits by sweeping, blowing with compressed air, rinsing with water, or a combination of these methods as required.

D. Remove existing pavement markings, residual curing compounds and other coating adhering to the pavement with scrapers, wire brushes, waterblasting, sandblasting or mechanical abrasion as required. Areas of existing pavement affected by oil or grease shall be scrubbed with an approved chemical and rinsed thoroughly. Seal oil soaked areas with shellac or primer after cleaning.

E. Pavement surfaces shall be dry and clean prior to painting. Pavement markings shall not be applied within 24 hours following rain or other inclement weather or when rain is imminent.

F. Apply seal coat across the existing pavement to provide a uniform surface appearance.

3.2 APPLICATION OF PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Apply paint in accordance with the requirements of Division 12 of the (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Lay out lines and markings to the width and length as indicated. All parking space lines shall be 4 inches wide.

C. Apply paint with an approved paint applicator.

D. Apply paint at manufacturer recommended rates to provide a minimum 15 mil wet thickness.

3.3 FIRE LANE MARKINGS AND SIGNAGE

A. Mark fire lanes and install fire lane signage in accordance with the requirements of the local Fire Marshall and as indicated on the drawings.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WHEEL STOPS

A. Secure wheel stops with two 1/2-inch diameter steel reinforcing rods. Rods shall be a minimum of 18 inches in length and be embedded into the pavement, base and subgrade a minimum of 12 inches and be flush with the top of the bumper block.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF SIGNS

A. Install signs on signposts in accordance with the requirements of Division 9 of the (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Install signposts in concrete foundation to a depth of 3 feet minimum by 12 inches in diameter.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 1823.13

BASEBALL AND SOFTBALL INFIELDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Baseball and Softball infields shall be a sand/clay mixture. Extent of work is indicated on the drawings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit samples of sand, silt, and clay individually. Also submit sample of mixture complying with requirements herein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

A. Textural Analysis

	Diameter of Sieve (mm)	Percentage
Sand	.05 to 2.0	Min. 65-80%
Silt	.002 to .05	Remainder
Clay	Less than .002	Min. 17%

B. Sand Distribution

	U.S Sieve (mesh)	Percentage
Gravel	10	No more than 3%
Very Coarse	18	No more than 10%
Coarse	35	Remainder of combined percentages
Medium	60	
Fine	100	
Very Fine	270	

C. Sand: Shall be non-calcareous, clean and processed, and meet the above particle size criteria

1. No more than 10% including 3% fine gravel combined for sieve meshes 10 and 18.

2. Minimum of 80% combined fractions for sieve meshes 35, 60, and 100.

3. Combined fractions no more than 10% of material less than or equal to 0.05 in size

D. Clay Soil: Clay soils are defined as those complying with ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups SC and CL.

E. Sand/clay amendment: Turface or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 BACKFILL AND FILL:

A. General: Place acceptable material in layers to required grade elevations for each area classification listed below. Place mixture a minimum of 6 inches thick.

B. Provide written certification that the baseball and softball fields have been prepared to indicated grades and tolerances, and are free of debris as required herein.

C. Infield Areas: Use a 60% clay soil and 40% sand mixture. This may be installed as a premixed batch over infield areas or mixed onsite by installing a 1 ½" lift of each material starting with clay and alternating material with each lift (1 ½" clay, 1 ½" sand, 1 ½" clay, 1 ½" sand, etc.). After each lift is placed, thoroughly mix by discing, harrowing or pulverizing. Add 24 tons of Turface (12 tons per field), or equal, as approved by the Architect, to the clay and sand mixture on skinned areas.

D. Form infields and warning tracks with temporary edging material of appropriate height and sufficient to hold mix for installation (to avoid mixing of mixture with sod/grasses). Remove edging prior to sodding, grassing, and compaction of field.

3.2 COMPACTION:

A. General: Control soil compaction during construction providing minimum percentage of density specified for each area classification indicated below.

B. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum density at a moisture content within 2% of optimum in accordance with ASTM D698:

C. Infield Areas: Compact top 6" of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material at 95% maximum density.

D. Moisture Control: Where subgrade or layer of soil material must be moisture conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water to surface of subgrade, or layer of soil material, to prevent free water appearing on surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.

E. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, soil material that is too wet to permit compaction to specified density.

F. Soil material that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction may be stockpiled or spread and allowed to dry. Assist drying by discing, harrowing or pulverizing until moisture content is reduced to a satisfactory value.

3.3 GRADING:

A. General: Uniformly grade areas within limits of grading under this section, including adjacent transition areas. Smooth finished surface within specified tolerances, compact with uniform levels or slopes between points where elevations are indicated, or between such points and existing grades.

B. Infields: Finish areas to final grade/slope to within not more that 0.05’ above or below required elevations. Area shall be free from depressions or high spots and shall be smooth and lump free.

END OF SECTION 32 18 23.13

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 32 1823.26
ATHLETIC FIELD TURF

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Fine grading and preparing athletic fields
2. Topsoil Placement
3. Soil amendments
4. Fertilizers
5. Seeding
6. Sprigging
7. Sodding

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Athletic Fields: Baseball field to 10’ outside perimeter fence, 2 Softball fields to 10’ outside perimeter fence, and Soccer field to 15’ outside perimeter boundary lines.

B. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Certification by product manufacturer that the following products supplied comply with requirements:

1. Grass Seed
    a) Certification of grass seed from seed vendor for each grass-seed mixture stating the botanical and common name and percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
    b) Blue Tag Certification tag on each bag of seed.
2. Bermuda grass sprigs
3. Sod
    a) Gold Tag certification by the North Carolina Crop Improvement Association.

B. Installers Qualifications

1. Provide a list, with references, of the past three projects of a similar magnitude.

C. Topsoil Amendment Plan.

1. Provide copies of topsoil testing reports.
2. List of amendments proposed for topsoil, including application rates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer, who has successfully completed lawn and turf establishment projects similar in size and complexity to this project. The installer's primary business (defined as a minimum of 60% of total billings) shall be establishment of lawns and turf.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed: Deliver seed in original sealed, labeled, and undamaged containers.

B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store and handle sod according to the requirements of the American Sod Producers Association (ASPA) "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials and Transplanting/Installing".

1.7 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

A. Planting Season: Sow seed, sprig or sod during normal planting seasons for the type of seeding required.

1. Spring Planting Season:
   a) Fescue/ Bluegrass- February 15 through May 1
   b) Hybrid Bermuda grass- Apr. 15 through July 30
2. Fall Planting Season:
   a) Fescue/ Bluegrass- August 15 through October 15

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecast weather conditions are suitable for work.

C. Athletic Field Planting Schedule:

1. All athletic fields – Complete seeding, sprigging, sodding prior to one year in advance of use or by October 15

1.8 LIMITS OF SEEDING

A. Provide seeding or sprigging on the following athletic fields:

1. Baseball Field
2. Softball Fields
3. Soccer Field

1.9 LIMITS OF SODDING

A. Provide sod in the following areas, and as indicated on the plans:

1. Infield of the Baseball and Softball fields.

1.10 PAYMENT PROCEDURES FOR ATHLETIC FIELD TURF

A. Establish a line item in the Schedule of Values for Athletic Field Turf Maintenance. This line item shall represent a minimum of forty percent (40%) of the total value of the athletic field turf seeding for the project.

B. Athletic Field Turf maintenance will be paid on a monthly basis, following the satisfactory maintenance of the athletic field turf.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 6.0 to 7.0 , a minimum of 4 percent organic material content; free of stones ½" or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

1. Topsoil Source: Reuse surface soil stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of stockpiled surface soil to produce topsoil. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

a) Supplement with imported or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources when quantities are insufficient. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained construction or mining sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches (100 mm) deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs or marshes.

B. Have topsoil tested by a certified soil testing laboratory to determine the type and quantity of soil amendments necessary. Add amendments to topsoil as necessary to meet these requirements.

2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. If the topsoil analysis indicates the need for inorganic soil amendments, the following standards apply:

B. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: Class O, with a minimum 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.

2. Provide lime in form of dolomitic limestone.

C. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 6 (3.35-mm) sieve and a maximum 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve.

D. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.

E. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.

F. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.

G. Agricultural Gypsum: Finely ground, containing a minimum of 90 percent calcium sulfate.

H. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials.

I. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, diatomaceous earth, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.

J. Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. If the topsoil analysis indicates the need for organic soil amendments, the following standards apply:

B. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 percent of dry weight.
2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
3. Peat: Finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, containing partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.
4. Wood Derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture, free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
5. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.

2.4 HERBICIDES

A. Selective Herbicides: EPA registered and approved, of type recommended by manufacturer for application.

2.5 FERTILIZER

A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.

B. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.

C. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in topsoil analysis reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.

2. Minimum Composition: No less than 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.45 kg/92.9 sq. m) of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.

2.6 SEED

A. Grass Seed: All grass seed must be fresh, clean, and dry.

B. Seed Species

1. Fescue/ Bluegrass blend

Proportion by Weight	Grass Species	Min. % Germination	Min. % Pure Seed	Max. % Weed Seed
10%	Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis).	80	85	0.50
90%	Tall Fescue (Festuca arundinacea).	85	98	0.50

A. Turf Varieties shall be selected from the 2005 list of recommended Tall Fescue and Kentucky Bluegrass varieties, published by N. C. State University.

B. All seed shall bear an official “N. C. Certified Seed” label. Tags must be attached to each bag delivered on site.

2.7 TURFGRASS SOD

A. Turfgrass Sod: Certified sod, complying with TPI's "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in its "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Comply with ASPA specifications for machine cut thickness, size, strength, moisture content, and mowed height and free of weeds and undesirable native grasses. Provide viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted. Provide the following turfgrass species:

1. 100% Hybrid Bermuda grass (Cynodon dactylon)- Tifway, Tifway II or Tifton-44.

2. 90% Tall Fescue (Festuca arundinacea).and 10% Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis).

B. All sod shall be Gold Tag certified by the North Carolina Crop Improvement Association.

2.8 SPRIGS

A. Sod Sprigs: Healthy living stems, rhizomes, or stolons with a minimum of two nodes and any attached roots free of soil, of the following turfgrass species:

1. Hybrid Bermuda grass (Cynodon dactylon)- Tifway, Tifway II or Tifton-44.

2.9 MULCHES

A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.

B. Pine Straw: Fresh, dry and free from debris, pine cones, or soil. Slash Pine is preferred.

C. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic; free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

2.10 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable twisted jute or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd. (0.5 kg/sq. m), with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive athletic field turf for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of the Work. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TOPSOIL PLACEMENT FOR ATHLETIC FIELDS

A. Laser grade subgrades for athletic fields. Subgrade tolerance shall be within a tolerance of plus or minus ½" when measured with a 10 foot straight-edge.

B. Limit subgrade preparation to areas that will be planted in the immediate future.

C. Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones, sticks and roots larger than 1 inch in any dimension from subgrade. Completely remove trash and other extraneous debris from subgrade.

D. Have topsoil tested by a certified soil testing laboratory to determine the type and quantity of soil amendments necessary.

E. Sift topsoil to remove stones and other objects larger than ½" in any dimension. Maximum object size for topsoil shall be achieved by sifting not by hand removal or raking following placement of topsoil.

F. Mix soil amendments and fertilizers with topsoil at rates required by soil testing. Delay mixing fertilizer if planting does not follow placing of planting soil within 4 days. Either mix soil before spreading or apply soil amendments on surface of spread topsoil and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) of topsoil before planting.

G. Mix lime with dry soil prior to mixing fertilizer.

H. Spread topsoil to a minimum depth of six inches (6").

I. Final topsoil grades shall be within a tolerance of plus or minus ½" when measured with a 10 foot straight-edge. No ponding areas or localized low spots are acceptable.

3.4 SEEDING ATHLETIC FIELDS

A. Sow seed with a spreader or a seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h). Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in 2 directions at right angles to each other.

B. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged in transit or storage.

C. Sow seed at the following rates:

1. Seeding Rate: 200 lbs./acre.

D. Rake seed lightly into top 1/4 inch of topsoil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

E. Protect seeded areas against erosion by spreading straw mulch after completion of seeding operations. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons per acre (45 kg per 100 sq. m) to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) loose depth over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.

1. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into topsoil by suitable mechanical equipment.

3.5 SODDING ATHLETIC FIELDS

A. Lay sod within 24 hours of stripping. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen.

B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to subgrade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.

C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within 2 hours of planting. During first week, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below sod.

3.6 SPRIG PLANTING ATHLETIC FIELDS

A. Plant freshly shredded sod sprigs in furrows 1-1/2 to 2 inches deep. Place individual sprigs with roots and portions of stem in moistened soil, 12 inches apart in rows 10 inches apart, and fill furrows without covering growing tips. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.

B. Broadcast sprigs uniformly over prepared surface at a rate of 20 to 25 sprigs/sq. ft. and mechanically force sprigs into lightly moistened soil.

1. Spread a 1/4-inch- thick layer of topsoil on sprigs.

2. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.

C. Water sprigs immediately after planting and keep moist by frequent watering until well rooted.

3.7 MAINTENANCE OF NEW ATHLETIC FIELD TURF

A. Begin maintenance of athletic field turf immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established. Maintain athletic field turf until Substantial Completion.

B. Maintain and establish athletic field turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and other operations. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth athletic field surface.

1. Replant bare areas with same materials.

2. Replace disturbed mulch.

C. Watering: Provide and maintain temporary hoses, and lawn-watering equipment to convey water from a water source to keep athletic field turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.

1. Provide a source of water for irrigation. Utilize temporary irrigation meters, a well or water trucks as necessary for the water source.

2. Water seeded areas as necessary to promote vigorous growth of grass but at the minimum rate of 1 inch per week.

3. Water sprigged and sodded areas per the requirements of the grower. Maintain moist soil to a depth of at least four inches.

D. At a minimum, the following fertilizer applications are required:

1. By November 30, 200_, apply 15-5-10 commercial fertilizer at the rate of 200 lbs. per acre over all seeded, sprigged and sodded areas.

2. By March 30, 200_, apply 15-5-10 commercial fertilizer at the rate of 350 lbs. per acre over all seeded, sprigged and sodded areas.

3. By September 30, 200_, apply 15-5-10 commercial fertilizer at the rate of 200 lbs. per acre and apply lime at 2000 lbs. per acre over all seeded, sprigged and sodded areas. Provide written acknowledgement that this requirement has been met prior to requesting Substantial Completion.

E. Mow athletic field turf as soon as there is enough top growth to cut with mower set at indicated height. Repeat mowing as required to maintain indicated height without cutting more than 40 percent of the grass height (minimum of 3 mowings). Remove no more than 40 percent of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain following grass height:

1. Mow grass to a finished height of 2 to 3 inches high.

2. Mow bermudagrass fields utilizing a reel type mower.

F. Apply pre-emergent herbicide to turf-grass areas. Apply 60-90 days after planting.

3.8 SATISFACTORY ATHLETIC FIELD TURF

A. Athletic field turf shall be considered satisfactory/acceptable provided requirements, including maintenance, have been met and a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass is established, free of weeds, bare spots exceeding 2 by 2 inches, and surface irregularities.

B. Sodded athletic fields shall be considered satisfactory/acceptable provided requirements, including maintenance, have been met and a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf surface is established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas and surface irregularities.

C. Sprigged athletic fields shall be considered satisfactory/acceptable provided requirements, including maintenance, have been met and the required number of sprigs has been established as well-rooted, viable plants; and areas between sprigs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.

D. Replant athletic field turf that does not meet requirements and continue maintenance until they are satisfactory/acceptable.

E. Athletic field surfaces shall be free of irregularities and shall have a surface smoothness within a tolerance of plus or minus ½" as measured with a 10' straightedge. No ponding areas or localized low spots are acceptable.

F. Substantial Completion of the building and the remainder of the project may be achieved (pending prior Architect and Owner approval) before achieving satisfactory/acceptable athletic field turf. Continue to replant and maintain unsatisfactory/unacceptable athletic field turf until acceptance is obtained. Warranties for athletic field turf shall begin at the time of acceptance.

3.9 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by lawn work from sidewalks and paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto surface of roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain barricades throughout maintenance period until lawn is established.

END OF SECTION 32 1823.26

Revisions 12/13/24
Construction Documents 11/8/24

SECTION 32 1900
EXTERIOR ATHLETIC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to this Section.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Materials and Equipment Lists: Submit a complete list of materials and equipment required. List shall include catalog numbers, catalog cuts, data sheets and such other descriptive information necessary to show that materials and equipment meet the requirements. No consideration will be given to partial lists submitted from time to time.

B. Shop Drawings and Product Data: Submit drawings and product data as follows:

C. Athletic equipment layout plan drawings showing each item in its exact location by dimensions, prepared to a minimum eighth-inch scale. Number equipment items to identify the equipment.

D. Shop drawings and Product Data: Provide shop drawings (if not detailed in product data) and product data of each item showing materials and methods of construction.

E. Sample warranties using manufacturer's standard forms for items cited.

1.3 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Package materials for delivery in manufacturer's standard protective coverings. Cover and protect material in transit and at site. Material not properly protected and stored and which is damaged or defaced during construction shall be rejected.

B. Do not deliver components or materials for interior athletic equipment installations to the project site until building is completely enclosed and weather tight. Do not deliver components or materials for exterior athletic equipment installations to the project site until related site preparation work is complete and related site locations are ready for installation of exterior athletic equipment. Store materials and components in secure spaces. Store materials and components neatly, properly stacked and covered with plastic.

1.4 WARRANTIES

A. Provide warranties for the following items:

1. Exterior Scoreboards: Provide manufacturer's minimum five (5) year warranty against defects in manufacture and materials covering full material replacement cost.

2. Football Goal Posts: : Provide manufacturer's minimum five (5) year warranty against defects in manufacture and materials covering full material replacement cost

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Athletic equipment shall be standard production devices or systems of manufacturers successfully engaged in the manufacture of items (similar to those indicated) for a period of not less than five (5) years. Each equipment item type shall be a complete assembly and the product of a single manufacturer. Specific manufacturers' equipment models are referenced as a standard of design and quality. Complying products of other manufacturers may be considered in accordance with Contract Documents.

2.2 EXTERIOR FOOTBALL SCOREBOARD

A. General: Provide exterior football/track/soccer scoreboard (Nevco # 7405-TF, or approved equivalent) with MPC-4 Controller and case. Provide complete with football and track caption options. Provide board in color as selected by Architect.

B. Provide support for 100-mph wind. Include steel support posts with concrete footings, height of 10'-0" clear to bottom edge of scoreboard.

C. Provide buried control cable to both press box and field with all necessary boxes (ground box for football field installation), connectors, conduit, receptacles etc. for complete and fully functional system.

D. Scoreboard electrical characteristics: 80/40 amps, 120/240 volts, 60 Hz, 3W+G.

E. Control center electrical characteristics: 10 watts, 120 volts, 60 Hz.

2.3 EXTERIOR BASEBALL AND COMPETITION SOFTBALL SCOREBOARDS

A. General: Provide exterior baseball and softball scoreboards (Nevco # 1030, or approved equivalent) with MPC-4 Controller and case. Provide board in color as selected by Architect.

B. Provide support for 100-mph wind. Include steel support posts with concrete footings, height of 10'-0" clear to bottom edge of scoreboard.

C. Provide buried control cable to both control station and field with all necessary boxes, connectors, conduit, receptacles etc. for complete and fully functional system.

D. Scoreboard electrical characteristics: 40/20 amps, 120/240 volts, 60 Hz, 3W+G.

E. Control center electrical characteristics: 10 watts, 120 volts, 60 Hz.

2.4 SOCCER GOALS

A. Portable Soccer Goals: NCAA regulation goals (Porter 00487-000, or approved equivalent), with durable enamel or galvanized, steel tube or pipe frame, provide complete with soccer nets.

2.5 FOOTBALL GOALS

A. "Pro-style" model goal unit: Provide Porter 00296-233, or approved equivalent. Provide complete with upright protective padding (Porter 00187-000, or approved equivalent) with custom factory-applied lettering (Allow 11 letters on each pad for bidding purposes); and sleeves that allow for future removal (Porter 00275-000, or approved equivalent).

B. Combination Football/Soccer goal unit: Provide Porter 00274-000, or approved equivalent. Provide complete with European-style backstays (Porter 00292-000, or approved equivalent); heavy-duty soccer nets (Porter 00298-000, or approved equivalent); and sleeves that allow for future removal (Porter 00270-000, or approved equivalent).

2.6 BASEBALL AND SOFTBALL BACKSTOPS

A. Perpendicular: Anchor Fence 16-1110, or approved equivalent. Install backstop by factory–trained and approved installers. Manufacturer's representative shall provide certification (letter of approval) that installation has been completed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Coordinate with adjacent chain link fencing to provide "closure" between backstop and fencing terminating at backstop.

2.7 BASEBALL AND SOFTBALL FOULPOLES

A. Foulpoles: Patterson–Williams 1274, or approved equivalent; 30' height. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2.8 PLAYER/TEAM BENCHES

A. Provide portable (at Football Field); and permanent (at Baseball and Softball team areas), manufacturer's standard aluminum-plank team/player benches (back rest not required). Provide in manufacturer's maximum lengths to accommodate (2) 120 foot long benches at football field, and (2) 39 foot long benches at baseball and both softball field team areas. Install football field benches centered on midfield on each side of football field. Install baseball and softball benches as indicated. Provide Porter 00070-511 (portable) and Porter 00070-521 (permanent), or approved equivalent.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate and furnish anchorage devices with templates, diagrams and instructions for their installations, for athletic equipment indicated to be attached to (or cast in) concrete, masonry, and steel constructions. Coordinate delivery of these items to project site so as not to delay other work.

B. Cover and protect all materials from damage and take proper precautions to protect all finished surfaces over which or against which athletic equipment must be installed. Repair or replace any damaged finished surfaces of the athletic equipment.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's detailed instructions in installing athletic equipment.

B. Build in conduit for all electrical work, including power, cables, receptacles, motors, control wiring, key-operated switches, etc. as required for complete and functional system.

3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN

A. Clean up all debris, keeping the premises clean and neat at all times.

B. Make necessary adjustment for safe, efficient operation of operable and electrical athletic equipment.

END OF SECTION 32 1900

SECTION 32 3113.19

CHAIN-LINK FENCES AND GATES (PVC CLAD)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) clad chain link fence and gates

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for fencing, fabric, gates and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating location of fence (with dimensions), height, post locations, details of post installation, gate swing, hardware and accessories. Identify PVC touch up paint.

C. Samples: None required

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed chain-link fences and gates similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations for Chain-Link Fences and Gates: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of component for chain-link fences and gates from one source with resources to provide chain-link fences and gates of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates indicated in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL:

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. PVC Coated Steel Fencing and Fabric:

a) Colorguard Fence Products, Inc.

b) American Chain Link Fence Company

c) Semmerling Fence & Supply, Inc.

d) Anchor Fence, Inc.

2.2 FABRIC:

A. Steel Fabric: Comply with Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute (CLMFI) Product Manual. Provide one-piece fabric widths. Wire size includes zinc coating.

B. Size: 2-inch diamond mesh, 9-gauge (0.148-inch diameter) wire.

C. PVC Coating: ASTM F668, Class 2B (fused and adhered) PVC coating, black color. Bonded or extruded & glued fabric may not be used.

D. Selvage shall be knuckled at the top and bottom.

2.3 FRAMING:

A. Strength requirements for posts and rails shall conform to ASTM F 669.

B. Pipe shall be straight, true to section, material and sizes specified.

C. Steel Framework, General: Posts, rails, braces and gate frames.

1. Type II Pipe: Manufactured from steel conforming to ASTM A 569 or A 446, grade D, cold formed, electric welded with minimum yield strength of 50,000 p.s.i. and triple coated with minimum 0.9 oz. Zinc per square foot after welding, a chromatic conversion coating and a clear polymer overcoat. Corrosion protection on inside surfaces shall protect the metal from corrosion when subjected to the salt spray test of ASTM B 117 for 300 hours with the end point of 5% Red Rust.

2. PVC-Coating finish: In accordance with ASTM F668, Class 2B (fused and adhered) apply supplemental color coating of 10 to 15 mils (0.254 – 0.38mm) of thermally fused PVC in color to match fabric.

D. End, Corner and Pull Posts:

1. For fabric height up to 6’ - 2.375” OD Type II steel pipe (3.12 lb/ft). [2.875”, 73mm, 5.79 lb/ft.]

2. For fabric height over 6’ - 2.875” OD Type II steel pipe.(4.64 lb/ft). [4.00”, 101.6mm, 9.11 lb/ft]

E. Line Posts:

1. For fabric height up to 6’ - 1.90” OD Type II steel pipe (2.28 lb/ft).

2. For fabric height over 6’ - 2.375” OD Type II steel pipe (3.65 lb/ft).

F. Gate Posts:

1. Provide posts for supporting single gate leaf, or one leaf of a double gate installation, for nominal gate widths as follows:

a) 6’ or Under : 2.875” OD Type II steel pipe (4.64lb/ft).

b) Over 6': 4.000" OD Type II steel pipe (8.65 lb/ft).

G. Top & Bottom Rail:

1. Manufacturer's longest lengths, with expansion-type couplings, approximately 6" long, for each joint. Provide means for attaching rail securely to each gate corner, pull, & end post.

a) 1-1/4" NPS (1.66" OD) Type II steel pipe.

H. Intermediate and/or Center Rail:

1. Same material as top rail. Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel cap required for each end.

2.4 FITTINGS AND ACCESSORIES:

A. Material: Comply with ASTM F 626. Mill finished galvanized steel, to suit manufacturer's standards.

1. Zinc Coating: Unless specified otherwise, galvanize steel fence fittings and accessories in accordance with ASTM A 153, with zinc weights indicated.

2. Supplemental Color Coating: In accordance with ASTM F668, Class 2B (fused and adhered), apply supplemental color coating of 10 to 15 mils (0.254 – 0.38mm) of thermally fused PVC in color to match fabric. Apply to exterior surfaces and, except inside cap shapes, to exposed interior surfaces. Color to match chain link fabric.

B. Tension Wire: 7 gauge (0.177"diameter) metallic coated steel marcelled tension wire conforming to ASTM A 824 with finish to match fabric.

1. PVC-Coated finish: In accordance with ASTM F668, Class 2B (fused and adhered), apply supplemental color coating of 10 to 15 mils (0.254 – 0.38mm) of thermally fused PVC in color to match fabric.

C. Wire Ties:

1. 9 gauge [0.148" (3.76mm)] galvanized steel wire for attachment of fabric to line posts.

2. Double wrap 13 gauge [0.092" (2.324mm)] for rails and braces.

3. Hog ring ties of 12-1/2 gauge [0.0985" (2.502mm)] for attachment of fabric to tension wire

D. Post Brace Assembly:

1. Manufacturer's standard adjustable brace at end of gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts, with horizontal brace located at mid height of fabric. Provide same material as top rail for brace, and truss to line posts with 0.375" diameter rod and adjustable tightener. Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel cap required for each end.

E. Post and Line Caps: Weathertight closure cap required for each post. If top rail is required, use line post caps with loop.

F. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Hot-dip galvanized steel with minimum length 2" less than full height of fabric, minimum cross section of 3/16" by ¾" and minimum 1.2 oz. zinc coating per sq. ft. of surface area. One bar is required for each gate and end post and two for each corner and pull post, except where fabric is integrally woven into post.

G. Tension and Brace Bands: Minimum ¾" wide hot-dip galvanized steel with minimum 1.2 oz. zinc coating per sq. ft. of surface area.

1. Tension bands: Minimum 14 gauge (0.074") thick.

2. Tension and Brace bands: Minimum 12 gauge (0.105") thick.

H. Nuts and bolts shall be galvanized but not vinyl coated. Provide touch up paint and color coat nuts and bolts to match fabric.

2.5 POST SETTING MATERIALS

A. Comply with the requirements for NCDOT Class A, 3000 psi concrete.

2.6 GATES:

A. Fabrication:

1. Fabricate perimeter frames of gates from metal and finish to match fence framework. Utilize Fusion or stainless steel welded connections to form a rigid one-piece unit. Assemble gate frames by welding, providing security against removal or breakage connections. Provide horizontal and vertical members to ensure proper gate operation and attachment of fabric, hardware and accessories. Space frame members maximum of 8' apart unless otherwise indicated.

2. Provide same fabric as for fence. Install fabric with stretcher bars at vertical edges and at top and bottom edges. Attach stretcher hooks to gate frame at not more than 15" o.c.

3. Install diagonal cross-bracing consisting of 3/8" diameter adjustable length truss rods on gates to ensure frame rigidity without sag or twist.

B. Swing Gates: Comply with ASTM F 900.

1. Fabricate perimeter frames of minimum 1.90" OD Type II steel pipe.

C. Gate Hardware: Provide hardware and accessories for each gate, galvanized per ASTM A 153, and in accordance with the following:

1. Hinges: Size and material to suit gate size, non-lift-off type, offset to permit 180 degrees gate opening. Provide 1-1/2 pair of hinges for each leaf over 6' nominal height.

2. Latch: Forked type to permit operation from either side of gate, with padlock eye as integral part of latch.

3. Keeper: Provide keeper that automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in open position until manually released.

4. Double Gates: Provide gate stops for double gates, consisting of mushroom type flush plate with anchors, set in concrete, and designed to engage center drop rod or plunger bar. Ensure plunger bar cannot be removed without tools. Include locking device and padlock eyes as integral part of latch, permitting both gate leaves to be locked with single padlock.

5. Hardware materials: Provide hot dipped galvanized steel or malleable iron shapes to suit gate size. Field coat hardware parts (e.g. hinges, latch, keeper and drop bar) with PVC touch up paint, provided by manufacturer, to match adjacent finishes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

A. General: Install fence in compliance with ASTM F 567 and manufacturers recommendations. Do not begin installation and erection before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted. Apply fabric to outside of framework, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Locate terminal post at each fence termination and change in horizontal or vertical direction of 30º or more, or as indicated on plans.

C. Excavation:

1. Drill or hand excavate (using post hole digger) holes for posts to diameters and spacing indicated, in firm, undisturbed or compacted soil.
2. Holes in asphalt or concrete surfaces will be cut by core-drilling with a bit of diameter at least equal to the required hole diameter. Holes in concrete may be formed prior to placing concrete.
3. Excavate holes for each post to minimum diameter recommended by fence manufacturer, but not less than 4 times largest cross-section of post.
4. Excavate hole to depths approximately 6” lower than post bottom, with bottom of posts set not less than 36” below finish grade surface.

D. Setting Posts:

1. Space 10’ o.c. maximum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Center and align posts in hole, 6” above bottom of excavation.
3. Protect portions of concrete posts above ground from concrete splatter. Place concrete around post and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Check each post for vertical and top alignment, and hold in position during placement and finishing operations.
4. Extend concrete above grade and slope all around (dome) to allow for drainage away from post. Uniformly and neatly texture the concrete surface with a broom finish. Remove any spilled or splashed concrete from the post and surrounding area immediately.

E. Top Rails:

1. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and at other posts terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail. Provide expansion couplings as recommended by fencing manufacturer.

F. Center Rails:

1. Install in one place between posts and flush with post on fabric side, using rail ends and special offset fittings where necessary. Provide center rails for fence 12’ or taller, or as indicated on drawings.

G. Bottom Rails:

1. Install in one piece between posts and flush with post on fabric side, using rail ends and special offset fittings when necessary.

H. Brace Assemblies:

1. Install braces so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.

I. Top and Bottom Tension Wire:

1. Install tension wires through post cap loops before stretching fabric and tie to each post cap with not less than same gauge and type of wire. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire, using 11 - ga. galvanized steel hog rings spaced maximum 24" o.c. Install where top and/or bottom rails are not specified on plans.

J. Fabric:

1. Leave approximately 2" between finish grade and bottom selvage. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails and tension wires. Attach fabric with wire ties to line posts at 12"-15" (381mm) o.c. and to rails, braces, and tension wire at 24" (600 mm) o.c. Install fabric on security side of fence, unless otherwise indicated, and anchor to framework so that fabric remains in tension after pulling force is released.

2. For athletic field fencing, install fabric on the field side of the fence unless otherwise indicated.

K. Stretcher Bars:

1. Thread through fabric 4" o.c., and secure to end, corner, pull and gate posts with tension bands spaced maximum 15" o.c.

L. Accessories

1. Tie Wires: Use U-shaped wire, conforming to diameter of pipe to which attached, clasping pipe and fabric firmly with ends twisted at least 2 full turns. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to persons or clothing.

M. Fasteners:

1. Install nuts for tension bands and hardware bolts on site of fence opposite fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

N. Gates:

1. Install gates plumb, level, and secure for full opening without interference. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.2 FINISHING

A. Remove and replace sections of fence and fittings with damaged PVC coating. Minor aesthetic damage may be touched up with a suitable spray on material provided by the manufacturer.

B. Clean up debris and unused material and remove from the site.

END OF SECTION 32 3113.19

SECTION 32 8000
IRRIGATION SYSTEM (ATHLETIC)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provision of Contract, including General and Special Conditions, apply to work of this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Provide a complete underground irrigation system for the site as shown and specified. The work includes: Automatic irrigation system including piping, fittings, sprinkler heads, and accessories.

B. Automatic irrigation system including piping, fittings, sprinkler heads, and accessories.

C. Valves and fittings.

D. Controller.

E. Control wire.

F. Testing of system.

G. Excavating and back filling irrigation system work.

H. Booster Pump.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer's qualifications: The contractor must provide the following, to include name of contact, name of project, address of project, & phone number of contact. If all of this criteria can't be met, then contractor will be disqualified:

1. North Carolina class A contractors license showing a specialty in irrigation in continued force for the last 5 years.
2. General liability insurance to $1,000,000.
3. Five verifiable references in North Carolina to attest to the contractors ability to install.
4. Projects of the size and complexity of this project.

B. Experience of individual working for the contracting company will not be accepted as qualified job submittals. Experience must come from the company. Omission of any required information will be grounds for disqualification.

C. Contractors primary business is to be irrigation installation. Primary defined as 60% of the contractors business is to be derived from irrigation installation. Verification may be required.

D. Only one irrigation bid will be accepted for the project. No qualified bids will be accepted.

E. Conform to applicable codes for piping and component requirements.

F. Materials, equipment, and methods of installation shall comply with the following codes and

standards:

1. **Harnett County**, Public Utilities and Public Works Standards.
2. National Fire Protection Association, (NFPA): National Electrical Code.
3. American Society of Testing and Materials, (ASTM).
4. National Sanitation Foundation, (NSF).

G. Obtain Irrigation Designer's acceptance of installed and tested irrigation system. All mainline PVC must meet this criteria.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions for each of the system components to include electric valves, heads, controller, wire, pipe, fittings, valve boxes, manual valves, wire splices, and all other equipment installed on project. Submittals must be organized and semi-permanently bound in booklet form with a table of contents to each section. This book must be periodically updated as material changes on the project.

B. Submit the following material samples:

1. Piping and fittings
2. Clamps
3. Wire connectors and sealer

C. Submit the following equipment samples:

1. Sprinkler heads, 1 of each type, complete with housing
2. Valves and valve access boxes
3. Controller
4. Booster Pump – ----- hp – 120/240 v – Single Phase

D. Approved equipment samples will be returned to contractor and may be used in the work.

E. Upon irrigation system acceptance, submit written operating and maintenance instructions. Provide format and contents as directed by the Irrigation Designer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver irrigation system components in manufacturer's original undamaged and unopened containers with labels intact and legible. Site contractor will provide staging area.

B. Deliver plastic piping in bundles, packaged to provide adequate protection of pipe ends, both threaded or plain.

C. Store and handle materials to prevent damage and deterioration.

D. Provide secure, locked storage for valves, sprinkler heads, and similar components that can not be immediately replaced, to prevent installation delays.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Known underground and surface utility lines are indicated on the utilities drawings.

B. Protect existing trees, plants, lawns, and other features designated to remain as natural area.

C. Promptly repair damage to adjacent facilities caused by irrigation system work operations. Cost of repairs at Contractor's expense.

D. Promptly notify the Irrigation Designer of unexpected sub-surface conditions.

E. Irrigation system layout is diagrammatic. Exact locations of piping, sprinkler heads, valves, and other components shall be established by Contractor and the Irrigation Designer in the field at time of installation.

1. Contractor will stake mainline and all heads and valves and receive approval from irrigation designer prior to excavation. Contractor is ultimately responsible for maintaining 100% coverage on entire irrigated site.

F. Space sprinkler components as indicated.

G. Minor adjustments in system layout will be permitted to clear existing fixed obstructions. Final system layout shall be acceptable to the Irrigation Designer.

H. Cutting and patching:

1. Cut through concrete and masonry with core drills. Jack hammers not permitted.

2. Materials and finishes for patching shall match existing cut surface materials and finish. Exercise special care to provide patching at openings and exterior walls. Subject to approval of General Contractor's Representative.

3. Methods and materials used for cutting and patching shall be acceptable to the Irrigation Designer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. General:

1. Provide only new materials, without flaws or defects and of the highest quality of their specified class and kind to be provided by an authorized Product Distributor. Product distributors will be asked to submit their factory authorization to sell and service all components that they provide.

2. Comply with pipe sizes indicated. No substitution of smaller pipes will be permitted. Larger sizes may be used subject to acceptance of the Irrigation Designer. Remove damaged and defective pipe.

3. Provide pipe continuously and permanently marked with manufacturer's name or trademark, size schedule and type of pipe, working pressure at 73 degrees F. and National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) approval.

B. Plastic pipe, fittings, and connections:

1. Polyvinyl chloride pipe: ASTM D2241, rigid, un-plasticized PVC, extruded from virgin parent material. Provide pipe homogeneous throughout and free from visible cracks, holes, foreign materials, blisters, wrinkles, and dents.

2. 2.5" diameter and under: SDR21, class 200, solvent weld bell end PVC.
3. 3" diameter and over: SDR 21, class 200, ring-tite gasketed bell end PVC.

C. PVC pipe fittings: ASTM D2241 schedule 40 PVC molded fittings suitable for solvent weld connections. Tap tees to service sprinkler heads shall be PVC. Fittings made of other materials are not permitted. All mainline fittings shall be Harco ductile iron. Saddle and cross fittings not permitted.

D. Swing Joints shall be an adjustable double swing joint riser assembled by the use of at least 3 standard 90 degree elbows. Fabricate double swing joint risers of schedule 80 PVC nipples and schedule 80 PVC elbows. Pre-fabricated swing joints as manufactured by Lasco model # G132-218 or approved equal are acceptable.

E. Insert fittings: ASTM D2466 insert type fittings.

F. Sprinkler heads, valves, and associated equipment: Provide manufacturer's data on each type of equipment to obtain Irrigation Designer's approval.

G. Outlets

1. Quick Coupler: Solid bronze, 1" size to include swivel and key model # 474-03 as manufactured by The Toro Company, Riverside California or approved equal.

H. Sprinklers: 1" threaded inlet, stainless steel riser with the ability to mount ½" below grade. Sprinklers shall discharge 14.0 GPM @60 PSI base pressure. Sprinklers shall be 640 series, model 64X-02-42 as manufactured by The Toro Company, Riverside, California or approved equal.

I. Valves

1. Automatic remote control valves (RCV) shall be sized as specified on drawings. RCV's shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations and shall be rated for pressure and flow as required. RCV's shall be low voltage. Valves shall be constructed of plastic. Valves shall be the P-220 series, as manufactured by The Toro Company, Riverside, California or approved equal.

J. Wire

1. Control wire shall be 14/1 gauge UL/UF, direct burial red in color. Common wire shall be 14/1 gauge UL/UF, direct burial white in color. Spare wire shall be 14/1 gauge UL/UF, direct burial blue in color.
2. All wire splices below grade shall be made water proof with correctly sized wire splice connectors, made for direct burial and rated for minimum of 30 volts as manufactured by the 3M Company model DBY or DBR kit or approved equal.
3. Wire shall be color coded. White is to be used for common, red is to be used for control, blue for extra, green for stub-out and yellow for sensor. Any deviation will be replaced.

K. Field controller

1. Field controller shall have --- zones and be installed in metal lockable cabinet. Controller shall have 4 independent programs, non-volatile memory, battery back-up, 1-7 day water delay, seasonal adjust. Controller shall be Toro Custom Command # TC-24EX-R or TC-48-EX-R or approved equal.

L. Sleeves

1. Sleeves shall be schedule 40 PVC as indicated on the plan. Any additional sleeves shall be two sizes larger than the pipe routed through them.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Drainage fill: ½" washed pea gravel.

B. Fill: Clean soil free of stones larger than 1" diameter foreign matter, organic material, and debris.

1. Provide imported fill material as required to complete the work. Obtain rights and pay all costs for imported materials.

2. Suitable excavated materials removed to accommodate the irrigation system work may be used as fill material subject to the Irrigation Designer's review and acceptance.

C. Clamps: Stainless steel, worm gear hose clamps with stainless steel screws or ear type clamps.

D. Low voltage wire connectors: Socket seal type wire connectors and waterproof gel sealer with wire connectors 3M DBY's and DBR's or approved equal only.

E. Valve access boxes.

1. Valve access boxes shall be manufactured by Ametek. All valves shall be installed in 10" circular valve boxes with metal detection and locking covers.

F. Booster Pump

1. Installer shall provide a Booster Pump. Booster Pump shall be centrifugal type pump that provides 104 psi boost at 80 GPM. Pump shall be as manufactured by Aermotor or approved equal. Booster pump shall be installed in an enclosure approved by The County of Harnett. Electrical power to booster pump shall be provided by owner.

G. Water meter installation shall be by others.

H. Backflow preventer shall be of the reduced pressure principal type and be installed as per Harnett County code. Backflow preventer shall be per plans. Backflow preventer shall be installed in an enclosure approved by The County of Harnett.

I. Rain Gauge – Irrigation system shall have a rain sensor with sensor guard installed to temporarily interrupt the irrigation watering cycle during periods of significant rainfall. Installation of rain sensor shall be according to manufacturer's specifications. Rain sensor shall be a Mini-Clic model SG-MC as manufactured by Hunter Industries or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Examine final grades and installation conditions. Verify that field measurements are as shown on drawings. Do not start irrigation system work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

B. Verify the location of utilities, plant materials, shrub bed lines, and tree lines. No irrigation lines are to be routed within 5 feet of any tree on project. Contractor is responsible for coordinating the location of all trees with landscape contractor. No irrigation heads will be installed until all trees have been installed or staked.

C. Verify that required utilities are available, in proper location, and ready for use.

D. Beginning of installation means installer accepts existing conditions.

E. Contractor must provide one experienced on-site foreman or supervisor subject to approval of the irrigation designer, who must be on site at all times when a crew is working.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prior to excavation, utility companies shall be notified in accordance with local codes and ordinances. Contractor must contact **"NC one call" at 1-800-632-4949** prior to beginning of installation. All current **NC one call** rules for contact and digging will be followed.

B. Contractor shall be responsible for damage to existing utilities and structures due to negligence and/or misuse by his crews or equipment.

C. Layout and stake the location of each pipe run and all sprinkler heads and sprinkler valves. Obtain Irrigation Designer's acceptance of layout prior to excavating.

D. If applicable, strip sod for pipe trenches with a mechanical sod stripper uniformly 6" to 12" wide with clean cut edges.

E. Place sleeves as necessary for installation of piping and control wire. All piping under walks and walls shall be within a Schedule 40 PVC sleeve 2 sizes larger than the irrigation pipe.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Excavating and back filling:

B. All excavation shall be considered unclassified excavation and include all material encountered.

C. Excavate trenches of sufficient depth and width to permit proper handling and installation of pipe and fittings.

D. Excavate to depths required to provide 3" depth of debris free earth fill or sand bedding for piping when rock or other unsuitable bearing material is encountered.

E. Fill to match adjacent grade elevations with approved earth fill material. Place and compact fill in layers not greater than 8" depth.

F. Provide approved earth fill or sand to a point 4" above the top of pipe.

G. Fill to within 6" of final grade with approved excavated or borrow fill materials free of lumps or rocks larger than 1" in any dimension.

H. Provide clean topsoil fill free of rocks and debris for top 6" of fill.

I. Install irrigation lateral lines with a minimum cover of 18" based on finished grades. Install irrigation mainline with a minimum of 24" based on finished grade.

J. Excavate trenches and install piping and fill during the same working day. Do not leave open trenches or partially filled trenches open overnight.

K. If applicable, replace stripped sod in sufficient time to allow for satisfactory sod recovery and growth. Water stripped and reinstalled sod until irrigation system is in operation.

L. Valves boxes shall be installed per details & specifications on design.

M. Plastic pipe:

1. Install plastic pipe in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Provide for

thermal expansion and contraction. Do not install plastic pipe if temperature is below 32 degrees.

2. Saw cut plastic pipe. All pipe cuts to be square and true. Remove burrs and shavings at cut ends prior to installation. Use a hand beveler on all gasket pipe cuts.
3. Make plastic to plastic joints with solvent weld joints or slip seal joints. Use only solvent weld recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Primer shall be used in conjunction with solvent weld as recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Use purple primer only. Install plastic pipe fittings in accordance with pipe manufacturer's instructions. Contractor shall make arrangements with pipe manufacturer for all necessary field assistance.
4. Make plastic to metal joints with plastic male adapters.
5. Make solvent weld joints in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
6. Allow joints to set at least 24 hours before pressure is applied to the system.
7. All ring-tite gasket fittings must be thrust blocked at all change in direction fittings and isolation valves. Thrust block must be poured against undisturbed soil compaction. Utilize rebar as necessary. See thrust block detail. Use 3,000 psi strength concrete mixture for thrust blocks. Irrigation contractor to supply all material needed for thrust blocking. Brick, block, wood or stone will not be acceptable material.
8. Maintain pipe interiors free of dirt and debris. Close open ends of pipe by acceptable methods (duct tape ends) when pipe installation is not in progress.

N. Sprinklers, fittings, valves, and accessories:

1. Install fittings, valves, sprinkler heads, risers, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, except as otherwise indicated.
2. Install sprinkler heads with an adjustable double swing joint riser assembled by the use of at least 3 standard 90 degree elbows. Fabricate double swing joint risers of schedule 80 PVC nipples and schedule 80 PVC elbows. Pre-fabricated swing joints are acceptable as manufactured by Lasco model # G132-218 or approved equal.
3. Set sprinkler heads perpendicular to finished grades, except as otherwise indicated.
4. Locate sprinkler heads to assure proper coverage of indicated areas. Do not exceed sprinkler head spacing distances indicated.
5. Install quick-coupling valves with an adjustable double swing joint riser assembled by the use of at least 3 standard 90 degree elbows. Fabricate double swing joint risers of schedule 80 PVC nipples and schedule 80 PVC elbows. Pre-fabricated swing joints are acceptable.
6. Install controller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. All controller footings will be 12" deep concrete.
7. Install valve access boxes on a suitable base of bricks to provide a level foundation at proper grade and to provide drainage of the access box. 1½" cubic feet of pea gravel below box to be provided for drainage. All valve boxes shall be a minimum of 10" in diameter and shall have metal detection and bolt down covers.
8. Automatic valves shall be installed plumb with valve access box with all valve handles, bolts, connections and electrical splices accessible through the valves box opening (not less than 12" below valve box cover). All valves shall be installed off of the field of play.
9. All seal threaded connections of control valves with Teflon tape. Teflon paste joint compound is not acceptable.

O. Control wiring:

1. Install electric control cable in the piping trenches wherever possible. Place wire in trench below pipe. Install wire with slack to allow for thermal expansion and contraction. Expansion joints in wire may be provided at 200-foot intervals. Where necessary to run wire in a separate trench, provide a minimum cover of 15". Wire cannot be plowed or pulled with a vibratory plow.
2. Provide sufficient slack at remote control valves in control boxes and at all wire splices to allow raising the valve bonnet or splice to two feet above the surface without disconnecting the wires when repair is required.
3. Connect each remote control valve to one station of a controller except as otherwise indicated.
4. Connect remote control valves for each controller to a common ground wire system, independent of all other controllers.
5. Make wire connections to remote control electric valves and splices of wire in the field, using water proof wire connectors and sealing cement in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, dry splices will not be accepted. Make wire splices in accessible splice or valve boxes 10" in diameter or greater.
6. When control wiring is in common trench with main line, wiring shall be below main line with 4" of fill dirt between pipe and wire.
7. Above-ground wire is to be installed in PVC Schedule 40 electrical conduit and/or in accordance with electrical codes. Control wire that passes through walls shall be installed in PVC Schedule 40 electrical conduit. All materials and methods of installation shall conform to local electrical codes.
8. Install three (3) blue spare wires along entire path of mainline unless as otherwise specified on plans.

P. Quick-Coupling valves

1. Install quick coupling valve on swing joint in a 10" valve box. Stabilize the valve with a Leemco model #120 stabilizer (unless stabilizer is an integral part of the quick coupling valve) and 1 ½" cubic feet of pea gravel (½" to 3/4").

Q. Automatic Controller

1. Field satellite shall be installed as per manufacturer's recommendation. All grounding equipment necessary shall be included. Each exterior field controller shall include factory installed and factory recommended lightning protection and shall be grounded according to manufacturer's recommendations to achieve a reading of 10 Ohms or less.

3.4 FLUSHING, TESTING, AND ADJUSTMENT

A. After sprinkler piping and risers are installed and before sprinkler heads are installed, open control valves and flush out the system with full head of water.

B. Perform system testing upon completion of each section. Make necessary repairs and retest repaired sections as required.

C. Adjust sprinklers after installation for proper and adequate distribution of the water over the coverage pattern. Adjust for the proper arc of coverage.

D. Adjust all electric remote control valve flow control stems for system balance. Contractor must set pressure regulating valves prior to acceptance specification on design.

E. Test and demonstrate the controller by operating all programs, day, hour, and station selection features as required to automatically start and shut down irrigation cycles to accommodate plant requirements and weather conditions.

3.5 SERVICE

A. When requested, return to the site during the subsequent fall season and winterize the system. Drain all water from the system and blow out the system with compressed air.

B. When requested, return to the site during the subsequent spring season and demonstrate to the Owner Representative the proper procedures for the system start-up, operation, and maintenance.

C. After 3 months of continuous operation, after acceptance of job, contractor must return to the site and re-adjust all irrigation heads, by re-packing heads that have become dislodged due to resettling of ground, torque of spray, or vibration. Re-adjust radius, arc, and trajectory of spray of all heads.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIAL

A. Stockpile, haul from site, and legally dispose of waste materials, including unsuitable excavated materials, rock, trash, and debris.

B. Maintain disposal route clear, clean, and free of debris.

3.7 ACCEPTANCE

A. Test and demonstrate to the Irrigation Designer the satisfactory operation of the system free of leaks.

B. Instruct the Owner’s designated personnel in the operation of the system including adjustment of sprinklers, controller(s), valves, and pump controls.

C. Upon acceptance, the Owner will assume operation of the system.

D. Provide owner with 3 quick coupler keys with swivels for use on project.

E. Provide owner with all manuals for products used on project.

F. Provide owner with 1 key for every seven manual valves used on project. More than one type of valve may require more than one type of key.

G. Provide irrigation system record drawings:

H. Legibly mark drawings to record actual construction. Mark all heads, valves, and wire splice boxes.

I. Indicate a measured distance triangulated to locate each installed valve-automatic, manual, quick-coupling type.

J. Identify field changes of dimension and detail and changes made by Change Order, if any.

K. Submit 3 copies of As-Built drawings to the owner on base drawings provided by the irrigation designer.

L. As-Builts shall also indicate control valve wiring routing paths, wire splice locations, and controller location.

3.8 GUARANTEE

A. The contractor shall guarantee all workmanship covered by the specifications to be free of defects for a period of one (1) year from the date of final acceptance of the project. Contractor shall replace any part or parts found to be defective within the period of guarantee at no cost to the owner, except repairs or replacement necessitated by damage by others.

B. Back filling of all excavation shall be guaranteed. If, at any time during the first year of the guarantee period, trenches or heads should settle, the irrigation contractor shall repair any settling at no cost to the owner.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Perform cleaning during installation of the work and upon completion of the work. Remove from site all excess materials, soil, debris, and equipment. Repair damage resulting from irrigation system installation.

END OF SECTION 32 8000

SECTION 32 92 00
LAWNS AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Fine grading and preparing lawn areas (including courtyards)
2. Topsoil Placement
3. Soil amendments
4. Fertilizers
5. Seeding
6. Hydroseeding

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

B. Lawns: All areas disturbed by construction and not otherwise covered by paving, buildings or other structures. Excluding athletic fields. (See Specification 02921)

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Certification by product manufacturer that the following products supplied comply with requirements:

1. Grass Seed

a) Certification of grass seed from seed vendor for each grass-seed mixture stating the botanical and common name and percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.

b) Blue tag certification for each bag of seed.

B. Installers qualifications

1. Provide a list, with references, of the past three projects of a similar magnitude.

C. Topsoil Amendment Plan.

1. Provide copy of topsoil testing report.
2. List of amendments proposed for topsoil, including application rates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer, who has successfully completed lawn establishment projects similar in size and complexity to this project. The installer's primary business (defined as a minimum of 60% of total billings) shall be establishment of lawns.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed: Deliver seed in original sealed, labeled, and undamaged containers.

1.7 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

A. Planting Season: Sow lawn seed during normal planting seasons for type of lawn work required.

1. Spring Planting Season:

a) General Lawn Areas- Feb. 15- May 1

b) Low-Maintenance Slope (3:1 or less)- Feb. 15- May 1

c) Low-Maintenance Slope (Steeper than 3:1)- Feb. 15- May 1

2. Fall Planting Season:

a) General Lawn Areas- Aug. 15- Oct. 15

b) Low-Maintenance Slope (3:1 or less)- Aug. 15- Oct. 15

c) Low-Maintenance Slope (Steeper than 3:1)- Aug. 15- Oct. 15

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecast weather conditions are suitable for work.

C. Lawn Seeding Schedule

1. Refer to the drawings for early seeding requirements for specified lawn areas.

2. If job completion schedule does not allow seeding within a normal planting season, provide interim temporary seeding necessary to stabilize site. Complete permanent seeding during the next planting season.

1.8 LIMITS OF SEEDING

A. Spread topsoil and seed lawn areas. Hydroseed all slopes greater than 3:1.

1.9 PAYMENT PROCEDURES FOR LAWNS AND GRASSES

A. Establish a line item in the Schedule of Values for Lawn Maintenance. This line item shall represent a minimum of thirty percent (30%) of the total value of the seeding for the project.

B. Lawn maintenance will be paid on a monthly basis, following the satisfactory maintenance of the lawns.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 4 percent organic material content; free of stones 1" or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

1. Topsoil Source: Reuse surface soil stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of stockpiled surface soil to produce topsoil. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

a) Supplement with imported or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources when quantities are insufficient. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained construction or mining sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches (100 mm) deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs or marshes.

B. Have topsoil tested by a certified soil testing laboratory to determine the type and quantity of soil amendments necessary. Add amendments to topsoil as necessary to meet these requirements.

2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. If the topsoil analysis indicates the need for inorganic soil amendments, the following standards apply:

B. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: Class O, with a minimum 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.

2. Provide lime in form of dolomitic limestone.

C. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 6 (3.35-mm) sieve and a maximum 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve.

D. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.

E. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.

F. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.

G. Agricultural Gypsum: Finely ground, containing a minimum of 90 percent calcium sulfate.

H. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials.

I. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, diatomaceous earth, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.

J. Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. If the topsoil analysis indicates the need for organic soil amendments, the following standards apply:

B. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 percent of dry weight.
2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
3. Peat: Finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, containing partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.
4. Wood Derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture, free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
5. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.

2.4 HERBICIDES

A. Selective Herbicides: EPA registered and approved, of type recommended by manufacturer for application.

2.5 FERTILIZER

A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.

B. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.

C. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in topsoil analysis reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.
2. Minimum Composition: No less than 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.45 kg/92.9 sq. m) of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.

2.6 SEED

A. Grass Seed: All grass seed must be fresh, clean, and dry.

B. Seed Species

1. General Lawn Areas

Proportion by Weight	Grass Species	Min. % Germination	Min. % Pure Seed	Max. % Weed Seed
10%	2 Types: Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis).	80	85	0.50
90%	2 Types:Tall Fescue (Festuca arundinacea).	85	98	0.50

2. Low-Maintenance Slope (3:1 or less)-Refer to Erosion Control Requirements for location

Proportion by Weight	Grass Species	Min. % Germination	Min. % Pure Seed	Max. % Weed Seed
10%	Japanese Clover (Lespedeza striata).	85	85	0.50
20%	Chinese Lespedeza (Lespedeza cuneata).	85	98	0.50
70%	Tall Fescue (Festuca arundinacea).	85	85	0.50

3. Low-Maintenance Slope (Steeper than 3:1)-Refer to Erosion Control Requirements for location

Proportion by Weight	Grass Species	Min. % Germination	Min. % Pure Seed	Max. % Weed Seed
10%	Japanese Clover (Lespedeza striata).	85	85	0.50
20%	Chinese Lespedeza (Lespedeza cuneata).	85	98	0.50
70%	Tall Fescue (Festuca arundinacea).	85	85	0.50

C. Turf Varieties shall be selected from the 2005 list of recommended Tall Fescue and Kentucky Bluegrass varieties, published by N. C. State University.

D. All seed shall bear an official “N. C. Certified Seed” label. Tags must be attached to each bag delivered on site.

2.7 MULCHES

A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.

B. Pine Straw: Fresh, dry and free from debris, pine cones, or soil. Slash Pine is preferred.

C. Peat Mulch: Finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, containing partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.

D. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch (25-mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 percent of dry weight.

E. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic; free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

2.8 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable twisted jute or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd. (0.5 kg/sq. m), with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive lawns and grass for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of the Work. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

C. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseed overspray.

3.3 TOPSOIL PLACEMENT FOR LAWNS

A. Limit subgrade preparation to areas that will be planted in the immediate future.

B. Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones, sticks and roots larger than 2 inches in any dimension from subgrade, 1” in playing fields. Completely remove trash and other extraneous debris from subgrade.

C. Have topsoil tested by a certified soil testing laboratory to determine the type and quantity of soil amendments necessary.

D. Sift topsoil to remove stones and other objects larger than 1” in any dimension. Sift topsoil to remove stones and other objects larger than ½” in any dimension in all playing fields. Maximum

object size for topsoil shall be achieved by sifting not by hand removal or raking following placement of topsoil.

E. Mix soil amendments and fertilizers with topsoil at rates required by soil testing. Delay mixing fertilizer if planting does not follow placing of planting soil within 4 days. Either mix soil before spreading or apply soil amendments on surface of spread topsoil and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) of topsoil before planting.

F. Mix lime with dry soil prior to mixing fertilizer.

G. Spread topsoil to a minimum depth of six inches (6”).

3.4 SEEDING LAWNS

A. Sow seed with a spreader or a seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h). Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in 2 directions at right angles to each other.

B. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged in transit or storage.

C. Sow seed at the following rates:

1. Seeding Rates:

a) General Lawn Areas- 200 lbs./acre.

b) Low-Maintenance Slope (3:1 or less)- 110 lbs./acre

c) Low-Maintenance Slope (Steeper than 3:1)- 140 lbs./acre

D. Rake seed lightly into top 1/4 inch of topsoil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

E. Hydroseed all slopes 3:1 or steeper.

F. Protect seeded areas 3:1 slope/grade or steeper against erosion by providing erosion-control blankets installed and stapled according to manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Protect seeded areas less than 3:1 slope/grade against erosion by spreading straw mulch after completion of seeding operations. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons per acre (45 kg per 100 sq. m) to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) loose depth over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.

1. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into topsoil by suitable mechanical equipment.

3.5 MAINTENANCE OF NEW LAWNS

A. Begin maintenance of lawns immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable lawn is established. Maintain seeded lawns until Substantial Completion. Maintain all grassed areas as necessary to ensure a satisfactory lawn is achieved at Substantial Completion.

B. Maintain and establish lawns by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and other operations. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth lawn.

1. Replant bare areas with same materials as for lawns.

2. Replace disturbed mulch.

C. Watering: Provide and maintain temporary hoses, and lawn-watering equipment to convey water from a water source to keep lawns uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.

1. Provide a source of water for irrigation. Utilize temporary irrigation meters, a well or water trucks as necessary for the water source.
2. Water seeded areas as necessary to promote vigorous growth of grass but at the minimum rate of 1 inch per week.
3. Water sodded areas per the requirements of the grower. Maintain moist soil to a depth of at least four inches.

D. Mow lawns as soon as there is enough top growth to cut with mower set at indicated height. Repeat mowing as required to maintain indicated height without cutting more than 40 percent of the grass height (minimum of 3 mowings). Remove no more than 40 percent of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain following grass height:

1. Mow grass to a finished height of 2 to 3 inches high.

E. Apply pre-emergent herbicide to lawns areas. Apply 60 – 90 days after planting.

3.6 SATISFACTORY LAWN

A. Seeded lawns shall be considered satisfactory/acceptable provided requirements, including maintenance, have been met and a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass is established, free of weeds, bare spots exceeding 5 by 5 inches (125 by 125 mm), and surface irregularities.

B. Sodded lawns shall be considered satisfactory/acceptable provided requirements, including maintenance, have been met and a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable lawn is established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas exceeding 5 by 5 inches (125 by 125 mm), and surface irregularities.

C. Replant lawns that do not meet requirements and continue maintenance until lawns are satisfactory/acceptable.

D. Substantial Completion of the building and the remainder of the project may be achieved (pending prior Architect and Owner approval) before achieving a satisfactory/acceptable lawn. Continue to replant and maintain unsatisfactory/unacceptable lawn areas until acceptance is obtained. Warranties for lawns shall begin at the time of acceptance of the lawn.

3.7 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by lawn work from sidewalks and paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto surface of roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain barricades throughout maintenance period until lawn is established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 93 00
EXTERIOR PLANTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Trees
2. Shrubs
3. Groundcovers
4. Other Plant Materials
5. Stakes & Guys

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Installers Qualifications: Provide a list, with references, of the past three projects of similar scope.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Plant Material Certifications:

1. Certificates of inspection as required by governmental authorities.
2. Label data substantiating that plant materials comply with specified requirements.

D. Planting Schedule:

1. Typewritten planting schedule.
2. Once accepted, revise dates only as approved in writing and submitted to Architect.

E. Maintenance Schedules: Typewritten instructions recommending procedures for maintenance of landscape work for one full year. Submit prior to completion of project.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer, who has successfully completed planting projects similar in size and complexity to this project. The installer's primary business (defined as a minimum of 60% of total billings) shall be exterior plant installation.

B. Installer's Field Supervision: Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on the project site when exterior planting is in progress.

C. Exterior Plant Materials:

1. Provide plant materials of quantity, size, genus, species, and variety indicated on the Drawings.

2. All plant materials and work shall comply with recommendations and requirements of ANSI Z60.1 “American Standard for Nursery Stock.”

3. Do not make substitutions. If specified landscape material is not obtainable, submit proof of non-availability to Architect, together with proposal for use of equivalent material.

4. The Architect may inspect plant materials either at place of growth or on site before planting, for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, size, and quality. Architect retains right to further inspect trees for size and condition of balls and root systems, insects, injuries and latent defects, and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees immediately from project site.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials:

1. Deliver packaged materials in containers showing weight, analysis, and name of manufacturer or grower.

2. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery, and while stored at site.

B. Exterior Plant Materials

1. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of exterior plants during delivery. Do not drop exterior plants during delivery.

2. Deliver exterior plant materials after preparations for planting have been completed and plant immediately. If planting is delayed more than 6 hours after delivery, set plant materials in shade, protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist and free from frost.

3. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers until planting time.

4. Balled and burlapped material shall be freshly dug.

5. Handle planting stock by root ball.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Examine the subgrade, verify the elevations, and observe the conditions under which work is to be performed. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

B. Determine location of underground utilities and perform work in a manner which will avoid possible damage. Hand excavate as required.

C. When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or obstructions, notify Architect before planting.

D. Provide all necessary safeguards for the protection of all planted areas until provisional inspection/acceptance is accomplished.

E. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods.

1. Spring Planting: Unfrozen soil conditions March 1-June 1st.

2. Fall Planting: September 1-November 1st or until frozen soil conditions prevent work.

3. Summer Planting: June 1 – September 1 with approved irrigation system.

F. Coordination with Lawns: Install plant materials after finish grades are established and before planting lawns, unless otherwise acceptable to the Architect.

1. When planting exterior plants after lawns, protect lawn areas and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Warranty exterior plant materials for a period of one year after date of Final Completion against defects including death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from neglect by Owner, abuse or damage by others, or unusual phenomena or incidents which are beyond Contractor's control.

1. The Contractor shall provide written notice to the Architect of any practice which will affect the warranty if not remedied promptly. The Architect will render an opinion of the conflict if necessary.

2. Make replacements of all dead plants or plants in impaired condition (more than 25% dead or dying) condition in early spring/fall following installation. Replacements of dead or rejected plants should again be made prior to the expiration of the warranty period.

1.8 MAINTENANCE

A. The Owner is responsible for maintaining all exterior plant material throughout the warranty period according to the submitted Maintenance Schedule.

B. Remove all stakes and guy wires at the end of the 12 month guarantee period.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTERIOR PLANT MATERIALS

A. General: Provide nursery-grown plant materials complying with ANSI Z60.1, with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped,

fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

B. Label at least one tree and one shrub of each variety and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name.

2.2 PLANTS

A. General: Provide healthy, disease-free plants of species and variety indicated. Provide only plants that are acclimated to outdoor conditions before delivery. Provide healthy, field-grown plants from a commercial nursery of species and variety shown or listed. Provide plants with heavy, well-branched tops and a vigorous well-developed root system.

2.3 FERTILIZER

A. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium. Revise fertilizer mix to remedy deficiencies found in soil.

1. Composition: 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.45 kg/92.9 sq. m. of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.
2. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.

B. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium. Revise fertilizer mix to remedy deficiencies found in soil.

1. Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.
2. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.

2.4 MULCHES

1. Organic Mulch: Six (6) month old well rotted double shredded native hardwood bark mulch not larger than 4” in length and 1/2” in width, free of woodchips and sawdust.
2. Pine Straw: Fresh, dry and free from debris, pine cones, or soil. Slash Pine is preferred. Coverage for 3" is one bale per 50sq ft.

2.5 WATER

1. Free of substances harmful to plant growth.

2.6 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 4 percent organic material content. Topsoil shall be fertile, friable, natural topsoil of loamy character, without admixture of subsoil material, obtained from a well-drained arable site, reasonably free from clay, lumps, coarse sands, stones, plants, roots, sticks and other foreign materials.

B. Topsoil Source:

1. Reuse surface soil stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of stockpiled surface soil to produce topsoil. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

a) Supplement with imported or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources when quantities are insufficient. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches (100 mm) deep; do not obtain from agricultural land**,** bogs or marshes.

2. Import topsoil or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches (100 mm) deep; do not obtain from agricultural land**,** bogs or marshes.

3. Amend existing in-place surface soil to produce topsoil. Verify suitability of surface soil to produce topsoil. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

a) Surface soil may be supplemented with imported or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches (100 mm) deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs or marshes.

2.7 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: Class T, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum 75 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.

2. Class: Class O, with a minimum 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.

3. Provide lime in form of dolomitic limestone.

B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 6 (3.35-mm) sieve and a maximum 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve.

C. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.

D. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.

E. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.

F. Agricultural Gypsum: Finely ground, containing a minimum of 90 percent calcium sulfate.

G. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials.

H. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, diatomaceous earth, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.

I. Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

2.8 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; bio-solids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.

B. Sphagnum peat moss: Sphagnum peat moss shall be partially decomposed, finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.

C. Peat: Finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, containing partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.

D. Wood Derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture, free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.

1. In lieu of decomposed wood derivatives, mix partially decomposed wood derivatives with at least 0.15 lb (2.4 kg) of ammonium nitrate or 0.25 lb (4 kg) of ammonium sulfate per cubic foot (cubic meter) of loose sawdust or ground bark.

E. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, poultry, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive exterior plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Tree save areas as indicated shall be tagged and approved by the Architect prior to any clearing and/or thinning.

B. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, and lawns and existing exterior plants from damage caused by planting operations.

C. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

D. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple exterior plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of layout before planting. Make minor adjustments as required.

E. Lay out exterior plants at locations indicated. Stake locations of individual trees and shrubs and outline areas for multiple plantings.

F. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.

1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.

3.3 PLANTING BED ESTABLISHMENT

A. Loosen subgrade of planting beds to a minimum depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Remove stones larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off of Owner's property.

1. Apply fertilizer directly to subgrade before loosening.

2. Spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil mix.

a) Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.

b) Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

B. Finish Grading: Grade planting beds to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

C. Restore planting beds if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading and before planting.

3.4 TREE AND SHRUB PLANTING

A. Set all plant materials plumb and in center of pit or trench as per detail.

1. Remove burlap and wire baskets from tops of root balls and partially from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.

2. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.
3. Backfill with an amended soil blend consisting of five (5) parts native soil, one (1) part organic amendment and one (1) lb. fertilizer.
4. Place planting soil mix around root ball in layers, tamping to settle mix and eliminate voids and air pockets. When pit is approximately one-half backfilled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of planting soil mix.
5. Spread roots without tangling or turning toward surface, and carefully work backfill around roots by hand. Puddle with water until backfill layers are completely saturated. Plumb before backfilling and maintain plumb while working backfill around roots and placing layers above roots. Tamp final layer of backfill. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly, do not break.
6. Form a ring of soil around the edge of each planting pit to retain water.

B. Organic Mulching: Apply 3-inch (75-mm.) average thickness of organic mulch extending 12 inches (300 mm) beyond edge of planting pit or trench. Do not place mulch within 3 inches (75 mm) of trunks or stems.

3.5 TREE AND SHRUB PRUNING

A. Prune, thin, and shape trees and shrubs as indicated.

3.6 GROUND COVER AND PLANT PLANTING

A. Set out and space ground cover and plants as indicated in details.

B. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.

3.7 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During exterior planting, keep adjacent pavings and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.

B. Protect exterior plants from damage due to landscape operations, operations by other contractors and trades, and others. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged exterior planting.

3.8 DISPOSAL

A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 10 00
EXTERIOR WATER SYSTEM

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

B. Halifax County Department of Public Utilities (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

C. Reference Specifications are referred to by abbreviation as follows:

1.	American National Standards Institute	ANSI
2.	National Sanitation Foundation	NSF
3.	American Society for Testing and Materials	ASTM
4.	American Water Works Association	AWWA
5.	National Bureau of Standards	NBS
6.	North Carolina Department of Transportation	NCDOT
7.	North Carolina Department of Environmental Health	NCDEH

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section includes water service piping, fire protection service mains and appurtenances from the source of water to a point 5 feet outside the building.

B. Water Meter(s) will be furnished by the **Local Utility Provider**. Installation of water meter shall be part of the Work.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and/or product data for the following:

1. Pipe
2. Fittings
3. Valves
4. Valve Boxes
5. Vault and Meter Box Enclosures and Accessories (including frames and covers, ladders, drains, sump pumps and wiring diagrams).
6. Fire Hydrants
7. Fire Department Connections
8. Backflow Preventers and Assemblies
9. Yard Hydrants

10. Thrust Restraint
11. Steel Encasement Pipe
12. Casing Spacers and End-seals
13. Detectable Marking Tape
14. Tracing Wire
15. Test Stations
16. Tapping Sleeve and Valves
17. Corporation Stop
18. Bedding Stone (NCDOT approved job-mix formula)
19. Water Service Assemblies for Water Meters

B. Certification provided by the contractor that all water systems and appurtenances have been tested and meet the provisions of the contract documents.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Environmental Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of local environmental agency regulations pertaining to water systems, and to the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control, Planning and Design Manual for erosion control during installation.

B. Utility Compliance: Comply with the requirements of Halifax County Department of Public Utilities' Standards (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

C. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Prepare materials for shipping and transport as follows:

1. Ensure materials are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect materials against damage to threaded ends, flange faces, pipe belts and spigots, and coatings.
3. Set materials in best position for handling to prevent rattling.

B. Storage: Use the following precautions for materials during storage:

1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection, and reinstall for storage.
2. Protect materials from weather, moisture and dirt. If outdoor storage is necessary, elevate and support materials off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures.

3. Store pipe in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not store plastic structures, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight. Support materials to prevent sagging and bending.

C. Handling: Handle materials on-site to prevent damage.

1. Handle materials to prevent interior and exterior coating and pipe-end damage, and to prevent the entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Handle pre-cast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
3. If any portion of piping and fittings is damaged, repairs should be made in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations prior to installation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS.

A. Site Information: Perform site survey to verify existing utility locations as needed. Verify that water distribution system piping may be installed in compliance with the design and referenced standards.

B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.

C. Existing Utilities: The location of existing utilities, including underground utilities, is indicated on the drawings insofar as their existence and location were known at the time of preparation of the drawings. However, nothing in these Contract Documents shall be construed as a guarantee that such utilities are in the location indicated or that they actually exist, or that other utilities are not within the area of operations. The Contractor shall make all necessary investigations to determine the existence and locations of such utilities far enough in advance of pipe laying to allow for adjustments due to conflicts in the horizontal and vertical positions of the pipeline.

1. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without receiving Architect's written permission.
2. Notify Architect not less than 48 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
3. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by others except when permitted by the utility owner and after arranging to provide acceptable temporary utility services.
4. Existing utilities across or along the line of work are indicated only in an approximate location. Locate all underground lines and structures. Call "NC one call" at 1-800-632-4949 prior to construction. If utilities are marked that are not shown on the plans, locate utility vertically and horizontally and provide information to architect. The contractor shall pay for any damage to and for maintenance and protection of existing utilities and structures.

D. Connections to Existing System:

1. Before the start of the construction, the Contractor shall dig test pits on all crossings of and connections to the existing system, as applicable, to determine the existing system location, size, and piping material. If the location, size, and piping material differs from that shown on the Drawings, notify Engineer immediately.
2. The Contractor shall make connections to the existing system under a pressure or non-pressure condition, as indicated, complying with the system owner's requirements for the time of day such work can be done. The Contractor shall pay all costs associated with the connections unless otherwise indicated. If the system owner performs the work, the Contractor shall arrange for the work to be done.
3. Valves are to be operated only by the Owner.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate with interior building water piping and interior building fire protection piping.

B. Coordinate with other utility work.

C. Utility interruptions shall be coordinated with local utility provider. Written notice 48 hours in advance of utility interruption shall be provided to all affected customers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Provide pipe materials and fittings compatible with each other. All materials shall comply with the requirements of the Halifax County Department of Public Utilities' Standards (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

2.2 PIPE

A. Polyvinylchloride (PVC)

1. Schedule 40 Pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 1785, and is permissible for water service piping up to and include 3 inches in diameter. Use PVC solvent cement conforming to ASTM D 2564, and tested and certified for contact with potable water in accordance with ANSI/NSF Standard No. 61.

2. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) for diameters of 4 inches and greater shall meet the requirements of AWWA C900, Table 2 (Cast Iron OD) Class 150 except that all connections shall be made using elastomeric gasket joints. Cell classification for the pipe shall be 12454-B. The water pipe shall also have certifications from FM (Factory Mutual), UL (Underwriters Laboratory), and NSF (National Sanitation Foundation).

B. Ductile Iron (DI)

1. Ductile iron pipe shall meet the requirements of AWWA C151 and AWWA C150. 3" through 12" pipe shall be, at a minimum, pressure class 350, and 14" through 20" pipe shall be, at a minimum, pressure class 250. 24-inch diameter pipe shall be a minimum pressure class 200. Pipe shall have cement-mortar lining and a bituminous seal coat conforming to the requirement of AWWA Standard C104.

2. Buried pipe shall have either mechanical joint or push-on joint conforming to the requirements of AWWA C111. Bolts for mechanical joints shall be high strength cast iron having an ultimate tensile strength of 75,000 psi and a minimum yield point of 45,000 psi.

3. Flanged joints for ductile iron pipe shall meet requirements of ANSI B 16.1.

C. Copper Tubing

1. Copper tubing shall meet requirements of ASTM B88 for Type "L" copper, hard drawn, for above ground and Type "K' hard drawn for below ground.

2.3 FITTINGS

A. Polyvinylchloride (PVC)

1. General

a) Fittings for water pipe up to and include 2 ½ inches in diameter shall be Schedule 40 PVC.

b) All PVC Schedule 40 fittings shall be produced from PVC Type I cell classification 12454, conforming to ASTM D 1784. All injection molded PVC Schedule 40 fittings shall be certified for potable water service by NSF International and manufactured in strict compliance to ASTM D 2466.

c) Use PVC solvent cement conforming to ASTM D 2564, and tested and certified for contact with potable water in accordance with ANSI/NSF Standard No. 61.

B. Ductile Iron (D1)

1. General

a) Fittings for water pipe 3 inches in diameter and greater shall be ductile iron. Contractor shall use transition gaskets as necessary. Ductile iron fittings shall be in accordance with AWWA C110 or C153, latest edition. Pressure ratings shall be a minimum of 350 psi. All fittings shall be mechanical joint unless otherwise shown on the construction plans or approved by the Engineer.

b) All fittings shall have a cement mortar lining with asphaltic seal coat on the interior, and shall meet the requirements of the AWWA C104. Cement mortar lining shall be standard thickness.

c) Exterior, asphaltic coating for ductile iron fittings shall meet requirements of AWWA C151 as applicable.

2. Mechanical Joints

a) Mechanical joints and jointing materials shall meet requirements of AWWA C111.

b) MEGALUGS, or approved equivalent, shall meet requirements of ASNI/AWWA C151/A21.51.

3. Flanged Joints

a) Flanged joints shall meet requirements of ANSI B16.1 and AWWA C115.

b) Flange joint gasket shall be full-face or ring type made of rubber and meeting the requirements of ANSI B16.21 and AWWA C115.

C. Copper

1. Fitting for copper piping shall meet requirements of ASNI B16.22 for wrought copper, sweat joint. Soldered joints shall be made using ASTM B32 Alloy Grade Sn96 or Sb5 solder having a maximum lead content of 0.2%.

2.4 VALVES

A. Gate Valves

1. Sizes Smaller than 2 inches

a) Gate valves smaller than 2 inches shall be bronze, solid wedge, rising stem, with at least 200 psi operating pressure.

2. Sizes 2 inches Through 12 inches

   a) All gate valves shall be resilient seat gate valves. Resilient seat gate valves 2 inches through 12 inches in size shall comply with AWWA C-509 or AWWA C515, latest revision, and be UL listed, FM Approved, as well as certified by NSF to Standard 61.

   b) All buried valves shall be manually operated non-rising stem, equipped with a 2-inch square AWWA operating nut, for installation in a vertical position, unless otherwise specified. All valves for underground vaults and above-ground service shall be manually operated outside stem and yoke (OS&Y).

   c) Valve ends shall be mechanical joint for buried underground service and flanged for underground vaults and above-ground service.

   d) The interior and exterior of the body and bonnet shall be coated with fusion bonded epoxy per ANSI/AWWA C550 Standard for Protective Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants.

   e) All internal parts shall be accessible without removing the body form the line.

   f) All valves shall open left (counter-clockwise).

   g) Valves shall be rated for 250 psi operating pressure and 500 psi test pressure.

   h) Valve stem extensions shall be required where the valve-operating nut is installed at a depth greater then four feet (4').

B. Post Indicator Valves

1. Indicator post valves are of the same construction as other UL/FM gate valves except they are fitted with a 12-inch diameter bonnet flange onto which the Indicator Post bolts.

2. Indicator Posts are UL 789, FMG-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

2.5 VALVE BOXES

A. Valve boxes shall comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Materials shall include top section, adjustable extension (of length required for depth of burial of valve), cover (with lettering "WATER" cast or embossed on the cover), bottom section with base of size to fit over valve, and approximately 5-inch diameter barrel. All box assemblies shall have screw adjustment

B. Valve boxes shall be firmly supported, centered and plumb over the operating unit of the valve. Box cover shall be set flush with the surface of finished pavement or at such other level as may be directed by the Architect. Valve rod extension with guide shall be required to maintain a distance of 2' – 4' from operating nut to top of box. The extension shall be provided with a 2-inch square operating not on top and a coupling to connect the extension to the operating nut on the valve. All valves shall be properly restrained.

C. Extension pieces, if required, shall be cast iron or ductile iron. PVC pipe is not allowed for extensions.

2.6 VAULT AND METER BOX ENCLOSURES AND ACCESSORIES

A. This section includes enclosures for water meters 2 inches and smaller.

1. Meter box lids for all meter sizes shall be lightweight polymer concrete.
2. Precast Concrete Box (used with 1-1/2" or 2" water meters and assemblies):
   a) Concrete box shall be manufactured by Stamie E. Lyttle Co., Inc. or approved equivalent.

2.7 FIRE HYDRANTS

A. Fire hydrants shall be UL and FM approved, and shall also comply with the AWWA Fire Hydrant Specification C-502 (latest revision) and the following:

1. Type: Compression - Dry Standpipe: Valve shall open against and close with the pressure. The design shall be such that all internal operating parts can be removed through the standpipe and main valve rod extended without excavating.
2. Size: Internal valve diameter shall be a minimum 4-1/2".
3. Inlet Size and Type: 6" mechanical joint end with accessories.
4. Hose Nozzles: Each hydrant shall be equipped with two 2-1/2" I.D. hose nozzles matching local fire department hose threads (National Standard Threads) one quarter turn bayonet lock or threaded in with O-ring seal and suitable locking arrangement.
5. Steamer Nozzle: Each hydrant shall be equipped with one 4-1/2" Steamer Nozzle matching local fire department hose threads (National Standard Threads) one quarter turn bayonet lock, or threaded in with O-ring seal and suitable locking arrangement.
6. Direction of Open: Left, counterclockwise.
7. Size and Shape of Operating Nut and Cap Nuts: Nut and Cap Nuts shall be 1-1/2" point to flat pentagon. Each hydrant shall be equipped with a weather cap.
8. Seal Plate: The hydrant shall be constructed with a moisture-proof lubricant chamber that encloses the operating threads, thereby automatically lubricating the threads each time the hydrant is operated. The lubricant chamber shall be enclosed with at least three O-rings. The two lower O-rings will serve as pressure seals. The third O-ring will serve as a combined dirt and moisture seal to prevent foreign matter from entering the lubricant chamber. The hydrant shall be equipped with either an anti-friction washer or bronze bushing to reduce operating torque. The bonnet will be secured to the hydrant using bolts and nuts.
9. Standpipe - Groundline Safety Construction: The standpipe sections shall be connected at the groundline by a two part, bolted safety flange or breakable lugs. The main valve rod sections shall be connected at the groundline by a frangible coupling. The standpipe and groundline safety construction shall be such that the hydrant nozzles can be rotated to any desired position without disassembling and removing the top operating components and the top section of the standpipe. The minimum inside diameter of the standpipe shall be 6".
10. Main Valve, Rod Assembly: The main valve rod assembly shall be constructed to allow removal of all operating parts through the standpipe regardless of depth of bury, using a removal wrench which does not extend below the groundline of the hydrant. The main valve seat ring shall be bronze, and its assembly into the hydrant shall involve bronze to bronze thread engagement, and the valve assembly pressure seals shall be obtained without the employment of torque compressed gaskets. The design of the main valve rod shall be such that operating threads at the top of the rod and the valve assembly threads at the bottom of the rod are isolated from contact with water in the standpipe or in the hydrant inlet shoe.

11. Drain Valve: The operation of the drain mechanism shall be correlated with the operation of the main valve and shall involve a momentary flushing of the drain ports each time the hydrant is opened. The drain ports shall be fully closed when the hydrant valve is more than 2-1/2 turns open and the drainage channel in the bronze valve seat ring shall connect to two or more outlet drain ports. No springs may be employed in the hydrant valve or drain valve mechanism.
12. Depth of Bury: Normally hydrants shall be suitable for installation in trenches 4-1/2' deep. Fire hydrants shall be adjusted to accommodate depths of bury greater than 4 ½' deep and to meet actual field conditions. Adjustments shall be made per manufacturer's recommendations.
13. Painting Instruction: Two prime coats and one aluminum finish coat shall be used, unless otherwise specified. Exposed area of fire hydrant shall receive one field coat of aluminum after installation. The wetted surface of the hydrant shoe shall be epoxy coated to prevent corrosion of the waterway.
14. Pressure Rating: Test pressure 400 psi, working pressure 200 psi.

B. Approved Manufacturers include:
   1. Mueller Centurion A-421
   2. Kennedy 4-1/4" Figure K-81A
   3. U.S. Pipe - Metropolitan 250
   4. American Flow Control - Mark 73

2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS AND ASSEMBLIES

A. Reduced Pressure Zone (RPZ)
   1. Diameters ¾" through 2"
      a) Mainline valve body and caps including relief valve body and cover shall be bronze. Check valve moving member shall be center stem guided. All hydraulic sensing passages shall be internally located within the mainline and relief valve bodies and relief valve cover. Diaphragm to seat area ratio shall be 10:1 minimum. Relief valve shall have removable seat ring. Check valve and relief valve components shall be constructed so they may be serviced without removing the valve body from the line. All seat discs shall be reversible. Shut-off valves and test cocks shall be full ported ball valves.
      b) The assembly shall be rated to 175 psi water working pressure and water temperature range from 32°F to 140°F.
      c) The assembly shall meet the requirements of ASSE Standard 1010; AWWA Standard Code C506-78; and approved by the Foundation for Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Hydraulic Research at eh University of Southern California.
   2. Diameters 2 ½" through 10"
      a) Main valve body shall be Ductile iron ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12.
      b) Coating shall be Fusion epoxy coated internal and external AWWA C550-90.
      c) Shut-off valves shall be NRS and OS & Y resilient wedge AWWA C509 gate valves.

d) Trim shall be Bronze ASTM B584 Alloy C83600.

e) Elastomer discs shall be EPDM.

f) Sprint shall be stainless steel.

g) The valve body shall be constructed to allow for the removal and servicing of all parts without removing the valve body from the waterline.

h) The assembly shall be rated to 175 psi water working pressure and water temperature range from 32°F to 140°F.

i) The assembly shall meet the requirements of ASSE Standard 1010; AWWA Standard Code C506-78; and approved by the Foundation for Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research at the University of Southern California.

j) The assembly shall be tested in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation or the local cross-connection control program, whichever is more stringent.

2.9 THRUST RESTRAINT

A. Proved thrust restrain consisting of concrete blocking, bell restraint harness, retainer gland type or restrained joint type pipe at all changes in direction of pressure pipelines and as shown on construction drawings.

B. Concrete thrust blocking units shall be as shown on the construction drawings or as directed by the inspector based upon field conditions. Concrete thrust blocking shall bear against undisturbed earth, and concrete shall have 3,000 psi strength at 28 days, and shall meet requirements of ASTM C94.

C. Where Lug Type retainer glands are used, installation must conform to the recommendations of the manufacturer before the pipe is backfilled and tested.

2.10 STEEL ENCASEMENT PIPE

A. Steel pipe shall be welded or seamless, smooth wall consisting of Grade "B" steel as specified in ASTM A-139. Spiral welded steel pipe is not permissible.

B. Minimum yield strength shall be 35000 psi, and pipe thickness shall be a specified on the construction plans.

C. All pipe shall be furnished with beveled ends prepared for field welding of circumferential joints. All burrs at pipe ends shall be removed.

D. Encasement pipe must be approved by the appropriate controlling agency (NCDOT, etc.) and the Architect prior to ordering.

2.11 CASING SPACERS AND END-SEALS

A. Casing Spacers:

1. Casing Spacers shall be one of the following:

a) Cascade

b) Advance Products & Systems, Inc. Model SI

c) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc. Model No. C8G-2, Model No. C12G-2

2. Casing spacers shall be centered and restrained unless otherwise shown on the drawings.

B. End-Seals:

1. End-Seals shall be one of the following:

a) Advance Products & Systems, Inc. Model AC

b) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc. Model C

2.12 DETECTABLE MARKING TAPE

A. Detectable marking tape shall be installed above all waterline pipe (including all service laterals).

B. Plastic marking tape shall consist of one layer of aluminum foil laminated between two layers of inert plastic film. Tape shall be resistant to alkalis, acids and other destructive agents commonly found in the soil. The laminate shall be strong enough that the layers cannot be separated by hand.

C. Tape shall be a minimum of 4-1/2 mils thick with a minimum tensile strength of 60 lbs. in the machine direction and 58 lbs. in the transverse direction per 3" wide strip. Tape color shall be APWA Color Coded for marking the particular utility line and shall be imprinted with a continuous warning message to indicate the type of utility being marked, the message normally being repeated every 16” to 36". Tape shall be inductively locatable and conductively traceable using a standard pipe and cable-locating device. Tape shall be 3" wide Terra Tape "Sentry Line Detectable 620," or approved equivalent.

2.13 TRACING WIRE

A. Tracing Wire shall be installed on all non-metallic waterline (including all service laterals).

B. Wire shall be No. 12, stranded, type THHN, thermoplastic insulated and nylon jacketed. Wire shall be color coded blue for water.

C. Acceptable Wire Connectors:

1. Set screw pressure type for use with No. 12 stranded wire size. Holub Industries MA-2, Ideal Industries Model 30-222, or approved equal.

2. C-Tap for two way splicing of tracer wire, for use with No. 12 stranded wire size. T&B #54705 or approved equal.

3. Split bolts, three wire type for splicing of tracer wire, for use with No. 12 stranded wire size ILSCO Catalog #SEL-2S or approved equal.

D. Electric Tape – Vinyl electric tape.

E. Electrical Coating - Scotchkote 3M electrical coating Part No. 054007 or approved equal. .

F. Wire nut – non-conductive for No. 12 stranded wire size.

2.14 TAPPING SLEEVE AND VALVES

A. Tapping Sleeves

1. Fabricated Steel
   a) The body of the tapping sleeve shall be of 3/8" carbon steel, ASTM grade A285.
   b) Flange to be AWWA C207 Class D ANSI, 150 lb. drilling.
   c) The carbon steel body shall have a 12 mil thick coating of fusion-bonded epoxy. Bolts shall be 18-8, Type 304 stainless steel.
   d) Gaskets shall be Grade 60 compounded for use with water, alkalies, mild acids and most hydro-carbon fluids, up to 212°F.

1. Stainless Steel
   a) The body of the tapping sleeve shall be of 18-8 type 304 stainless steel.
   b) Branch/flange to the ductile iron, carbon steel or 304 stainless steel, 150 lb. drilling.
   c) MJ Gland shall be permanently affixed to the outlet branch and be 304 stainless steel.
   d) Gaskets shall be Grade 60 compounded for use with water, alkalies, mild acids and most hydro-carbon fluids, up to 212° F.
   e) Clamping hardware (nuts, bolts and washers) shall be 18-8 type 304 stainless steel, with plastic anti-gall washers. Drop-in bolts or welded-on studs are acceptable.

2. Fabricated Steel with Mechanical Joint Ends
   a) Sleeve body, valve flange, gaskets, hardware and coating to be the same as the fabricated steel tapping sleeve.
   b) The mechanical joint glands to be ASTMA-36 iron or ductile iron.
   c) The gland retaining hardware (nuts, bolts and washers) to be 18-8 type 304 stainless steel.

3. Case Iron with Mechanical Joint Ends
   a) The body and glands of the tapping sleeve shall be of ASTM-126, Class B cast or ductile iron. Sleeve shall be furnished complete with all mechanical joint accessories (bolts, nuts, gaskets and glands), and shall have a bituminous seal coating.
   b) Valve flange, body gaskets and clamping hardware (bolts, nuts and washers) shall be as specified for the fabricated steel tapping sleeve.

4. Tapping Sleeve Applications
   a) The stainless steel, fabricated steel (with mechanical joint ends), or cast/ductile iron (with mechanical joint ends) tapping sleeves may be used for any approved tap on C-900 PVC or ductile iron water main.
   b) The stainless steel, fabricated steel (with mechanical joint ends), or cast/ductile iron (with mechanical joint ends) tapping sleeves may be used for all approved taps on asbestos-cement pipe (except 16" size) and for size-one size or one size down taps on all other pipe material.
   c) Due to the non-availability of the mechanical joint tapping sleeve for 16" asbestos-cement pipe, the stainless steel sleeve must be used for taps on this pipe.
   d) The fabricated steel tapping sleeve may be used for approved two (or more) size down taps on C-900 PVC, cast iron or ductile iron water main.
   e) Application Chart

Taps	Size on Size	Cast Iron, Asbestos Cement, Transite	PVC	Ductile Iron
Type of Sleeve	Stainless Steel	***Stainless Steel	Stainless Steel	Stainless Steel
	Mechanical Joint	* Mechanical Joint	Mechanical Joint	Mechanical Joint
			**Fabricated Steel	**Fabricated Steel

* Except on 16" A/C pipe

** Approved for use on 2 or more downsize taps only.

***Mueller H300 can not be used on A/C and C.I. pipe.

5. Certification, Testing and Installation

a) The following testing and conditions relating to tapping sleeves apply to all manufacturers.

i. The tapping sleeve shall be tested in place to a minimum of 200 psi.

ii. If the sleeve fails to the 200 psi pressure test, the original failed sleeve shall be replaced with an entirely new sleeve.

iii. The concrete thrust block shall be poured to also support the tapping sleeve from beneath. The tapping sleeve, valve and tapping machine assembly is to be adequately supported during the tapping operation to prevent movement or rotation of the tapping sleeve.

iv. Installation instruction must be followed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Resilient Seated Tapping Valves

1. Tapping valves for diameters 2" through 12" shall meet the specifications as referenced in Section 2.4.A.2 except, the body seat rings shall have a clear inside opening sufficient to pass a cutter of full diameter and equal to the nominal size of the valve. The outlet end shall be suitable for use with the type of pipe specified.

2. Tapping valves will be suitable for use with all approved manufactured tapping sleeves without modification.

C. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies shall comply with MSS SP-60. Include sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.

2.15 CORPORATION STOP

A. The corporation stop will have tapered inlet threads in accordance with AWWA C800, latest edition. The corporation stop shall be made of a bronze alloy. It shall be similar to the Mueller compression connection type of or the Ford pack joint type.

2.16 WATER SERVICE ASSEMBLIES FOR WATER METERS

A. Water Meters will be furnished and installed by the local utility department.

B. Water Service Setter for 1 ½" and 2" Water Meters

1. All materials for the installation of water services shall be as follows or approved equal:

a) General: All 1 ½" and 2" meter setters shall be constructed of seamless threaded red brass pipe, standard Type K hard copper tube (per ASTM B-88-62,) high quality brass (per AWWA C-800,) and leadless solder, and provide horizontal female pipe threads on both front and rear connections. Setters must include a valved bypass for meter maintenance, except for irrigation and residential meters.

b) Bypass: Meter setters shall have an appropriately sized bypass line with an inverted key or ball-type stop threaded directly into the inlet bypass tee fitting. This bypass valve shall have a solid tee head and be either lock wing type or provide a bracket or other device to lock this valve in the "off" position upon installation. If copper tube is used for the bypass line, the compression connection for the copper side of the bypass valve must be as produced by the following manufacturers:

Mueller Co., "110 compression connection for copper pipe; or

Ford Meter ox co, "Pack Joint" connection for copper pipe; or

A.Y. McDonald, "T" compression connection for copper pipe.

Otherwise, a tee head inverted plug or ball type bypass valve is required with a threaded connection. Both of the bypass tee fittings, (inlet and outlet) shall have brace pipe eyelets cast within them to stabilize setter upon installation.

c) Angle Valves: Flanged, inverted key or ball-type "tee head" angle valves are required on both meter connections, and will include lock wings and meter support bracket to aid in meter installation. Pack joint or compression connections are NOT allowed on the vertical riser pipe; these connections must be threaded or soldered copper. Valves shall be double drilled, (2" size only,) to accommodate both 1 1/2" and 2" meters. Angle or ball valves shall provide a stop or check to limit movement of tee head 90° Maximum, (from fully open to completely off). Arrows cast within the inlet valve shall indicate direction of flow while in service.

d) Dimensions: Meter setters shall accommodate the following meter dimensions:

1 ½ " flanged meter laying length: 13", plus gaskets

2" flanged meter laying length: 17", plus gaskets

The rise or height of meter setter, measured vertically from center line of inlet pipe thread to center line of meter flange bolt shall be:

1 ½" meter setter, maximum height of 8 ½"

2" meter setter, maximum height of 9 ½"

The copper used on the bypass and vertical riser pipe, (if so equipped) shall be Type K and comply with ASTM B-88-62, which states outside diameters as shown here:

¾" nominal pipe size, .875" outside diameter, .065" wall

1" nominal pipe size, 1.13" outside diameter, .065" wall

1 ½" nominal size pipe, 1.63" outside diameter, .072" wall

2" nominal size pipe, 2.13" outside diameter, .083" wall

The bypass assembly shall be sized as follows:

1 ½" meter setter requires minimum 1" bypass pipe & valve

2" meter setter requires minimum 1" bypass pipe & valve

e) Backflow prevention devices at yokes are not to be used.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF NEW WATER SYSTEMS

A. Excavating and Backfilling

1. Contractor shall do all excavating of any and all materials encountered in the course of excavating for all underground utility systems. After the pipe is in place, backfill with suitable earth, free from rocks, organic material, etc.

   a) Provide all necessary shoring required for the protection of excavations, existing utilities and workmen and do all necessary pumping required to keep excavation and pipe free of water from any source at all times.

   b) Provide sufficient barricades, etc., adjacent to excavations to safeguard against injury to workmen and the public. Provide and maintain sufficient warning lanterns at walks, roadways, and parking areas to provide safety at all times.

   c) Where roots of live trees are encountered in excavations, they shall be carefully protected during construction.

   d) Exercise special care in backfilling trenches to guard against disturbing the joint.

   e) Remove and dispose of any material not used for backfill.

2. Removal of subsurface obstructions which are uncovered during excavation for installation of the water systems shall be removed by the Contractor at his expense. This shall include removal of existing concrete or brick of existing building foundations, footings, abandoned utility piping, wires, structures, rock boulders, etc., which may not be visible from surface investigations before construction, but will interfere with new installations. If such obstructions are encountered, they shall be removed two feet from around the area of new facility and backfilled with a suitable material as specified.

B. Pipe Installation

1. Trenching, pipe laying, and backfilling shall be accomplished in a manner to prevent damage and mis-alignment of the pipe. Water mains shall be buried to a depth below the frostline or to a depth sufficient to provide a minimum of 30 inches cover, whichever is greater.

2. Take precautions to ensure that pipe and related items are not damaged in unloading, handling and placing in trench. Examine each piece of material just prior to installation to determine that no damage has occurred. Remove any damaged material from the site and replace with undamaged materials.

3. Keep pipe clean. Exercise care to keep foreign material and dirt from entering pipe during storage, handling and placing in trench. Plug or cap line at the end of each day.

4. Do not lay pipe when weather or trench conditions are unsuitable.

5. Line and grade hubs shall be set by a registered surveyor at intervals to accurately insure proper location of water line and appurtenances. This shall include finished grade centerline stakes for fire hydrants, stakes at all fittings, referencing all property pins, etc. Cut sheets are required where the water line is to be laid to a grade according to the profiles in the plans, or where the future road grade is not yet to within 6" of its final location.

6. Water Pipe Laying

   a) Laying of water pipe shall be accomplished only after the trench has been dewatered and the foundation and/or bedding has been prepared. Mud, silt, gravel, and other foreign material shall be kept out of the pipe and off the jointing surfaces.

   b) All pipe laid shall be retained in position so as to maintain alignment and joint closure until sufficient backfill has been completed to adequately hold the pipe in place. All pipe shall be laid to conform to the prescribed line and grade shown on the plans and shall include digging out for bell ends.

   c) Water pipe runs intended to be laid straight shall be so laid. Deflection from a straight line may be made by deflecting the joints only when permission has been given by the Architect or Inspector. Joint deflection in pipe shall not exceed one-half that recommended by AWWA Standards or the manufacturer, whichever is less. Changes in grade or alignment which cannot be made by deflecting pipe joints shall be made by use of proper bends, offsets or special fittings as required.

   d) The water pipe, unless otherwise approved by the Architect or Inspector, shall be laid upgrade from point of connection of the existing water line or form a designated starting point. Water pipe shall be installed with the bell end forward or upgrade. When pipe laying is not in progress, the forward end of the pipe shall be kept tightly closed with a water tight plug or cap. Plywood or plastic is not acceptable as a plug or cap.

   e) The pipe shall be fitted and matched so that when laid in the work, units will form a smooth, uniform invert.

   f) Prior to joining the pipe, all surfaces of the pipe to be joined and the surfaces of factory made jointing materials shall be clean and dry. Lubricants, primers, adhesives, etc., shall be applied and the pipes joined as recommended by the manufacturer's specifications. Sufficient pressure shall be applied in making the joint to assure that the pipe is "home". The interior of the pipe shall be cleaned all foreign material as the work progresses. At the end of the work day, the last pipe laid shall be blocked to prevent creep, and closed with a water tight plug or cap.

   g) Joining pipe

      i. Ductile iron pipe to be joined as follows:

         1) Mechanical joint pipe

            (a) Thoroughly clean inside of the bell and 8" of the outside of the spigot end of the joining pipe to remove oil, grit, excess coating and other foreign matter from the joint. Paint the bell and spigot with soap solution (half cup granulated soap dissolved in 1 gallon water).

Slip cast-iron gland on spigot end with lip extension of gland toward end of pipe. Paint rubber gasket with or dip into the soap solution and place on the spigot end with thick edge toward the gland. (Note: When installing PVC pipe into M.J. fittings, the beveled end of the pipe must be cut off).

(b) Push the spigot end forward to seat in the bell. Then carefully press the gasket into the bell so that it is located evenly around the joint. The gland is moved into position, bolts inserted and nuts turned finger tight. Tighten all nuts to torque listed below:

Bolt Size (inches)	Torque (ft – lbs)
5/8	40-60
3/4	60-90
1	70-100
1 – 1/4	90-120

(c) Tighten nuts on alternate sides of the gland until pressure on the gland is equally distributed, and torque value is reached.

(d) Permissible deflection in mechanical joint pipe shall not be greater than one-half of that listed in AWWA C600.

2) Push-on joint ductile iron pipe

(a) Thoroughly clean inside of the bell and 8" of the outside of the spigot end of the joining pipe to remove oil, grit, excess coating, and other foreign matter. Flex rubber gasket and insert in the gasket recess of the bell socket. Apply a thin film of gasket lubricant supplied by pipe manufacturer, to the gasket and spigot end of the joining pipe.

(b) Insert spigot end of pipe into socket with care. The joint shall then be completed by forcing the plain end to the bottom of the socket with a forked tool or jack type device. Field cut pipe shall have the end filed to match the manufactured spigot end.

(c) Permissible deflection in push-on joint pipe shall not be greater than one-half of that listed in AWWA C600.

ii. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe shall be joined in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Push-on Joint Pipe

1) Thoroughly clean inside of the bell and 1" beyond the reference mark on the spigot end of the joining pipe. Make certain the bell and rubber gasket have no foreign material that could interfere with the proper assembly of the pipe spigot.

2) Lubricate the gasket and spigot end of the pipe, using lubricant supplied by pipe manufacturer.

3) Insert the spigot end into the bell. Align the pipe sections and push the spigot end in until the reference mark on the spigot end is flush with the end of the bell. Use a bar and block of wood to push pipe home.

4) Field cut pipe shall be square cut and beveled to ensure proper assembly. Use a factory finished beveled end as a guide to produce an equivalent angle and length of taper.

h) Tracing wire shall be accessible for test hook-up at all water meter boxes and test stations. The tracing wire must be continuous and completely insulated from ground. The tracing wire will be attached to the top of the pipe using duct tape at an interval no great than 16 feet. Tracing wire within test stations and meter boxes shall be stripped ¾" from the end and capped with a wire nut to minimize electrical ground contact. Test stations shall be installed within 2 feet of all fire hydrants and at intervals no greater than 1,000 feet. All connections at the main line must be electrically sound and physically secure with screw connections or clamps. All connections must be taped with electrical tape and sealed with an electrical coating sealant. Tracing wire for waterline shall be color coded blue.

i) Place underground warning tape directly above all water mains 18" below finished grade.

C. Relation of Water Mains to Sewers

1. Lateral Separation of Sewers and Water Mains. Water mains shall be laid at least 10 feet laterally from existing or proposed sewers, unless local conditions or barriers prevent a 10-foot lateral separation in which case:

a) The water main is laid in a separate trench, with the elevation of the bottom of the water main at least 18 inches above the top of the sewer; or

b) The water main is laid in the same trench as the sewer with the water main located at one side on a bench of undisturbed earth, and with the elevation of the bottom of the water main at least 18 inches above the top of the sewer.

2. Crossing a Water Main Over a Sewer. Whenever it is necessary for a water main to cross over a sewer, the water main shall be laid at such an elevation that the bottom of the water main is at least 18 inches above the top of the sewer, unless local conditions or barriers prevent an 18 inch vertical separation in which case both the water main and sewer shall be constructed of ferrous materials and with joints that are equivalent to water main standards for a distance of 10 feet on each side of the point of crossing.

3. Crossing a Water Main Under a Sewer. Whenever it is necessary for a water main to cross under a sewer, both the water main and the sewer shall be constructed of ferrous materials and with joints equivalent to water main standards for a distance of 10 feet on each side of the point of crossing. A section of water main pipe shall be centered at the point of crossing.

D. Installation of Valves, Fittings, and Hydrants

1. General: Valves, fittings and hydrants shall be set and joined to the piping system as specified for cleaning, laying and joining pipe.

2. Valves and Valve Boxes: Cast iron valve boxes shall be firmly supported, centered and plumb over the operating unit of valve. Box cover shall be set flush with the surface of finished pavement or at such other level as may be directed by the Architect or Inspector. Valve rod extension with guide shall be required to maintain a maximum distance of 2'-4' from operating nut to top of box. All valves shall be properly restrained.

3. Cross Connections: Drainage branches or blow-offs shall not be connected to any sewer, submerged in any stream or installed in any manner which, in the opinion of the Architect or Inspector, will constitute a contamination or cross-connection hazard.

4. Hydrants

   a) Connection to Main: Each hydrant shall be blocked and/or restrained and connected to the main as shown in the standard details. Each hydrant shall be provided with a minimum 6" diameter branch, controlled by an independent 6" resilient seat gate valve.

   b) Setting of Hydrants: When hydrants are set, a drainage pit two feet in diameter and two feet below the bowl of the hydrant shall be excavated. The pit shall be filled with coarse gravel or #57 clean stone, mixed with coarse sand, to a level of 6" above the weephole. No hydrants drainage pit shall be well braced against unexcavated earth with suitable concrete blocking, and when directed shall be restrained to the pipe with approved harnessing.

   c) All hydrant valves shall be restrained with a hydrant tee.

   d) All hydrants shall be thoroughly cleaned of dirt or foreign matter before setting.

5. Anchorage of Fittings: All fittings (i.e., each bend, tee, plug, valve and cap) shall be prevented from moving by means to adequate thrust reaction blocking and/or mechanical retrains, as shown in the standard details.

E. Installation of Fabricated Steel Tapping Sleeves

1. Clean pipe surface thoroughly, particular in the area where the gasket will seal. The Contractor shall wipe the pipe in the area where the tap is to be make with 1% chlorine solution prior to installing the sleeve.

2. Lubricate pipe and gasket with soap and water or gasket lubricating solution. Do not use grease or pipe lubricant. Under no condition shall antifreeze be used.

3. Mount body halves on pipe and ensure gasket is secure in gasket grove, and the tapping nipple is pointing in it final direction so it will not be moved or rotated on the pipe.

4. Insert bolts and hand tighten nuts, keeping equal gaps between body halves.

5. Prior to tightening nuts, position outlet as required to suite the installation. Ensure that test connection is accessible.

6. Tighten bolts, alternating from one side to the other to equalize the gap between halves. Continue to tighten bolts until sleeve halves conform to the contour of the pipe and all bolts are to a uniform tightness. The required torque for dry threads will be 70-100 ft. lbs. (Lubricated threads 35-50 ft. lbs). On thin wall or badly corroded pipe, care should be taken to prevent crushing or collapsing of the pipe.

7. A pressure test is required prior to tapping to test the sleeve and valve in place.

   Prior to pressure testing, the Inspector shall obtain a reading of line pressure in the system, either from a hydrant or a service. The pressure test should be at 2 ½ times line pressure or 200 psi, whichever is greater. The duration of this pressure test shall be a minimum of ten minutes. If the sleeve fails the pressure test it shall be completely removed and returned and a new sleeve used. The tapping sleeve, valve and tapping machine assembly is to be adequately supported during the tapping operation to prevent movement or rotation of the tapping sleeve.

8. Proceed with tapping operation.

   Complete tapping procedure and perform the necessary checking as required, and furnish the Inspector with the tap coupon.

9. Check the bolts for tightness and re-torque, if required.

F. Installation of Services

1. ¾", 1", 1 ½ " and 2" Services

   a) All taps shall be made with service saddles.

   b) Taps shall be made on a 45° angle.

   c) Corporation stops shall be "cc" thread inlet and copper flare outlet for the copper service.

   d) Tap shall be made with a tapping machine equipped with a bit designed for the type of pipe being tapped.

   e) Distance between taps or from a joint or bell shall be a minimum of 18".

   f) Service pipe shall be type "K" soft copper.

   g) Services shall be installed with 42" minimum cover up to meter yoke where yoke shall be installed so that meter will set 12"-18" below finished grade.

   h) Meter yokes shall be installed with a tail piece of type "K" soft copper 36" long.

   i) Meter yoke and box shall be set as shown on the construction drawings, or as directed by the Architect or Inspector. Meters shall be installed on reasonably level ground or conform to the angle of the slope.

   j) Backfill shall be hand tamped up to service pipe at tap to prevent corporation stop from being broken off during backfilling.

   k) Traffic box to be of cast iron in driveways.

3.2 AS BUILT SURVEY

A. Provide the owner an as built survey of all visible surface structures and appurtenances to include hydrants, valves, vaults, etc. for NCDENR certification. Also provide an as built survey of storm sewer and utilities crossing the waterline to verify depth of clearances to the waterline.

PART 4 – TESTING

4.1 TESTING TECHNIQUES FOR WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

A. Each properly isolated section of the piping system, including all water services, shall be subjected to a pressure test of 150 psi, or 1 ½ times the working pressure whichever is greater, measured at the high point of the system. Maintain this pressure for a minimum of two hours with an allowable leakage as follows:

WATER LINE TEST BASED ON 150 PSI		WATER LINE TEST BASED ON 150 PSI	
SIZE	MAX. ALLOWABLE LEAKAGE	SIZE	MAX. ALLOWABLE LEAKAGE
3/4"	.0138 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.	6”	.1103 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.
1”	.0184 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.	8”	.1471 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.
1 ½”	.0276 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.	12”	.2207 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.
2”	.0368 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.	16”	.2942 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.
3”	.0552 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.	20”	.3678 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.
4”	.0736 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.	24”	.4413 (GAL/2 HRS)/100 L.F.

Prior to applying pressure to the lines, all reaction blocking, and/or mechanical restraints shall have been completed to the satisfaction of the Architect or Inspector. As the pipes are being filled, all air shall be expelled from the pipes by providing manual air relief valves at the high points of the system.

B. Any defects discovered during this test shall be repaired and the test repeated until the results are satisfactory to the Architect or Inspector. Provide all equipment, materials and labor necessary to conduct the test. Provide a suitable test pump and properly calibrated gauge or other means for measuring leakage (such as a clean 50-gallong barrel with top cut out) which is satisfactory to the Architect or Inspector.

C. Water used for flushing, sterilization and testing shall be furnished by the Contractor at his expense. Filling of water line may be performed after permission has been obtained from authority responsible for coordinating this activity. Contractor is not permitted to operate valves on existing lines.

4.2 DISINFECTION

A. Prior to being placed in service, the pipe line and appurtenances shall be disinfected in general accordance with ANSI/AWWA C651, latest edition, “AWWA Standard for **Disinfecting Water**

Mains". Supplemental procedures stipulated in the following sections compliment the AWWA C651 Standard, particularly with respect to flushing, testing, and tie-in to the existing water distribution system.

1. Prevent contaminating materials from entering the water main during storage, construction, or repair.
2. Remove, by flushing or other means, those materials that may have entered the water main. .
3. Chlorinate any residual contamination that may remain, and flush the chlorinated water from the main.
4. Protect the existing distribution system from backflow due to hydrostatic pressure test and disinfection procedures.
5. Determine the bacteriological quality by laboratory test after disinfection.
6. Make final connection of the approved new water main to the active distribution system.

B. Filling and Testing Procedures

1. Connection for the new water main to the existing distribution system for filling and testing shall be through a Contractor furnished flushing mechanism. The Contractor is to furnish the single gate valve, double check valve flushing assembly and all necessary fittings, reducers, increases and sleeves to make the piping connections. Assembly shall be approved by the responsible water authority prior to its use. A suitable valved piping arrangement for the addition of the water-chlorine solution is to be available on the new line side of the flushing assembly. The assembly is to be furnished with 125 psi rated flange connections and installed in a manner approved by the Architect or Inspector.
2. Initial Flushing
   a) The main shall be flushed prior to disinfection at a velocity of not less than 2.5 ft/s unless the responsible water authority determines that conditions will not permit the required flow. Adequate provision shall be made by the Contractor for disposals and neutralization of flushing water so that no physical or environmental damage results. Backflow prevention and initial flushing shall be in accordance with the following table.

Main Size (Nominal)	Double Check Valve Single Gate Size	INITIAL FLUSH Min. Flow (gpm)
6”	4”	220
8”	4”	400
12”	6”	900
16”	6”	1500
20”	8”	2450
24”	10”	3525

   b) Since the large volume of water may have effects on the existing distribution system, the initial flushing is to be done only when the approval of and under the direction of the Architect or Inspector. System demands may cause this flushing to be done at times when the existing distribution system demands are low.

c) Because of the large volume of water to be flushed from the fire hydrants or flushing hydrants, the Contractor must inspect the areas of discharge and provide the necessary equipment or materials to prevent any environmental damage or erosion. Sufficient hose length and termination fitting are to be provided so as to discharge the water into stable, heavily vegetated areas, drainage ponds, storm sewers, paved ditches, etc. The Contractor is to be responsible for any damage that may result from flushing.

3. Forms of Chlorine for Disinfection

It is the Contractor's responsibility to be familiar with and have available for his employees the "Product Data Safety Sheets" of any products used as a source of chlorine and to provide the proper safety instructions and personal protective equipment to the employees mixing and using materials for disinfection of the water facilities.

a) Acceptable sources of chlorine for disinfection may be obtained from any of the following three sources:

i. Liquid sodium hypochlorite (household bleach).

ii. Liquid sodium hypochlorite (industrial strength).

iii. Calcium hypochlorite granules.

Sources of chlorine shall be in conformance with AWWA B300 Standard for Hypochlorites, and NSF 60 and 61.

b) The direct introduction of chlorine liquid from a pressure cylinder into a waterline is not safe and shall not be allowed.

c) The mixing of a source of chlorine to obtain a suitable disinfection solution shall be as follows:

i. Liquid sodium hypochlorite is supplied in strengths from 5.25 percent available chlorine (commercially available household bleach) to 15 percent available chlorine (industrial strength sodium hypochlorite). A water-sodium hypochlorite solution shall be prepared by adding liquid sodium hypochlorite to water.

ii. A water calcium hypochlorite solution shall be prepared by dissolving calcium hypochlorite granules containing 65% available chlorine by weight in a pre-determined volume of water to make the desired water-calcium hypochlorite concentration. Disinfection of new mains by water calcium hypochlorite solution shall not be used unless a suction or in-line strainer is available on the solution pump to prevent any undissolved solids from entering the piping. An alternative method of straining the solution to remove undissolved granules may be approved by the Architect or Inspector on a case-by-case basis.

4. Method of Chlorine Application and Testing

a) The continuous feed method of applying the disinfecting solution shall be as follows: Water from the existing distribution system or other approved sources of potable water supply shall flow through a flushing mechanism as indicated on the contract drawings at a constant, measured rate into the newly-laid pipeline. The water shall be mixed with a chlorine-water solution as prepared above, also fed at a constant, measured rate. The two rates shall be proportioned so that the chlorine concentration of the water and

water/chlorine solution in the pipe is elevated to and maintained at, a minimum of 50mg/l available chlorine.

b) Since the forms of preparation for a water-sodium hypochlorite or water-calcium hypochlorite concentration are a batch process, a method acceptable to the Architect or Inspector shall be available to replenish the concentration being fed and mixed with the water flow, so there is no interruption of the flow of disinfection solution.

c) To assure that this concentration is maintained, the chlorine residual shall be measured at intervals not exceeding 2,000 feet and at the end of all branch lines or cul-de-sacs in accordance with procedures outline herein. During the application of the chlorine-water solution, valves, hydrants and any other appurtenances shall be operated in order to be thoroughly disinfected. Chlorine-water solution application shall continue until the entire new main is filled with water having a residual of a minimum of 50 mg/l chlorine solution. The chlorinated water shall be retained in the main for at least 24 hours. The free chlorine residual must be at least 10 mg/l after 24 hours in accordance with AWWA C651.

d) After the applicable retention period, the heavily chlorinated water shall be flushed from the main until the chlorine residual of the water leaving the main is equal to the chlorine residual of the incoming system water. At that time, the new system shall be valved off to allow the residual to dissipate to 0.2 mg/l before taking samples for bacteriological analysis.

5. Flushing

a) Flush to remove disinfecting solution. This is a low velocity, low flow, flush through fire or flushing hydrants to remove the disinfecting solution from the new line. The use of a neutralizing chemical and piping arrangement is required. The expense of a neutralizing station is the responsibility of the Contractor.

b) The final flush is a medium velocity, medium flow flush to clear the line of any chlorine solution used in the tie-in and to provide for fresh water throughout the new lines. Final flushing shall be in accordance with the following table.

Main Size (Nominal)	FINAL FLUSH Max. Flow (gpm)
6”	88
8”	160
12”	350
16”	624
20”	978
24”	1410

6. Bacteriological Tests

a) Bacteriological samples will be taken in accordance with AWWA C651, Section 7.

b) After final flushing, and before the water main is placed in service, samples shall be collected and tested for bacteriological quality. Two consecutive negative tests from the same location shall show the absence of coliform organisms. At least two samples shall be collected by the responsible water authority at least 24 hours apart at intervals

determined by the Architect or Inspector (not exceed 2,000 feet apart and at the end of all branch lines) and tested by a qualified laboratory selected by the responsible water authority. The responsible water authority shall bill the Contractor a standard fee for this service including all retests.

c) Samples for bacteriological analysis shall be collected in approved sterile bottles or bags treaded with sodium thiosulfate. If laboratory results indicate the presence of coliform bacteria, the samples are unsatisfactory, and disinfection shall be repeated as prescribed above until the samples are satisfactory. Cleaning, disinfection, and testing shall be under the direction of the Architect or Inspector but remains the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for any cost associated with the loading, hauling, discharging and dichlorination of the heavily chlorinated water.

d) A sampling tap consisting of a corporation cock with metal pipe shall be installed within two feet of valves. The corporation stop inlet shall be male one inch in size and the outlet shall have one inch I.P. threads and a cap.

e) After receiving satisfactory bacteriological test results, the Contractor shall coordinate with the Inspector the connecting of the new main to the existing system. All connecting pipe and fittings shall be clean and free of debris and shall be swabbed or sprayed with a 1 percent sodium hypochlorite solution before they are installed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 30 00

SANITARY SEWERAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

B. Harnett County Department of Public Utilities Standards (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

C. Reference Specifications are referred to by abbreviation as follows:

1.	American National Standards Institute	ANSI
2.	American Society for Testing and Materials	ASTM
3.	American Water Works Association	AWWA
4.	National Bureau of Standards	NBS
5.	North Carolina Department of Transportation	NCDOT
6.	North Carolina Department of Environmental Health	NCDEH

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes sanitary sewerage system piping and appurtenances from a point 5 feet outside the building to the point of disposal or to the connection point into the existing municipal wastewater system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and/or product data for the following:

1. Pipe and pipe lining
2. Fittings
3. Special Pipe Couplings
4. Manholes and Accessories
    a) Flexible pipe connectors
    b) Frame and covers
    c) Adjusting rings
    d) Entry seals
    e) Vent piping
    f) Frame-to-manhole sealant
    g) Steps
    h) Exterior coatings

i) Interior protective linings and coatings

5. Steel Encasement Pipe
6. Casing Spacers and End-seals
7. Detectable Marking Tape
8. Cleanouts
9. Bedding Stone (NCDOT approved job-mix formula)

B. Certification provided by the contractor that all materials and sewage piping have been tested and meet the provisions of the contract documents.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Environmental Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of local environmental agency regulations pertaining to sanitary sewerage systems, and to the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual for erosion control during installation.

B. Utility Compliance: Comply with the requirements of Harnet County Department of Public Utilities' Standards (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Prepare materials for shipping and transsport as follows:

1. Ensure materials are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect materials against damage to threaded ends, flange faces, pipe bells and spigots, and coatings.
3. Set materials in best position for handling to prevent rattling.

B. Storage: Use the following precautions for materials during storage:

1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection, and reinstall for storage.
2. Protect materials from weather, moisture and dirt. If outdoor storage is necessary, elevate and support materials off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures.
3. Store pipe in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not store plastic structures, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight. Support materials to prevent sagging and bending.

C. Handling: Handle materials on-site to prevent damage.

1. Handle materials to prevent interior and exterior coating and pipe-end damage, and to prevent the entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Handle pre-cast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
3. If any portion of piping and fittings is damaged, repairs should be made in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations prior to installation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Site Information: Perform site survey to verify existing utility locations. Verify that sanitary sewerage system piping may be installed in compliance with the design and referenced standards.

B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.

C. Existing Utilities: The location of existing utilities, including underground utilities, is indicated on the drawings insofar as their existence and location were known at the time of preparation of the drawings. However, nothing in these Contract Documents shall be construed as a guarantee that such utilities are in the location indicated or that they actually exist, or that other utilities are not within the area of operations. The Contractor shall make all necessary investigations to determine the existence and locations of such utilities far enough in advance of pipe laying to allow for adjustments due to conflicts in the horizontal and vertical positions of the pipeline.

1. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without receiving Architect's written permission.
2. Notify Architect not less than 48 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
3. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by others except when permitted by the utility owner and after arranging to provide acceptable temporary utility services.
4. Existing utilities across or along the line of work are indicated only in an appoximate location. Locate all underground lines and structures. Call "NC one call" at 1-800-632-4949 prior to construction. If utilities are marked that are not shown on the plans, locate utility vertically and horizontally and provide information to architect. The contractor shall pay for any damage to and for maintenance and protection of existing utilities and structures.

D. Connections to Existing System:

1. Before the start of the construction, the Contractor shall dig test pits on all crossings of and connections to the existing system, as applicable, to determine the existing system location, size, and piping material. If the location, size, and piping material differs from that shown on the Drawings, notify Engineer immediately.
2. The Contractor shall make connections to the existing system under a pressure or non-presure condition, as indicated, complying with the system owner's requirements for the time of day such work can be done. The Contractor shall pay all costs associated with the connections unless otherwise indicated. If the system owner performs the work, the Contractor shall arrange for the work to be done.
3. Valves are to be operated only by the Owner.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate with interior building sanitary drainage piping.

B. Coordinate with other utility work.

C. Utility interruptions shall be coordinated with local utility provider. Written notice 48 hours in advance of utility interruption shall be provided to all affected customers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND PIPE LINING

A. General: Provide pipe materials and fittings compatible with each other. All materials shall comply with the requirements of the Harnett County Department of Public Utilities' Standards (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

B. Gravity Sewer Pipe:

1. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) Sewer (as indicated on the plans):

a) Polyvinylchloride (PVC) non-pressure pipe (4"-15") shall meet requirements of ASTM D3034, Type PSM, SDR-35 with elastometric gasket joints meeting requirements of ASTM D3212. Bedding shall be as shown on the construction plans.

b) Polyvinylchloride (PVC) non-pressure pipe (18"- 48") shall meet requirements of ASTM F679, Table I, Type SDR-35 for large diameter solid wall PVC pipe with elastrometric gasket joints meeting requirements of ASTM D3212. Cell classification for sewer pipe shall be 12454-B or 12364-C. Bedding shall be as shown on the construction plans.

c) Polyvinylchloride (PVC) non-pressure profile pipe (21" and larger) shall meet requirements of ASTM F794 with elastometric gasket joints meeting requirements of ASTM D3212. Bedding shall be as shown on the construction plans.

2. Ductile Iron (DI) Sewer:

a) Ductile iron (DI) non-pressure pipe shall meet requirements of AWWA C151. Pipe shall be thickness Class 52. Pipe shall have cement-mortar lining and a bituminous seal coat. Thickness classes shall meet requirement of AWWA C150.

b) Mechanical joints and jointing material shall meet requirements of AWWA/ANSI C111/A21.11.

c) Flanged joints for ductile iron pipe shall meet requirements of ANSI B16.1. Flanged joint gaskets shall be full face, made of 1/16-inch thick rubber, and shall meet the requirements of ANSI B16.21.

d) Push on joint and rubber gasket shall meet requirements of AWWA C111.

e) Cement mortar lining with bituminous seal coat for ductile iron pipe and fittings shall meet requirements of AWWA/ANSI C104/A21.4.

f) Cement mortar lining shall be standard thickness.

g) Exterior, bituminous coating for ductile iron pipe shall meet requirements of AWWA/ANSI C106/A21.6 or AWWA/ANSI C151/A21.51 as applicable.

2.2 FITTINGS

A. General: Provide pipe fitting materials compatible with each other. All materials shall comply with the requirements of the Harnett County Department of Public Utilities' Standards (latest Edition, Addenda, and approved materials list).

B. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) Gravity Sewer:

1. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) non-pressure fittings (4"-15") shall meet requirements of ASTM D3034, Type PSM, SDR-35 with elastrometric gasket joints meeting requirements of ASTM D3212.

2. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) non-pressure fittings (18"- 48") shall meet requirements of ASTM F679, Table I Type SDR-35 for large diameter solid wall PVC pipe with elastrometric gasket joints meeting requirements of ASTM D3212.
3. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) non-pressure fittings (21" and larger) shall meet the requirements of ASTM 3034, SDR-35, PVC for large diameter profile sewer pipe with elastrometric gasket joints meeting requirements of ASTM D3212.

C. Ductile Iron (DI) Gravity Sewer:

1. Fittings shall be ductile iron. Ductile iron fittings shall meet requirements of AWWA C110. Pressure ratings shall be a minimum of 350 psi for all fittings. Fittings shall have cement-mortar lining and a bituminous seal coat.
2. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastometric seal.
3. Standard-Pattern, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, for push-on joints.
4. Compact-Pattern, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
5. Fitting Interior Coating: AWWA C104, asphaltic-material seal coat, minimum 1-mil (0.025-mm) thickness.
6. Mechanical joints and jointing materials shall meet requirements of AWWA C111.
   a) Mechanical joint retainer glands shall meet requirements of AWWA C111. Retainer gland shall be fitted with setscrews.
   b) Metal harness shall be galvanized rods and clamps as detailed on Drawings.
   c) Provide systems called for (or equals) as required on the drawings for restrained joints on aerial pipe.

D. Sewer Saddles:

1. Applies to taps for service lines of 4 inches or 6 inches on main line pipe up to 12 inches.
2. Straps shall be stainless steel, 24-guage, 2.5 inches wide
3. Nuts and bolts shall be stainless steel, 3/8-inch diameter.
4. Saddle shall be coated cast iron, with tubular rubber gasket.
5. Adapter compatible with service line shall be secured to saddle with PVC sleeve.
6. Sewer saddles shall be as manufactured by one of the following:.
   a) ROMAC Industries, Inc
   b) GENCO (The General Engineering Co.)
   c) Inserta Fittings Company

2.3 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLINGS

A. Use flexible pipe couplings where required to join piping and no other appropriate method is specified. Do not use instead of specified joining methods.

1. Use the following pipe couplings for non-pressure applications:
   a) Sleeve type to join piping, of same size, or with small difference in OD.

b) Increaser/reducer-pattern, sleeve type to join piping of different sizes. Sleeve type shall be of the eccentric pattern.

2.4 MANHOLES AND ACCESSORIES

A. General

1. Manholes shall be constructed of pre-cast reinforced concrete manhole sections in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C478 and detailed on the construction plans.
2. A maximum of two lift holes per manhole section may be provided.
3. Provide tongue and groove joints in manhole sections with a preformed groove in the tongue for placement of an O-ring type round, rubber gasket, or Press Seal, Inc.'s Profile RS gasket.
   a) Gasket shall comply with requirements of ASTM C443.
   b) Gasket shall seal the joint from either internal or external hydrostatic pressure.

B. Flexible Pipe Connectors: Provide flexible pipe connections to manholes, other than acid-resistant manholes, for pipes 24 inches and smaller in size.

1. Materials shall be resistant to water, sewage, acids, ozone, weathering and aging. Connectors shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C923. Use neoprene conforming to ASTM C443 and stainless steel, Series 300.
2. Cast or core drill openings in manholes to receive connectors. Connectors shall be suitable for field repair or replacement. Connectors not suitable for field replacement are unacceptable.
3. The assembled connectors shall allow at least an 11° angular deflection of the pipe and at least one inch of lateral misalignment in any direction and be suitable for a normal variation in diameter or roundness for the pipe material used.
4. Connectors shall be similar to Kor-N-Seal as manufactured by NPC, Inc.

C. Frames and Covers: Manhole frames and covers shall be molded of gray cast iron conforming to ASTM A48, Class 30. Castings shall be coated with a coal tar pitch varnish, to which sufficient oil has been added to make a smooth coating that is not tacky or brittle. Seating surfaces between frame and cover shall be machined. Manhole frame and covers shall be one of the following, or equivalent:

1. Street Type
   a) Neenah Foundry
   b) Capitol Foundry
   c) Sigma Corporation
   d) East Jordan Iron Works
2. Watertight
   a) Capitol Foundry
   b) East Jordan Iron Works
3. Vandal Proof
   a) Neenah Foundry

b) Capitol Foundry

D. Adjusting Rings: Adjusting rings shall be made of reinforced concrete or HDPE (as manufactured by LadTech, Inc.). Brick, block and mortar construction shall not be permitted in lieu of rings. Rings shall be of required thickness to obtain the desired top elevation and match the diameter of the frame and cover. Any combination of adjustment rings shall not exceed a total thickness of 9 inches.

E. Entry Seals: Entry seals shall be furnished on all sanitary sewer manholes. Entry seals may be installed on the interior of the manhole using Cretex Specialty Products' "Chimney Seal" or on the exterior of the manhole using Canosa's "Wrapid Seal," or approved equivalents.

F. Vent Piping: Vent piping shall be installed in accordance with the details shown on the construction drawings.

G. Frame-to-Manhole Sealant: Sealant for manhole frames shall be a one-component polyurethane sealant similar to Sika "Sikaflex" Type 1a.

H. Steps: Manhole steps shall be corrosion-resistant and shall be one-half inch grade 60 steel reinforcing rod encapsulated in a copolymer polypropylene. The steps shall conform with ASTM C478 paragraph 11 and to the dimensions shown on the Standard Details.

I. Exterior Coating: Exterior of manhole to be coated with bitumastic waterproofing.

J. Interior Product Linings and Coatings

1. Interior protective linings and coatings shall provide resistance to deterioration due to hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) and by-products thereof. Selected system of liners, coatings or admixture shall include provisions to protect concrete and all discontinuities including precast joints, pipe penetrations, seams, and entryways.

2. Liners: Liners for acid-resistant manholes shall be of High Density polyethylene (HDPE), Polypropylene Random Copolymer (PP-R) or polyvinylchloride (PVC) construction and shall be installed to protect the pre-cast manhole sections from the inside base of the manhole to the base of the manhole cover frame. Benches and inverts for lined manholes shall be coated as specified for coated manholes.

a) HDPE or PP-R liners shall consist of a 2mm thick HDPE (high density polyethylene) or Polypropylene Random copolymer (PP-R) with a large number of anchoring studs (a minimum of 420/m^2, 39/ft^2), manufactured during he extrusion process in one piece with the sheet so there is no welding and no mechanical finishing work to attach the studs to the sheet. Liner shall be similar to AGRU Sure Grip®. Joints between sections of the liner shall be sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

b) PVC liners shall consist of polyvinylchloride plates, not less than 0.060 in. thick, with integral bonding ribs and shall be similar to Amercoat "T-Lock Amer-Plate." Joints between sections of liner shall be welded in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3. Coatings: Coatings for proposed and existing manholes shall be Raven Lining System epoxy coatings or approved equivalent.

4. Admixtures: Admixtures for use in concrete manholes shall be ConShield™ or approved equivalent.

2.5 STEEL ENCASEMENT PIPE

A. Steel pipe shall be welded or seamless, smooth wall consisting of Grade “B” steel as specified in ASTM A-139. Spiral welded steel pipe is not permissible.

B. Minimum yield strength shall be 35,000 psi, and pipe thickness shall be as specified on the construction plans.

C. All pipe shall be furnished with beveled ends prepared for field welding of circumferential joints. All burrs at pipe ends shall be removed.

D. Encasement pipe must be approved by the appropriate controlling agency (NCDOT, R.R., etc.) and the Architect prior to ordering.

2.6 CASING SPACERS AND END-SEALS

A. Casing Spacers:

1. Casing Spacers shall be one of the following:

   a) Cascade

   b) Advance Products & Systems, Inc. Model SI

   c) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc. Model No. C8G-2, Model No. C12G-2

2. Casing spacers shall be centered and restrained unless otherwise shown on the drawings.

B. End-Seals:

1. End-Seals shall be one of the following:

   a) Advance Products & Systems, Inc. Model AC

   b) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc. Model C

2.7 DETECTABLE MARKING TAPE

A. Detectable marking tape shall be installed above all gravity sewer (including all service laterals).

B. Plastic marking tape shall consist of one layer of aluminum foil laminated between two layers of inert plastic film. Tape shall be resistant to alkalis, acids and other destructive agents commonly found in the soil. The laminate shall be strong enough that the layers cannot be separated by hand.

C. Tape shall be a minimum of 4-1/2 mils thick with a minimum tensile strength of 60 lbs. in the machine direction and 58 lbs. in the transverse direction per 3" wide strip. Tape color shall be APWA Color Coded for marking the particular utility line and shall be imprinted with a continuous warning message to indicate the type of utility being marked, the message normally being repeated every 16” to 36". Tape shall be inductively locatable and conductively traceable using a standard pipe and cable-locating device. Tape shall be 3" wide Terra Tape "Sentry Line Detectable 620," or approved equivalent.

2.8 CLEANOUTS

A. General: Provide cast-iron ferrule and countersunk brass cleanout plug, with round cast-iron access frame heavy-duty, secured, scoriated cast-iron cover.

B. Sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout shall be the same material as the run of pipe for which it serves.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1. SEPARATION OF WATER LINES AND SANITARY AND/OR COMBINED SEWERS

A. Follow State Health Department Standards for the separation of sanitary sewer and water distribution systems.

B. Parallel Installation

1. Normal Conditions - Sewer lines and manholes shall be constructed at least 10 feet horizontally from a waterline whenever possible. The distance shall be measured edge-to-edge.

2. Unusual Conditions - When local conditions prevent a horizontal separation of at least 10 feet, then maximum horizontal separation shall be provided with vertical separation of bottom of waterline at least 18 inches above top of sewer. Where this vertical separation cannot be obtained, the sewer shall be constructed of AWWA approved water pipe pressure-tested in place to 5 psi without leakage prior to backfilling. The sewer manhole shall be of watertight construction and tested in place.

C. Crossing:

1. Normal Conditions - Sewers crossing under waterlines shall be laid to provide a separation of at least 18 inches between the bottom of the waterline and the top of the sewer whenever possible.

2. Unusual Conditions - When local conditions prevent a vertical separation described in Crossing, Normal Conditions, paragraph above, the following construction shall be used:

a) Sewers passing over or under waterlines shall be constructed of ductile iron pipe with mechanical joints as described in Parallel Installation, Unusual Conditions above.

b) Sewers passing over waterlines shall be laid to provide:

i. Adequate structural support for the sewers to prevent excessive deflection of the joints and settling on and breaking waterline.

ii. Maximum separation of water and sewer line joints.

D. Sanitary and/or combined sewers or sewer manholes - No water pipes shall pass through or come in contact with any part of a sewer or sewer manhole.

3.2. EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING

A. Excavation, trenching, backfilling and bedding for all piping specified herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and/or to details shown on the construction plans.

B. Remove any and all materials encountered in the course of excavating for all underground utility systems. After the pipe is in place, backfill with suitable material, free from frozen earth, rocks, and organic materials.

1. Provide all necessary shoring required for the protection of excavations, existing utilities and workmen and do all necessary pumping required to keep excavation and pipe free from water from any source at all times.

2. Provide sufficient barricades adjacent to excavations to safeguard against injury to workmen and the public. Provide and maintain sufficient warning lanterns at walks, roadways, and parking areas to provide safety at all times.
3. Where roots of live trees are encountered in excavations, they shall be carefully protected during construction.
4. Exercise special care in backfilling trenches to guard against disturbing the joints.
5. Remove and dispose of any material not used for backfill.

C. Removal of subsurface obstructions which are uncovered during excavation for installation of the sanitary sewer systems shall be by the Contractor at his expense. This shall include removal of existing concrete or brick from existing building foundations, footings, abandoned utility piping, wires, structures, rock boulders, etc., which may not be visible from surface investigations before construction, but will interfere with new installations. If such obstructions are encountered, they shall be removed two feet from around the area of new work and the excavation backfilled with a suitable material as specified.

3.3. PIPE HANDLING

A. Take all precautions to ensure that pipe, fittings, and related items are not damaged in unloading, handling and placing in trench. Examine each piece of material just prior to installations to determine that no damage has occurred. Remove any damaged material from the site and replace with undamaged material.

B. Keep pipe clean. Exercise care to keep foreign material and dirt from entering pipe during storage, handling and placing in trench. Close ends of in-place pipe at the end of any work period to prevent entry of animals and foreign material.

C. Survey Line and Grade

1. Line and grade hubs shall be set by a registered surveyor, maintained by the Contractor, and the Architect provided with cut-sheets.

2. Contractor shall have level or transit in good working order on the job set up at all times to periodically check line and grade of pipe.

3.4. GRAVITY SEWER PIPE LAYING

A. Laying of sewer pipe shall be accomplished to line and grade as indicated on the contract drawings and in the trench only after it has been dewatered and the foundation and/or bedding has been prepared. Mud, silt, gravel, and other foreign material shall be kept out of the pipe and off the jointing surfaces. Do not lay pipe when weather or trench conditions are unsuitable.

B. Pipe and fittings shall be strung out along the route of construction with the bells facing in the direction in which the work is to proceed. Pipe shall be placed where it will cause the least interference with traffic. Laying of the pipe shall be commenced immediately after the excavation is started and every means must be used to keep pipe laying closely behind the trenching. The Engineer may stop the trenching when, in his opinion, the trench is open too far in advance of the pipe laying operation. The bottom of the sewer trench shall be shaped to give substantially uniform circumferential support to the lower on-third of each pipe. Holes shall be scooped out where the bells occur leaving the entire barrel of the pipe bearing on the pipe bed.

C. All pipe laid shall be retained in position so as to maintain alignment and joint closure until sufficient backfill has been completed to adequately hold the pipe in place. All pipe shall be laid to conform to the prescribed line and grade shown on the contract drawings. After completion the pipe shall exhibit a full circle of light at one manhole when viewed from the next.

D. The sewer pipe shall be laid upgrade from point of connection to the existing sewer or from a designated starting point. If the starting point is at an existing stub, it shall be removed and a full length of pipe installed. The sewer pipe shall be installed with the bell end forward or upgrade. When pipe laying is not in progress, the forward end of the pipe shall be kept tightly closed with a water tight plug or cap. When the upstream end of a sewer does not terminate at a manhole, it shall be plugged and its location marked in a manner approved by the Inspector.

E. The pipe shall be fitted and matched so that when installed it will form a smooth, uniform invert.

F. Prior to joining the pipe, all surfaces of the pipe to be joined and the surfaces of factory made jointing materials shall be clean and dry. Lubricants, primers, adhesives, etc., shall be applied and the pipes joined as recommended by the manufacturer’s specifications. Sufficient pressure shall be applied in making the joint to assure that the pipe is “home”. The interior of the pipe shall be cleaned of all foreign material as the work progresses. At the end of the work day, the last pipe laid shall be blocked to prevent creep, and closed with a water tight plug or cap.

G. Joining Pipe

1. Ductile iron pipe is to be joined in accordance with the requirements of AWWA Standard C600 and the manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe shall be joined in accordance with ASTM Standard D-2321.
3. Other type pipe shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the requirements of the County approved plans and specifications.

H. All visible leaks shall be corrected prior to testing.

3.5. MANHOLES

A. Manholes shall be constructed to the elevations shown on the Contract Drawings in accordance with the provisions of the Standard Details.

B. Set manhole base section on bed of NCDOT #57 stone to a minimum depth of 8 in. Stone shall be thoroughly compacted and carefully leveled to the excavated earth wall.

C. Join all manhole riser and cone or flat slab top sections by the use of an approved rubber gasket.

D. Pack and brush joints in FRP lining in acid-resistant manholes with sealant to provide a watertight and acid-resistant seal. Field weld joints in PVC lining of acid-resistant manholes in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

E. Install pipe stubs in manholes where called for on the Contract Drawings. All stubs shall be sealed watertight with a plug or cap at both ends.

F. Install flexible manhole connections for all pipes sizes 4 in. to 24 in., inclusive, and apply sealant to completely fill joint between manhole barrel and flexible connection for the full thickness of the manhole barrel.

G. Plug lift holes and repair any defects in manhole.

H. Adjusting Rings: Include two or three adjusting rings, of 6-to-9-inch total thickness that match diameter of frame and cover.

I. Set manhole frame in bed of sealant. Bed shall consist of one, 3/8 in. bead laid flush with the inside edge of the frame base and another 3/8 in. bead laid flush with the outside edge of the frame base.

J. Construct bench of concrete or brick and mortar.

1. Lowest elevation of bench shall be at the spring line of the outgoing pipe.
2. Slope bench three inches toward channel for drainage.
3. Where stubs or knockouts are provided for future pipe connections, bench shall be so formed.
4. Use sulfate resistant cement for concrete or mortar on all acid-resistant manholes.
5. Where sealant is used, bench shall not be in contact with pipe or flexible pipe connection.

K. Existing Manhole Tie-In

1. Core drilling and a flexible pipe-to-manhole connector shall be used in the connection of the sewer pipe to precast manholes, where stubs or bricked up opening do no exist.
2. The connector shall be Kor-N-Seal assembly or approved equal.

3. The connector shall be installed in the manhole wall by activating the expanding mechanism in strict accordance with the recommendation of the connector manufacturer.
4. The connector shall be of a size specifically designed for the pipe material and size being utilized on the project. All materials must conform to the approved products reflected in these standards.
5. Where bricked up opening exits, a PVC manhole adapter shall be used in the connection of the sewer pipe to precise manholes and installed using the proper conventional methods such as the process established for the "GPK PVC Manhole Adapters" or approved equal.

3.6. DETECTABLE MARKING TAPE

A. Install detectable marking tape in all trenches containing buried, non-metallic, pipelines. Tape shall be installed in all trenches with a cover of 18" to 54" and a minimum clearance over the pipelines of 18". Tape shall be made electrically conductive throughout the entire system through the use of splices of a type recommended by the manufacturer.

3.7. ROAD/HIGHWAY CROSSINGS

A. Where crossing is to be installed beneath a North Carolina road or highway, all operations and materials shall conform to the requirements of the North Carolina Department of Transportation governing such crossings, and the contractor shall obtain approval of all materials and methods to be employed before such work is started. A copy of such permission shall be filed with the Owner prior to starting the work. The contractor will also be required to furnish a release from the proper authorities before final acceptance of the work by the Owner. The contractor shall secure from the Department of Transportation the necessary information regarding proper bracing, sheeting, shoring and other required protection of the highway and traffic during the construction operation. Where an open cut is permissible in crossing the State Highway instead of boring, the contractor shall make the necessary provisions for handling traffic and replacing the roadbed and surface as required by the North Carolina Department of Transportation. Contractor shall be responsible for the payment of all fees required to obtain the necessary permits

3.8. CLEAN UP

A. Upon the completion of the installation of the sanitary sewer system and prior to acceptance, sediment and debris shall be removed from the limits of construction. All trash and debris shall be removed and properly disposed of. Areas not otherwise stabilized shall be seeded and mulched and a good stand of grass established.

3.9. AS BUILT SURVEY

A. Provide the owner an as built survey to include all manhole rims, pipe inverts, and service cleanouts for NCDENR certification. Also provide an as built survey of storm sewer and utilities crossing the sanitary sewer line to verify depth of clearances to the sanitary sewer line.

PART 4 -TESTING

A. Gravity Sewers

1. All testing shall be in accordance with NCDENR standards.
2. Testing of gravity sewer lines shall be conducted on short sections of sewer line, i.e., between manholes. Provide all labor, materials, tools, and equipment necessary to make the tests, and ensure that zero infiltration is provided. All equipment and methods used shall be acceptable to the Engineer and the Owner. All monitoring gages shall be subject to calibration, if deemed necessary.
3. Deflection tests shall be performed on all pipe installations. The test shall be conducted after the final backfill has been in place at least 30 days to permit stabilization of the soil-pipe system. As an alternative to waiting 30 days to permit stabilization of the soil-pipe system, the Division will accept certification from a soil testing firm verifying that the backfill of the trench has been compacted to at least 95% maximum density.
4. No pipe shall exceed a deflection of 5 percent. If deflection exceeds 5 percent, replacement or correction shall be accomplished in accordance with requirements in the approved specifications.
5. The rigid ball or mandrel used for the deflection test shall have a diameter not less than 95 percent of the base inside diameter or average inside diameter of the pipe depending on which is specified in the ASTM Specification, to which the pipe is manufactured. The pipe shall be measured in compliance with ASTM D 2122 Standard Test Method of Determining Dimensions of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings. The test shall be performed without mechanical pulling devices.
6. Sanitary sewer lines 24 in. diameter and smaller shall be tested after backfill using a low-pressure air test in accordance with ASTM C924.
7. Summary of Method: Plug the section of the sewer line to be tested. One of the plugs used at the manhole must be tapped and equipped for the air inlet connection for filling the line from the air compressor. Introduce low-pressure air into the plugged line. Use the quantity and rate of air loss to determine the acceptability of the section being tested.
8. Preparation of the sewer line: Flush and clean the sewer line prior to testing, thus serving to wet the pipe surface as well as clean out any debris. A wetted interior pipe surface will produce more consistent results. Plug all pipe outlets using approved pneumatic plugs with a sealing length equal to or greater than the diameter of the line being tested to resist the test pressure. Give special attention to laterals.
9. Groundwater Determination: Install a ½-inch capped galvanized pipe nipple, approximately 12 inches long, through the manhole on top of the lowest sewer line in the manhole. Immediately prior to the line acceptance test, the ground water elevation shall be determined by removing the pipe cap and blowing air through the pipe nipple into the ground so as to clear it, and then connecting a clear plastic hose to the pipe nipple. The hose shall be held vertically and a measurement of the height in feet of water over the invert of the pipe shall be taken after the water has stopped rising in the plastic hose.
10. Procedures: Determine the test duration for the section under test by computation from the applicable formulas shown in ASTM C828. The pressure-holding time is based on an average holding pressure of 3 psi gage or a drop from 3.5 psi to 2.5 psi gage.
    a) Add air until the internal air pressure of the sewer line is raised to approximately 4.0 psi gage. After an internal pressure of approximately 4.0 psig is obtained, allow time for the

air pressure to stabilize. The pressure will normally show some drop until the temperature of the air in the test section stabilizes.

b) When the pressure has stabilized and is at or above the starting test pressure of 3.5 psi gage, commence the test. Before starting the test, the pressure may be allowed to drop to 3.5 psig. Record the drop in pressure for the test period. If the pressure has dropped more than 0.5 psi gage during the test period, the line shall be presumed to have failed. The test may be discontinued when the prescribed test time has been completed even though the 0.5 psig drop has not occurred.

c) The test procedure may be used as a presumptive test, which enables the installer to determine the acceptability of the line prior to backfill and subsequent construction activities.

d) If the pipe to be tested is submerged in ground water, the test pressure shall be increased to 1.0 psi for every 2.31 feet the ground water level is above the invert of the sewer.

11. Safety: The air test may be dangerous if, because of lack of understanding or carelessness, a line is improperly prepared.

a) It is extremely important that the various plugs be installed and braced in such a way as to prevent blowouts. In as much as a force of 250 lbs. is exerted on an 8 inch plug by an internal pipe pressure of 5 psi, it should be realized that sudden expulsion of a poorly installed plug or of a plug that is partially deflated before the pipe pressure is released can be dangerous.

b) As a safety precaution, pressurized equipment shall include a regulator or relief valve set at perhaps 10 psi to avoid over-pressurizing and damaging an otherwise acceptable line. No one shall be allowed in the manholes during testing.

B. Manholes

1. Vacuum testing of manholes: Vacuum tests shall be conducted on newly constructed manholes following construction and after all connections have been made but before any backfilling around the manhole. Successful testing shall be accomplished before any backfilling operations.

2. Provide necessary vacuum pump, pneumatic plugs and accessories required for proper performance of the test. Plugs shall have a sealing strength equal to or greater than the diameter of the connecting pipe to be sealed.

3. Follow all local, state and federal safety precautions. Brace inverts if lines entering the manhole have not been backfilled or otherwise restrained to prevent pipe from being dislodged and pulled into the manhole.

4. Install vacuum tester head assembly at the top access of the manhole. Adjust the cross brace to insure that the inflatable sealing element inflates and seals against the straight top section of the manhole if possible.

5. Attach the vacuum pump assembly to the proper connection on the test head assembly. Make sure the vacuum inlet/outlet valve is in the closed position.

6. Following safety precautions and testing equipment manufacturer's instructions, inflate sealing element to the recommended maximum inflation pressure. Do not over-inflate.

7. Start the vacuum pump assembly engine and allow preset pump to stabilize. Open the inlet/outlet ball valve and evacuate the manhole to 10" Hg (approximately - 5 psig). Pressurizing the manhole may result in damage to manhole or to test equipment.

8. Close vacuum inlet/outlet ball valve and monitor vacuum for specified test period (see table). If vacuum does not drop in excess of 1" Hg., manhole is considered acceptable and the manhole passes the test. If manhole fails the test, complete necessary repairs and repeat test procedures until satisfactory results are obtained.

4-FT. DIAMETER MANHOLE

Manhole Depth	Minimum Elapsed Time for a Pressure Change of 1 Inch Hq
10 Ft. or Less	60 Seconds
Greater Than 10 Ft. But Less Than 15 Ft.	75 Seconds
Greater than 15 Ft. But Less Than 25 Ft.	90 Seconds
Greater Than 25 Ft.	Add 2 Seconds Per Foot of Additional Manhole Depth.

For manholes five feet in diameter, add an Additional 15 seconds, and for manholes six feet in diameter, add an Additional 30 seconds to the time required for four-foot diameter manholes.

9. Repeat the above test procedure after backfilling manhole for final acceptance test.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 41 00
STORM DRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. The provisions of the Contract Documents apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY:

A. This Section includes the roof drainage collection system, the storm sewerage system piping and appurtenances from a point 5 feet outside the building to the point of disposal, and the outfall structures of the stormwater management basin.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data for:

1. Concrete pipe
2. Polyethylene pipe
3. Ductile iron pipe
4. Frames and covers.
5. Grates
6. Couplings for connection into concrete pipe.

B. Certification, signed by material producer and contractor, that standard precast and cast in place concrete storm drainage manholes and Drop Inlets comply with NCDOT standards and specifications.

C. NCDOT approved job mix for bedding stone.

D. Shop drawings for:

1. Non-standard precast or cast-in-place concrete storm drainage manholes and Drop Inlets.
2. Trench drain system.
3. Cleanouts
4. Underdrains
5. Stormwater Management Basin Outlet structures, including: Riser pipe, outfall pipe, riser anchoring, anti-seep collars, trash rack and anti-vortex device.

E. Record drawings of installed storm drainage system.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Environmental Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of local environmental agency regulations pertaining to storm sewerage systems.

B. Utility Compliance: Comply with state and local regulations and standards pertaining to storm sewerage systems.

C. All materials shall be new and free of defects (i.e. pipe shall not have chipped spigots or bells).

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Site Information: Perform site surveys, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Verify that storm sewerage system piping may be installed in compliance with original design and referenced standards.

B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.

C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt existing storm sewer serving facilities occupied by the Owner of others except when permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide acceptable temporary storm sewer services.

1. Notify Architect not less than 48 hours in advance of proposed storm sewer interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with storm sewer interruptions without receiving Architect's written permission.

D. Existing utilities across or along the line of work are indicated only in an approximate location. Locate all underground lines and structures. Call "NC one call" at 1-800-632-4949 prior to construction. If utilities are marked that are not shown on the plans, locate utility vertically and horizontally and provide information to architect.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate with interior building storm drainage piping.

B. Coordinate with other utility work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All materials used for construction of the storm sewerage system shall comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Provide pipe and pipe fitting materials compatible with each other. Pipe materials are indicated on the drawings.

B. Reinforced Concrete Pipe (RCP): Shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C76/AASHTO M170, Class III, unless otherwise indicated.

C. O-Ring Gasket Reinforced Concrete Pipe: Shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C76/AASHTO M170, Class III, unless otherwise indicated. Joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443/AASHTO M198.

D. Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe (P.E.): Shall have a smooth lined interior and meet the requirements of ASTM F405 or AASHTO M252 for 10" diameter and smaller, and ASTM F667 or AASHTO M294 for 12" diameter and larger.

E. PVC Storm Sewer Pipe: Shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D3034, SDR-35 with bell and spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477 elastometric seals

   a) Connections to the building downspouts shall be made with Schedule 40 PVC.

F. Ductile Iron Storm Sewer Pipe: Shall conform to the requirements of AWWA C151, Class 52. Flanged joints shall conform to the requirements of AWWA C115.

2.3 MANHOLES

A. Precast Concrete Manholes: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Cast-in-Place Manholes: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Manhole Steps, Safety Slabs and Inlet Shaping: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

D. Manhole Frames and Covers: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

2.4 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-iron ferrule and countersunk brass cleanout plug, with round cast-iron access frame and heavy-duty, secured, scoriated cast-iron cover.

2.5 DROP INLETS

A. Precast Concrete Drop Inlets: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Cast-in-Place Drop Inlets: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Drop Inlet Steps, Safety Slabs and Inlet Shaping: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

D. Drop Inlet Frames and Grates: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

E. Plastic Drain Basins: Nyloplast or approved equal.

2.6 TRENCH DRAIN SYSTEM

A. Trench drainage system shall be POLYDRAIN (as manufactured by ABT, Inc.) or approved equal.

B. Trench drain grates shall be POLYDRAIN 410, or approved equal. Grates shall be galvanized steel, heelproof grates and shall be reinforced to support heavy duty (H20) loads.

C. Provide all fittings and miscellaneous connections necessary for a complete the trench drainage system per the manufacturer requirements.

2.7 CONCRETE AND REINFORCEMENT

A. Concrete: Conform to the requirements of NCDOT Standard Class B concrete.

B. Reinforcement: Steel conforming to the following:

1. Fabric: ASTM A 185 welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.

2.8 UNDERDRAINS

A. Underdrains and combination underdrains: Conform to the requirements of the latest edition of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. for the type of underdrain, unless otherwise indicated.

1. PVC underdrains shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F758, Type PS 28 or ASTM F949.
2. PE corrugated underdrain pipe shall conform to AASHTO M252.

B. Provide a filter fabric "sock" wrapping for all underdrain pipe.

2.9 END WALLS AND END SECTIONS

A. End walls: Conform to the requirements of the latest edition of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. End sections: Conform to the requirements of the latest edition of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. for the size of pipe indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Install the storm sewerage system in accordance with the latest edition of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

3.2 PREPARATION OF FOUNDATION FOR BURIED STORM SEWERAGE SYSTEMS

A. Grade trench bottom to provide a smooth, firm, stable, and rock-free foundation, throughout the length of the pipe.

B. Remove unstable, soft, and unsuitable materials at the surface upon which pipes are to be laid, and backfill with clean sand or pea gravel to indicated level.

C. Install pipe bedding conforming to the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

3.3 PIPE INSTALLATION

A. Install piping beginning at low point of systems, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line and pull past each joint as it is completed.

B. Use proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings, where different size or material of pipes and fittings are connected. Reduction of the size of piping in the direction of flow is prohibited.

C. Extend storm sewerage system piping to connect to building storm drains, of sizes and in locations indicated.

D. Join and install concrete pipe and fittings per NCDOT specifications.

E. Join and install PE pipe and fittings per manufacturer’s recommendations.

F. Join different types of pipe with standard manufactured couplings and fittings intended for that purpose.

3.4 MANHOLES

A. General: Install manholes complete with accessories as indicated. Form continuous concrete or split pipe section channel and benches between inlets and outlet. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finish grade, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Place precast concrete manhole sections as indicated, and install in accordance with ASTM C 891.

C. Construct cast-in-place manholes as indicated.

D. Apply bituminous mastic coating at joints of sections.

3.5 CLEANOUTS

A. Install cleanouts and extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade as indicated. Set cleanout frame and cover in concrete block 12 by 12 by 6 inches deep, except where location is in concrete paving. Set top of cleanout flush with finish grade.

3.6 DROP INLETS

A. Construct drop inlets to sizes and shapes indicated.

B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.7 INLET SHAPING

A. Construct inlet shaping conforming to NCDOT Standards at all drop inlets and manholes.

3.8 TRENCH DRAIN INSTALLATION

A. Installation of the trench drain shall comply with the manufacturers recommendations.

B. Verify connection to the storm sewer system. Utilize manufacturers standard outlet connections to make connection to the storm sewer system.

C. Install trench drain system starting from the downstream end , working towards the upstream end.

D. Verify proper placement and alignment prior to placement of concrete.

E. Place concrete around suspended trench channel. Do not chute concrete directly against channel walls, as this may cause displacement. Work concrete under channels and vibrate with a finger-type vibrator.

F. Finish surface to be flush with the adjoining surfaces and to allow for positive drainage into the grates.

G. Install grate tops.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Cleaning: Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed.

1. In large, accessible piping, brushes and brooms may be used for cleaning.
2. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of day or whenever work stops.
3. Flush piping between manholes and drop inlets to remove collected debris. Flush pipes through an approved erosion and sediment control measure.

B. Interior Inspection: Inspect piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred.

1. Make inspections after pipe between manholes and manhole locations has been installed and approximately 2 feet of backfill is in place, and again at completion of project.
2. If inspection indicates poor alignment, debris, displaced pipe, infiltration, or other defects correct such defects and reinspect.

END OF SECTION